
ElixSys Desktop User Guide

Publication #720P22823
June 1999
Version 4.00

Elixir Technologies Corporation
P.O. Box 1559
Ojai, CA 93024

Copyright © 1999 by Elixir Technologies Corporation.
All rights reserved. Prepared by Elixir Technologies
Corporation for exclusive publication by Xerox
Corporation.

Publication #720P22823

June 1999
Version 4.00
Printed in the United States of America

Xerox®, 2700, 3700, 4045, 4050, 4075, 4135, 4235,
4650, 4700, 4850, 4890, 8700, 8790, 9700, 9790,
XES. UDK, FRM, FSL, VIPP, XSOP and all Xerox
products mentioned in this publication are trademarks
of Xerox Corporation.

Trademarks and Service Marks/Company:
Bitstream/Bitstream, Inc.
Elixir/Elixir Technologies, Inc.
HP, HP PCL, LaserJet II/Hewlett Packard Company
IBM, Personal Computer AT, PS/2, and all IBM prod-
ucts mentioned in this publication/International Busi-
ness Machines
MS-DOS, Microsoft Mouse/Microsoft Corporation
PDF Writer/Adobe Systems Incorporated
Windows/Microsoft Corporation
WordPerfect/WordPerfect Corporation

All other product names and trade names used herein
are trademarks of their respective owners.

Copyright protection claimed includes all forms and
matters of copyrightable material and information now
allowed by statutory or judicial law or hereinafter
granted, including without limitation, material gener-
ated from the software programs which are displayed
on the screen such as icons, screen display looks,
etc.

Changes are made periodically to this document.
Changes, technical inaccuracies and typographic er-
rors will be corrected in subsequent editions.

Notes and cautions

The following notes and cautions apply to the ElixSys Desktop.

Drivers

- Elixir software supports printing using Windows 3.11 printer drivers under Windows 3.11. Windows 95 users must use a printer driver that supports API calls rather than Escape calls. If you have problems printing with a non-Elixir supplied driver, check with the vendor to ensure that the driver is appropriate for the operating system you use.
- Help files include graphics created using screen drivers with large fonts. If you use a screen driver with small fonts, Help file graphics may not display clearly. For optimum graphics display, use a screen driver with large fonts.
- Video drivers must be fully compatible with the Microsoft Windows VGA/SVGA standard to ensure graphical integrity. If you encounter problems when printing shading or graphics, the cause may be an incompatibility between a third-party video driver and the Microsoft standard. To determine if the problem is the third-party driver, switch to the Microsoft VGA/SVGA driver (for the screen resolution currently in use). If this resolves the problem, contact the video card distributor to see if there is an updated version of their driver. If this still does not resolve the problem, contact Elixir Customer Support.

- Current versions of Elixir software for a Xerox environment are applications which use Device Dependent Bitmaps (DDB). This allows fast graphic manipulation, but the size of graphic that can be manipulated and displayed is dependent on the Windows screen driver installed. If you have problems with graphics not displaying correctly, or experience unpredictable video effects (graphic or drawing elements not appearing as they should), Elixir recommends that you install and use the Windows screen driver supplied with Windows with either 256-colors or 16-colors.

BWCC.DLL file version

Installing a BWCC.DLL file in a directory other than *drive:\WINDOWS\SYSTEM* may cause errors when you perform operations such as copying files from the User Files icon to Elixir folders. Elixir installs a BWCC.DLL file dated 1995 or later in your *drive:\WINDOWS\SYSTEM* directory during installation. Other programs may also install BWCC.DLL files in different directories. Remove these other versions of the BWCC.DLL file from your system to prevent errors.

Internal font names

If you edit the internal name of an Elixir font, the change impacts the output font, and the internal name may not be transferred to the output Xerox format correctly. For example, you must use upper case letters (the default) for outputting to 9700 format. The internal header information for each font you use in ElixirFont is shared for all available outputs. If you need to create unique header names, then you must edit the header for the output format you need, then convert to that specific output and reset the header information in ElixirFont.

Using the Desktop under Windows NT

All current versions of Elixir software run in a Windows NT (version 3.51 and 4.0) environment.

Printing to HP printers

Windows NT uses a different HP soft font handling architecture than other operating systems. To ensure true WYSIWYG printing capabilities, new printing functions using raster fonts are implemented.

Due to the new printing functions, you must regenerate all HP soft fonts (from Elixir generic fonts or production printer fonts) before printing under Windows NT.

Elixir has successfully tested a number of HP and HP-compatible printers and printer drivers. However, due to the number of printer drivers and environmental configurations, Elixir cannot guarantee that all drivers and printers labeled "HP-compatible" will produce correct results.

ElixiDisk utilities

Under Windows NT, application programs do not directly access hardware devices. All device requests are passed through NT. Because of this architecture, ElixiDisk utilities only support 3.5-inch low density and 5.25-inch high density floppy disk formats.

To use one of these formats, you need to contact your Elixir representative to receive a special update to the ElixiDisk utilities.

Using the enhanced ElixiDisk utilities, from the Desktop you can copy files to/from, and delete files from diskettes. You cannot format or obtain a directory listing from a diskette.

From the DOS window, you can copy files to/from, delete files, or obtain a directory listing from diskettes, but you cannot format a diskette.

Table of contents

Notes and cautions

1. Introduction	1-1
Customer support	1-2
Who should use this guide	1-3
Organization of this guide	1-6
Common Desktop (Basics)	1-6
Printer-specific Desktop operations	1-8
Starting the ElixSys Desktop	1-8
Exiting the ElixSys Desktop	1-10
2. Desktop basics	2-1
Common Windows operating system	2-1
Desktop layout	2-1
Icons	2-2
Elixir folder icons	2-3
Forms folder	2-3
Fonts folder	2-3
Graphics folder	2-3
Documents folder	2-3
Jobs folder	2-3
Clipboard icon	2-4
User Files icon	2-4
Application icons	2-4
ElixForm/AppBuilder for VIP icon	2-4

ElixirFont icon	2-4
ElixirGraphics icon	2-4
ElixirDoc icon	2-5
ElixirScan icon	2-5
User Tools icon	2-5
Diskette icon	2-5
Tape icon	2-5
Printers icon	2-6
Scanners icon	2-6
Dispatcher icon	2-6
Converter icon	2-6
Trashbin icon	2-6
Viewer icon	2-7
Transformer icon	2-7
Sub-window menus	2-7
Backup button	2-7
Filter menu	2-8
Selection menu	2-9
View menu	2-12
Accessing DOS	2-14
Exiting the Desktop	2-14
3. Elixir folders	3-1
Folders and DOS directories	3-1
Elixir folder structure	3-2
Changing file display in a folder	3-4
Forms folder	3-5
Elixir Forms folder	3-6
Input Forms folder	3-7
Output Forms folder	3-8
Fonts folder	3-10
Elixir Fonts folder	3-10
Input Fonts folder	3-11
Output Fonts folder	3-13

<u>Graphics folder</u>	<u>3-15</u>
<u>Elixir Graphics folder</u>	<u>3-15</u>
<u>Input Graphics folder</u>	<u>3-15</u>
<u>Output Graphics folder</u>	<u>3-17</u>
<u>Documents folder</u>	<u>3-18</u>
<u>Elixir Documents folder</u>	<u>3-19</u>
<u>Input Documents folder</u>	<u>3-20</u>
<u>Output Documents folder</u>	<u>3-20</u>
<u>Jobs folder</u>	<u>3-23</u>
<u>Elixir Docs Jobs folder</u>	<u>3-23</u>
<u>Elixir Data Jobs folder</u>	<u>3-23</u>
<u>Input Jobs folder</u>	<u>3-24</u>
<u>Output Jobs folder</u>	<u>3-24</u>

4. Desktop configuration **4-1**

<u>System configuration</u>	<u>4-2</u>
<u>Desktop usage switches</u>	<u>4-4</u>
<u>User privileges</u>	<u>4-5</u>
<u>Diagnostics</u>	<u>4-8</u>
<u>Creating a directory</u>	<u>4-9</u>
<u>Converter properties</u>	<u>4-10</u>
<u>Transformer properties</u>	<u>4-13</u>
<u>Resetting System menu options</u>	<u>4-14</u>
<u>Refreshing the screen</u>	<u>4-14</u>
<u>Selecting toolsets</u>	<u>4-15</u>

5. Additional Desktop features **5-1**

<u>Opening icons</u>	<u>5-2</u>
<u>Opening a folder icon</u>	<u>5-2</u>
<u>Opening Elixir files</u>	<u>5-2</u>
<u>Opening Elixir application icons</u>	<u>5-3</u>
<u>Opening device icons</u>	<u>5-3</u>
<u>Diskette icon</u>	<u>5-3</u>
<u>Tape icon</u>	<u>5-3</u>
<u>Scanners icon</u>	<u>5-4</u>

Dispatcher icon	5-4
DOS files	5-4
Icon properties	5-4
Files	5-5
Converter icon	5-6
Dispatcher icon	5-6
Device icons	5-6
Different Elixir file formats	5-7
Printing folder contents	5-8
Displaying a logo	5-9
Copying files	5-10
Copying files to Elixir folders	5-11
Copying files to a DOS directory	5-11
Copying files from a DOS directory	5-12
Copying files to a DOS-format diskette	5-13
Copying files from a DOS-format diskette	5-14
Copying files to a DOS-Elixir format diskette	5-15
Copying files from a DOS-Elixir format diskette	5-16
Copying files to and from a Xerox printer format diskette	5-17
Copying files to a Xerox printer format diskette	5-17
Copying files from a Xerox printer format diskette	5-19
Copying files to and from a tape	5-21
Copying files from a tape	5-22
Copying files to a tape	5-24
Copying files from Output to Input folders	5-26
Copying Elixir form files	5-26
Creating a .PUB file	5-27
Copying a .PUB file to a diskette	5-29

<u>Restoring a .PUB file from a diskette</u>	<u>5-29</u>
<u>Using the Elixir Scheduler Desktop</u>	<u>5-30</u>
<u>Scheduler setup</u>	<u>5-31</u>
<u>Scheduler Desktop examples</u>	<u>5-36</u>
<u>Scheduler example 1</u>	<u>5-36</u>
<u>Scheduler example 2</u>	<u>5-37</u>
<u>Viewing files</u>	<u>5-38</u>
<u>Viewing Elixir graphics files</u>	<u>5-39</u>
<u>Setting the default Elixiform font</u>	<u>5-41</u>
<u>6. Peripheral devices</u>	<u>6-1</u>
<u>Diskette drive</u>	<u>6-1</u>
<u>Tape drive</u>	<u>6-3</u>
<u>Configuring your PC for the tape drive</u>	<u>6-3</u>
<u>Opening the tape icon</u>	<u>6-4</u>
<u>Non-responding tape drive</u>	<u>6-5</u>
<u>Scanner device</u>	<u>6-5</u>
<u>Configuration</u>	<u>6-5</u>
<u>Using scanners</u>	<u>6-8</u>
<u>7. File conversions</u>	<u>7-1</u>
<u>General procedures</u>	<u>7-1</u>
<u>Elixir folders</u>	<u>7-3</u>
<u>Forms folder</u>	<u>7-3</u>
<u>Fonts folder</u>	<u>7-4</u>
<u>Graphics folder</u>	<u>7-4</u>
<u>Documents folder</u>	<u>7-4</u>
<u>Jobs Folder</u>	<u>7-5</u>
<u>Initial converter setup</u>	<u>7-5</u>
<u>File conversion procedures</u>	<u>7-8</u>
<u>Converting forms</u>	<u>7-9</u>
<u>Converting Elixir forms to HP PCL format</u>	<u>7-10</u>

Writing soft fonts to disk as a separate file	7-15
Converting Elixir forms to PostScript format	7-16
Converting Elixir forms to Elixir graphics files	7-19
Converting Elixir forms to PDF format	7-20
Converting Elixir forms to VIPP format	7-24
Converting Elixir forms to XSOP format	7-26
Converting forms to and from Xerox format	7-28
Converting forms to 4075 FSL	7-31
Converting forms to metacode	7-31
Transforming Xerox forms	7-33
Converting fonts	7-33
Converting fonts to Screen and Win- dow formats	7-34
Converting fonts to HP PCL format	7-35
Converting Elixir fonts to HP PCL soft fonts	7-36
Adding HP PCL fonts to Windows applications	7-36
Converting fonts to Xerox formats	7-37
Converting TrueType fonts	7-38
Converting to and embedding Post- Script (ATM Type 3) fonts	7-41
Generating fonts from outlines	7-42
Font naming conventions	7-46
Generating Elixir fonts	7-49
Generating non-Elixir fonts	7-49
Regenerating screen fonts	7-50
Transforming Xerox fonts	7-50
Converting graphics	7-50

Converting Elixir graphics to Tiles in a Font format	7-52
Converting to or from PCX and TIFF formats	7-53
Restrictions and limitations	7-54
Converting Elixir graphics to BMP format	7-54
Converting Elixir graphic files to .IMG and .LGO format	7-55
Converting graphics to Xerox format	7-56
Transforming Xerox graphics files	7-56
Converting documents	7-57
Converting metacode to Elixir format	7-58
Transforming Xerox data streams	7-60
8. Transformations	8-1
Transformer icon setup	8-1
Transforming Xerox forms	8-3
Modifying 9700 .FRM headers	8-4
Modifying 9700 .FSL headers	8-4
Converting .FSL records	8-5
Inserting UDK escape codes	8-5
Transforming Xerox fonts	8-6
Modifying Xerox 9700 font headers	8-6
Assigning internal names to XES fonts	8-7
Transforming Xerox graphics	8-8
Transforming Xerox documents	8-8
Modifying FRM headers	8-9
Modifying FSL headers	8-10
Converting FSL records	8-10
Inserting UDK escape codes	8-10
Compressing metacode	8-11
9. Accessing DOS files and applications	9-1

<u>Creating an application icon</u>	<u>9-2</u>
<u> Creating an icon</u>	<u>9-2</u>
<u> Starting the application</u>	<u>9-5</u>
<u> Displaying icon properties</u>	<u>9-6</u>
<u> User Tools examples</u>	<u>9-6</u>
<u>Creating an icon for Ventura Publisher</u>	<u>9-6</u>
<u>Checking Ventura Publisher icon properties</u>	<u>9-7</u>
<u>Starting and exiting Ventura Publisher</u>	<u>9-8</u>
<u>Creating an icon for Elixir's Web site</u>	<u>9-8</u>
<u>Accessing DOS directories</u>	<u>9-9</u>
<u> Changing directories</u>	<u>9-10</u>
<u> Copying files between subdirectories</u>	<u>9-11</u>
<u>Linking files to applications</u>	<u>9-11</u>
<u>Linking files to an already-defined User Tool</u>	<u>9-12</u>
<u>Linking files to a new application</u>	<u>9-12</u>
<u>Checking tool properties</u>	<u>9-13</u>
<u>Opening linked files</u>	<u>9-13</u>
<u>Starting DOS executables</u>	<u>9-13</u>
<u>Starting batch files</u>	<u>9-14</u>
<u>Using the Dispatcher icon</u>	<u>9-15</u>
<u>Setting up Dispatcher commands</u>	<u>9-16</u>
<u>Executing Dispatcher commands</u>	<u>9-19</u>
<u>Copying files to the Dispatcher</u>	<u>9-19</u>
<u>Executing commands from the Dispatcher Commands dialog box</u>	<u>9-20</u>
<u>Dispatcher example</u>	<u>9-21</u>
<u>Using the Dispatcher to run Elixir utilities</u>	<u>9-22</u>

DOS menu	9-23
10. PC-host-printer file transfer	10-1
Moving online Xerox-labeled files	10-1
Configuring the file transfer package	10-2
Uploading files to the host	10-2
Uploading Xerox-labeled files with IBM 3270 or IRMA FT/3270	10-2
Uploading text files with IBM 3270 or IRMA FT/3270	10-3
Uploading Xerox-labeled files with IRMA FT/TSO	10-4
Downloading files from the host to the printer	10-7
HOSTCOPY and FILE comparison	10-7
Using the HOSTCOPY utility	10-8
Using the FILE command	10-11
Uploading metacode files to the host	10-12
Uploading with IBM 3270 or IRMA FT/3270	10-12
Uploading with IRMA FT/TSO	10-13
Uploading with 871	10-15
DataWare card PC to printer interface	10-15
DataWare CONFIG.SYS device drivers	10-15
Copying files to the printer	10-16
Copying online metacode files to the printer	10-16
Copying Xerox 128-byte header files to the printer	10-16
SPUR	10-17
SPUR utility	10-17
11. Stand-alone utilities	11-1

Using the utilities	11-1
ElixirDisk	11-2
XDIR	11-4
XFORMAT	11-5
XCPY	11-6
Copying from hard disk to Xerox-format diskette	11-6
Copying from Xerox-format diskette to hard disk	11-8
XDEL	11-9
CLR2BW	11-10
DISP	11-11
DSK2TAP	11-12
EI (ElixImposer)	11-13
ELX2MET	11-13
ELX2XES	11-16
ELXINV	11-16
ELXOPT	11-18
ELXWDATA	11-19
FIXLP3	11-19
FNT75HDR	11-20
FONTCHG	11-20
FONTCVT	11-22
FONTMAP	11-25
FONTTBL	11-26
FONTTRAN	11-27
FORMCVT	11-28
FORMPRN	11-30
FORMPRN support of long XES font names	11-32
FSIMG	11-33
HPEDIT	11-37
IC	11-39
LGO2LP3	11-40

<u>LP32ELX</u>	<u>11-41</u>
<u>MET2871</u>	<u>11-42</u>
<u>MET2ELX</u>	<u>11-42</u>
<u>NAMEFNT</u>	<u>11-46</u>
<u>NAMEUDK</u>	<u>11-47</u>
<u>PACK</u>	<u>11-48</u>
<u>PALFIX</u>	<u>11-48</u>
<u>PROOF45</u>	<u>11-50</u>
<u>SHOWBLOK</u>	<u>11-52</u>
<u>SHOWELX</u>	<u>11-53</u>
<u>SP</u>	<u>11-54</u>
<u>SPUR</u>	<u>11-56</u>
<u>SPUR utility</u>	<u>11-56</u>
<u>Using SPUR for online metacode files</u>	<u>11-57</u>
<u>Using SPUR for Xerox 128-byte header files</u>	<u>11-57</u>
<u>STRIP</u>	<u>11-58</u>
<u>TAP2DSK</u>	<u>11-59</u>
<u>Local printers</u>	<u>LOC-1</u>
<u>Printing Elixir forms</u>	<u>LOC-2</u>
<u>Using the Elixir HP print driver</u>	<u>LOC-4</u>
<u>Printing non-Elixir forms</u>	<u>LOC-6</u>
<u>Printing PostScript</u>	<u>LOC-7</u>
<u>Printing PostScript using the Elixir converter</u>	<u>LOC-7</u>
<u>Printing PostScript using a Windows driver</u>	<u>LOC-8</u>
<u>Printing to an XES printer</u>	<u>LOC-8</u>
<u>Supported printers</u>	<u>LOC-12</u>
<u>HighLight color printers</u>	<u>HLC-1</u>
<u>Supported products</u>	<u>HLC-1</u>
<u>Converting forms</u>	<u>HLC-1</u>
<u>HighLight Option and Highlight Plus</u>	<u>HLC-1</u>

<u>Converting forms</u>	HLC-2
<u>Converting color forms</u>	HLC-2
<u>Converting fonts</u>	HLC-4
<u>HighLight Option and Plus</u>	HLC-4
<u>Converting graphics</u>	HLC-5
<u>HighLight Option and Plus</u>	HLC-5
<u>Paper sizes</u>	HLC-7
<u>Restrictions and limitations</u>	HLC-8
<u>4135 printers</u>	<u>4135-1</u>
<u>Supported products</u>	4135-1
<u>Supported functions</u>	4135-1
<u>Printing 11 x 17 inch and A3 pages</u>	4135-2
<u>Printing 2-up on large paper sizes</u>	4135-2
<u>Short edge feed for large paper sizes</u>	4135-2
<u>Portrait/landscape font mapping tables</u>	4135-3
<u>Inverse font mapping table</u>	4135-4
<u>Font conversions</u>	4135-4
<u>4235 printers</u>	<u>4235-1</u>
<u>Supported products</u>	4235-1
<u>Jobs folders</u>	4235-2
<u>Elixir Docs Jobs folder</u>	4235-2
<u>Job print ticket</u>	4235-4
<u>Page print ticket</u>	4235-8
<u>Output Jobs folder</u>	4235-9
<u>Creating a 4235 XES job</u>	4235-10
<u>Creating an Elixir Job (.DAT) file</u>	4235-10
<u>Paper sizes</u>	4235-12
<u>Portrait/landscape font mapping tables</u>	4235-12
<u>Inverse font mapping table</u>	4235-13
<u>Font conversions</u>	4235-14
<u>Printing a job</u>	4235-14

<u>Printing on a local 4235 printer</u>	<u>4235-14</u>
<u>Examples - creating 4235 XES jobs</u>	<u>4235-15</u>
<u>Creating fonts</u>	<u>4235-15</u>
<u>P2LFONT.S.LST file</u>	<u>4235-15</u>
<u>INVFONT.S.LST file</u>	<u>4235-15</u>
<u>Converting fonts</u>	<u>4235-16</u>
<u>Creating forms</u>	<u>4235-16</u>
<u>Creating multiple impositions or multiple-page documents</u>	<u>4235-16</u>
<u>Creating a .DAT file</u>	<u>4235-16</u>
<u>Creating a multiple-page document</u>	<u>4235-17</u>
<u>Creating multiple-impositions</u>	<u>4235-18</u>
<u>Printing on a local 4235 printer</u>	<u>4235-18</u>
<u>ElixImposer</u>	<u>4235-19</u>
<u>Menu options</u>	<u>4235-20</u>
<u>Info</u>	<u>4235-20</u>
<u>Setup</u>	<u>4235-20</u>
<u>Edit</u>	<u>4235-22</u>
<u>Editing an existing .DAT file</u>	<u>4235-23</u>
<u>Convert</u>	<u>4235-24</u>
<u>Quit</u>	<u>4235-24</u>
<u>ELX2XES</u>	<u>4235-24</u>
<u>Starting ELX2XES</u>	<u>4235-25</u>
<u>Menu options</u>	<u>4235-25</u>
<u>Info</u>	<u>4235-26</u>
<u>Setup</u>	<u>4235-26</u>
<u>Edit</u>	<u>4235-29</u>
<u>Print</u>	<u>4235-31</u>
<u>Quit</u>	<u>4235-31</u>
<u>ELX2XES files</u>	<u>4235-32</u>
<u>Job print ticket file</u>	<u>4235-32</u>

Form list file	4235-33
Duplicate commands	4235-35
Printing Elixir forms in XPPM mode on a 4235	4235-36
4700 printers	4700-1
Supported products	4700-1
4700 printer considerations	4700-1
Paper sizes	4700-1
Incorrect printout	4700-2
Font conversions	4700-2
Input tray number remapping	4700-3
Converting forms	4700-3
Output folders for form conversions	4700-3
Converting Elixir forms to 4700 XES format	4700-4
Converting graphics	4700-6
Converting color .TIF and .PCX files to Elixir format	4700-6
Jobs folders	4700-8
Elixir Docs Jobs folder	4700-8
Job print ticket	4700-10
Page print ticket	4700-12
Output Jobs folder	4700-14
Creating a 4700 XES job	4700-15
Creating an Elixir Job (.DAT) file	4700-15
Printing 11 x 17 inch and A3 pages	4700-16
Portrait/landscape font mapping tables	4700-17
Font conversions	4700-17
Printing a job	4700-18
Printing on a local 4700 printer	4700-18
Examples - creating 4700 XES jobs	4700-19
Creating fonts	4700-19
P2LFORMATS.LST file	4700-19
Converting fonts	4700-19

Creating forms	4700-19
Creating multiple-page documents	4700-20
Creating a .DAT file	4700-20
Creating a multiple-page document	4700-20
Printing on a local 4700 printer	4700-21
ELX2XES	4700-21
Starting ELX2XES	4700-22
Menu options	4700-23
Info	4700-23
Setup	4700-23
Edit	4700-26
Print	4700-28
Quit	4700-28
ELX2XES files	4700-28
Job print ticket file	4700-29
Form list file	4700-30
Duplicate commands	4700-32
A. Keyboard shortcuts	A-1
Desktop	A-1
Windows	A-3
By option name	A-3
B. Additional files and directories	B-1
Elixir mapping table directories	B-1
PostScript mapping table directory	B-1
Contour fonts mapping table directory	B-2
Bitstream Facelift fonts mapping directory	B-2
Color information directories	B-2
C. Desktop menu bar	C-1
File menu	C-1
Open (<Enter>)	C-2

Copy (<Ctrl> + <C>)	C-2
New	C-3
Duplicate	C-3
Delete ()	C-3
Properties (<F2>)	C-4
Print (<Ctrl>+<P>)	C-4
Print Directory Listing	C-4
View	C-5
Formats	C-5
Convert (<Ctrl> + <V>)	C-5
Transform	C-5
Dispatch (<Ctrl> + <I>)	C-6
Close (<F3>)	C-6
Exit Elixir (<Alt> + <F4>)	C-6
System menu	C-6
System Config <Alt> + <F6>	C-6
Usage Switches	C-7
User Privileges	C-7
Diagnostics <Alt> + <F5>	C-7
Make Directory <Ctrl> + <M>	C-7
Converter Props	C-7
Transformer Props	C-7
Reset to Defaults	C-8
Refresh	C-8
Toolset	C-8
Special menu	C-8
Close All (<F4>)	C-8
Efont Factory	C-8
ATM Fonts (<Alt> + <A>)	C-9
TrueType Fonts (<Alt> + <T>)	C-9
Install Fonts	C-9
Scheduler Setup (<Alt> + <F2>)	C-9
Scheduler Action (<Alt> + <F3>)	C-9

<u>Global View (<Ctrl> + <G>)</u>	<u>C-10</u>
<u>DOS</u>	<u>C-10</u>
<u>DOS Command (<Ctrl> + <D>)</u>	<u>C-10</u>
<u>Window menu</u>	<u>C-10</u>
<u>Cascade</u>	<u>C-11</u>
<u>Tile</u>	<u>C-11</u>
<u>Arrange Icons</u>	<u>C-11</u>
<u>Message</u>	<u>C-11</u>
<u>Help menu</u>	<u>C-11</u>
<u>D. Palette Editor</u>	<u>D-1</u>
<u>How colors print</u>	<u>D-1</u>
<u>Highlight color printing</u>	<u>D-1</u>
<u>Full color printing</u>	<u>D-2</u>
<u>PC palette</u>	<u>D-3</u>
<u>Color palettes</u>	<u>D-3</u>
<u>Example: COLOR palette file</u>	<u>D-4</u>
<u>Palette Editor</u>	<u>D-5</u>
<u>Starting the Palette Editor</u>	<u>D-5</u>
<u>Loading an existing palette</u>	<u>D-6</u>
<u>Editing a color</u>	<u>D-7</u>
<u>Editing a palette</u>	<u>D-9</u>
<u>Creating a new palette</u>	<u>D-11</u>
<u>Saving a palette</u>	<u>D-11</u>
<u>Glossary</u>	<u>GLOSSARY-1</u>
<u>Index</u>	<u>INDEX-1</u>

1.

Introduction

This guide describes the ElixSys Desktop, the Windows-based operating environment for launching and using Elixir applications such as ElixForm, ElixFont and ElixGraphics.

Additionally, the Desktop has numerous productivity-enhancing features, including those which enable you to:

- convert files using drag-and-drop operations
- link files to applications, thereby allowing you to start an application and load a file in one step
- define icons for DOS or Windows-based applications you want to launch from the Desktop, such as word processors, desktop publishers and spreadsheets.

Because this guide describes all functions and features of the Desktop, certain options described herein may not apply to your specific configuration. In such cases, unavailable options display in gray (not black) on menus and dialog boxes, and some screens and icons may not display at all.

See the "Printer-specific Desktop operations" and "Organization of this guide" sections in this chapter for more information

Customer support

Elixir customer support centers provide telephone technical assistance for Elixir users during business hours.

- If you have purchased your Elixir product directly from Xerox Corporation then you should contact the Xerox customer support center telephone number provided by Xerox.
- If you have purchased your Elixir product directly from Elixir Technologies then contact one of the support center hotlines.

See the *Elixir Getting Started Guide* for information about contacting your support center.

Who should use this guide

This guide serves users needing first-time or ongoing reference information about the ElixSys Desktop.

Users should already be familiar with Xerox printer operations, font management operations and PC peripherals, and have access to reference manuals for related PC software and hardware.

Organization of this guide

This guide comprises two main sections:

- operations common to all Desktop versions
- operations applicable to specific printer types

Common Desktop (Basics)

This section describes operations which are common to all Desktop versions, and contains the following chapters and appendices:

Chapter 1, "Introduction," presents an overview of Desktop functions, features and documentation.

Chapter 2, "Desktop basics," describes the layout and basic operation of the Desktop.

Chapter 3, "Elixir folders," describes the Elixir directory structure and how to use the Desktop to organize and manage forms, fonts, images, documents and jobs.

Chapter 4, "Desktop configuration," describes how to customize the Desktop.

Chapter 5, "Additional Desktop features," describes further capabilities built into the Desktop.

Chapter 6, "Peripheral devices," describes how to configure and use PC diskette drives, scanners and printers.

Chapter 7, "File conversions," describes how to perform various file conversions.

Chapter 8, "Transformations," describes how to apply Elixir utilities to Xerox-format files.

Chapter 9, "Accessing DOS files and applications," describes tools which enable you to access DOS and link DOS files to applications.

Chapter 10, "PC-host-printer file transfer," describes how to upload files from your PC to a host environment for processing and subsequent delivery to Xerox printers.

Chapter 11, "Standalone utilities," explains the program utilities supplied with the Desktop software package.

"Glossary," provides an alphabetic listing of the terms and definitions used in this guide.

Appendix A, "Keyboard shortcuts," describes all Desktop keyboard shortcuts (fast keys).

Appendix B, "Additional files and directories," explains the functions and use of related files not described elsewhere in this guide.

Appendix C, "Menus and options" describes all the functions you can access from the Desktop pull-down menus.

Appendix D, "Palette Editor" describes printer and PC palettes and how to use the Elixir Palette Editor for creating and editing full color and highlight color palettes.

Glossary

Index

Printer-specific Desktop operations

Each tabbed section contains information applicable to the printer type specified by the tab name. At the time of publication, tabbed sections are available for the following printers:

Local - describes Desktop operations applicable to proof printing on HP, PostScript and XES printers.

4135 - describes Desktop operations applicable to 4135 printers.

4235 - describes job creation and page and print tickets for running print jobs on the 4235 printer. Information in this section applies to ElixSys for Xerox Distributed Printers users.

4700 - describes Desktop operations, job creation and page and print tickets for running print jobs on the 4700 printer.

Highlight color printers - describes Desktop operations and highlight color form and graphics conversions for printing on 4850 and 4890 printers. Information in this section applies to Elixir HighLight Option and Plus users only.

Starting the ElixSys Desktop

To start the Desktop, open the Elixir Suite for Xerox icon in the Program Manager Elixir Applications window.

Exit button

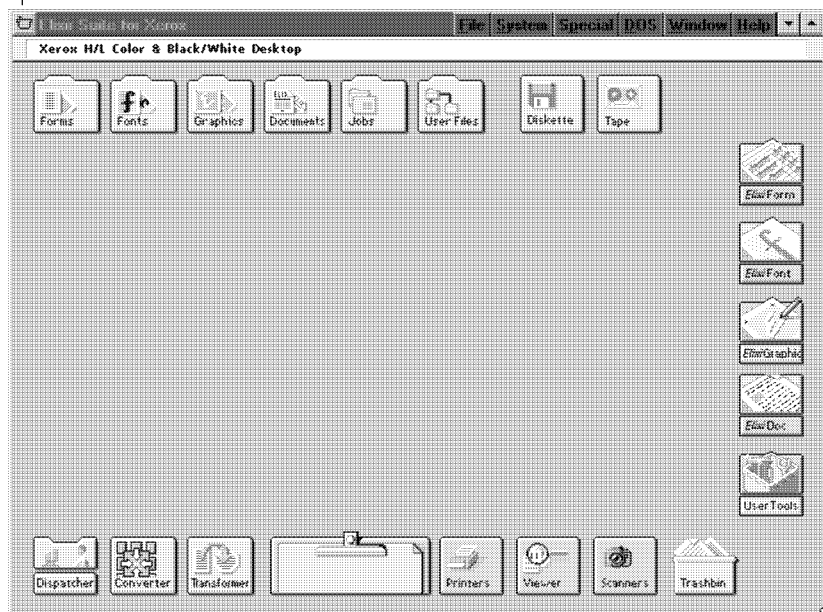


Figure 1-1. ElixSys Desktop

An arrow shaped screen pointer also displays.

To better view the title bar text on a monochrome monitor, select [Usage Switches] from the **System** menu, then select the [Monochrome Monitor] option in the dialog box that displays.

A Xerox/Elixir logo may also display at the center of your screen. The logo disappears when you press any key on the keyboard or mouse.

Note that you cannot move icons on the Desktop.

Exiting the ElixSys Desktop

To exit the Desktop, use your mouse to move the screen pointer to the Exit button at the left corner of the Desktop (as shown in the previous figure) and double-click the mouse. Alternatively, you can do either of the following:

- use the standard Windows <Alt> + <F> followed by <X>
- press <Alt> +<F4> and click on [OK] in the displayed dialog box.

2. Desktop basics

This chapter describes the ElixSys Desktop layout and basic operation. Later chapters describe more advanced Desktop operations.

Common Windows operating system

The ElixSys Desktop uses the standard Windows interface for display and use of operational elements such as icons, command buttons, tools, menus, dialog boxes and mouse.

See your Windows manual for complete information.

Desktop layout

The ElixSys Desktop comprises two main display areas:

- The top of the Desktop displays the menu bar and message area
- The remaining Desktop area displays icons.

Both menu bar and icons provide access to pull-down menus. See the "Sub-window menus" section in this chapter, and the "Desktop configuration" and "Additional Desktop features" chapters for more information.

The message area displays information about the operation in process, including relevant warning and error messages.

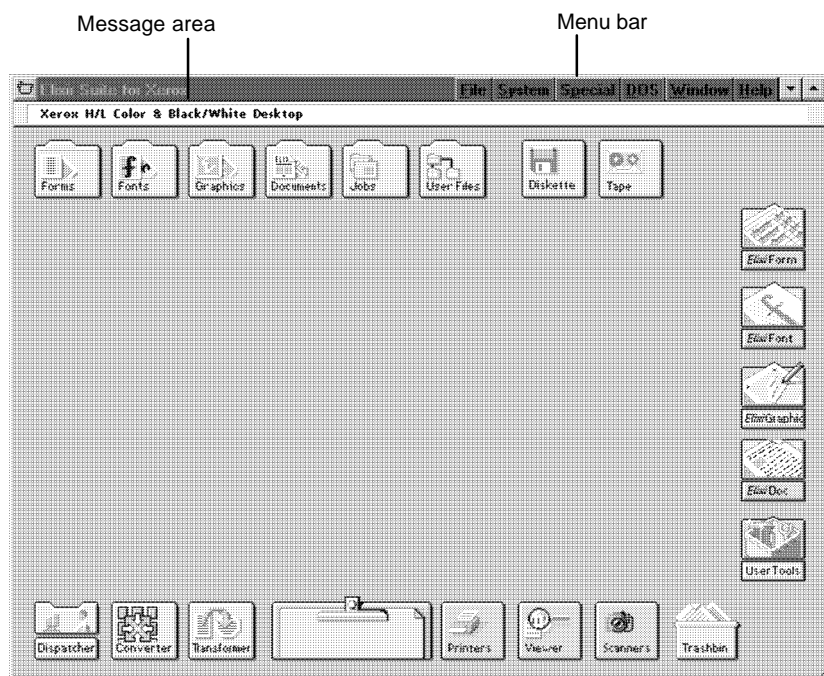


Figure 2-1. Desktop layout

Icons

Each Desktop icon represents an application, folder, utility or PC device configured for your system. Generally, the name, shape and appearance of an icon indicate its purpose or the type of action you can perform.

The following sections briefly describe each icon and, where applicable, refer you to chapters where you can find more information.

Elixir folder icons

The five icons displayed at the top left of the Desktop represent specific DOS directories. You can access directory files and convert them from one format to another using these icons.

See the "Additional Desktop features", "Elixir folders" and "File conversions" chapters for more information.

Forms folder



Represents the *drive:\ELIXIR\FORMS* directory containing Elixir, Input and Output form files.

Fonts folder



Represents the *drive:\ELIXIR\FONTS* directory containing Elixir, Input and Output font files.

Graphics folder



Represents the *drive:\ELIXIR\PICS* directory containing Elixir, Input and Output image files.

Documents folder



Represents the *drive:\ELIXIR\DOCS* directory containing form list files referencing the Elixir-format files for multi-page documents.

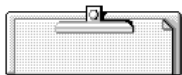
Note that Documents folder functionality for .VIP or .PDF files requires VIPP/PDF option products.

Jobs folder



Represents the *drive:\ELIXIR\JOBS* directory containing the Elixir Docs Jobs, Elixir Data Jobs, Input Jobs, and Output Jobs folders. Jobs include print tickets and individual forms with associated page print tickets.

Clipboard icon



Temporarily stores Elixir-format (.ELX) form files during job creation. You can copy an Elixir-format form to the Clipboard using standard copying procedures, then copy the form to a specific job when you need it.

User Files icon



Provides access to all DOS directories and files, and links applications to files. See the "Additional Desktop features" and "Accessing DOS files and applications" chapters for more information.

Application icons

Application icons display at the right of the Desktop and represent Elixir applications. Depending on your installation, one or more of the following icons display.

ElixiForm/AppBuilder for VIPP icon



Represents ElixiForm. If you have Elixir AppBuilder for VIPP installed, you can toggle the icon between the two applications by <Ctrl>-clicking on it. Opening the icon clears the Desktop and starts the applicable application.

ElixiFont icon



Represents ElixiFont. Opening the icon clears the Desktop and starts the ElixiFont application.

ElixiGraphics icon



Represents ElixiGraphics. Opening the icon clears the Desktop and starts the ElixiGraphics application.

See the "Elixir folders" and "File conversions" chapters for more information about the ElixiForm, ElixiFont and ElixiGraphics icons.

ElixirDoc icon



Enables you to run all Elixir file-format conversion applications in stand-alone mode. This feature allows users who prefer, to invoke Elixir conversion applications directly from DOS. However, Elixir recommends converting files using the Desktop Converter icon, as described in the "File conversions" chapter.

ElixirScan icon



Represents ElixirScan. Opening the icon clears the Desktop and starts the ElixirScan application.

ElixirScan allows you to electronically regenerate your existing (paper) forms using most commercially available scanners, and to edit, update and store the forms on your PC.

User Tools icon



Contains tools for creating icons for DOS and Windows applications and batch files, launching the Elixir Web site and editing color printer palettes.

See the "Additional Desktop features" and "Accessing DOS files and applications" chapters for more information.

Diskette icon



Allows you to access and format a diskette in your PC disk drive.

See the "Additional Desktop features" and "Peripheral devices" chapters for more information.

Tape icon



Allows you to access a tape drive connected to your PC.

Supported tape drive units include any 9-track, 1600 BPI tape device using an Overland TX-8 controller card, such as the Qualstar 1052 or Qualstar 1260.

See the “Peripheral devices” chapter for more information.

Printers icon



Allows you to access a local proof printer connected to your PC.

See the tabbed Local printers section for more information.

Scanners icon



Allows you to start a scanner connected to your PC directly from the Desktop.

See the “Peripheral devices” chapter for more information.

Dispatcher icon



Allows you to invoke DOS commands or batch files into which you can embed replaceable parameters.

See the “Accessing DOS files and applications” chapter for more information.

Converter icon



Allows you to convert font, form, graphics and multi-page documents to different formats by using simple “drag-and-drop” mouse operations.

See the “File conversions” chapter for more information.

Trashbin icon



Allows you to delete unwanted files. See the “Deleting files and folders” section of this chapter for more information.

Viewer icon



Allows you view Elixir-format print or screen files (.LP3 or .LW8 extensions), .DAT files, Elixir forms, text and object files without having to launch the Elixir applications.

Transformer icon



Allows you to apply utilities to Xerox-format files that generally modify the file headers.

Sub-window menus

The ElixSys Desktop offers additional functionality to normal Windows operations by allowing functions such as pull-down menus in sub-windows (or "child" windows) that you access from the (four top left) Elixir folder icons. The following sections describe these functions.

Backup button

You can access the backup button by opening any of the Elixir folders on the Desktop (Forms, Fonts, Images, and Documents) and then opening any of the Elixir, Input, or Output folders.

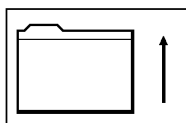


Figure 2-2. Backup button

Each time you click on the backup button (or press <Ctrl> +), you display the contents of the (folders) directories one level closer to the root. You may also use the backup button to change the default directory of an Elixir, Input, or Output folder.

To change the default directory of a folder:

- Select [Save Settings on Exit] in the Usage Switches dialog box (**System** menu).
- Use the backup button to change to the directory you want as the default.
- Exit/close the folder.

The program changes the default directory of the folder in the SYSTEM.INI file.

Filter menu

The **Filter** menu allows you to display files you select using the * and ? DOS wildcard characters.

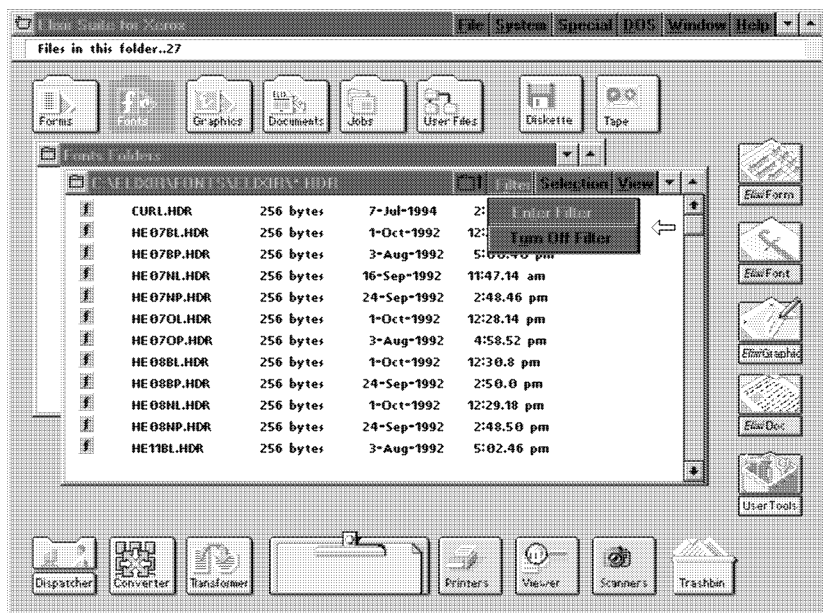


Figure 2-3. Filter menu

For example, in the previous window, you can enter a filter to display files that start with X as follows:

1. Select **[Enter Filter]** from the **Filter** menu.
2. In the displayed dialog box (shown below), type **X*.***
3. Click on **[OK]** or press **<Enter>**.

The window now displays only files that begin with X.

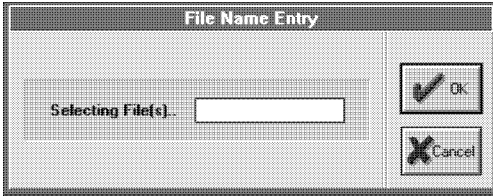


Figure 2-4. File Name Entry dialog box

To turn off the filter, select **[Turn off Filter]** in the **Filter** menu.

Selection menu

The **Selection** menu allows you to select and unselect one or more specified files within a folder. The following figure shows a **Selection** menu example.

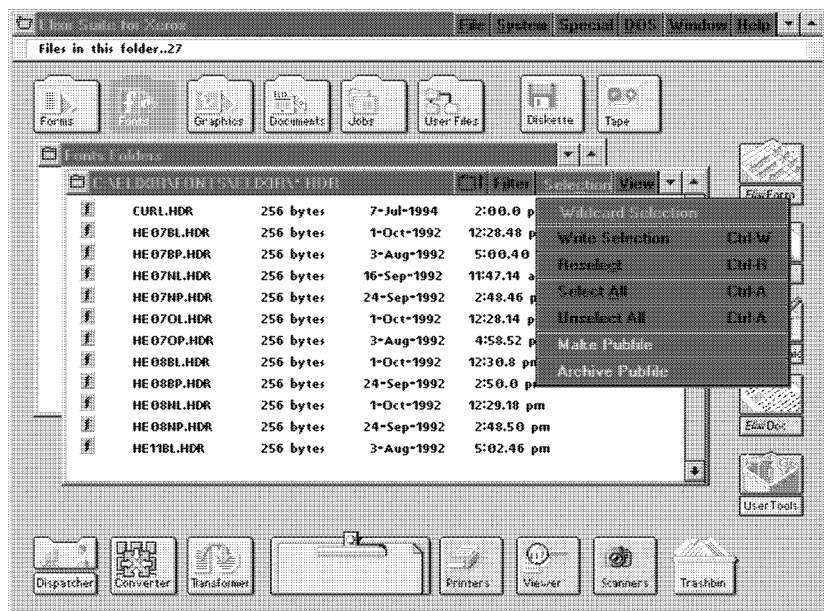


Figure 2-5. Selection menu

The **Selection** menu contains the following options:

Wildcard Selection

Selects (highlights) files specified with * and ? DOS wildcard characters.

Write Selections <Ctrl>+<W>

Use this option to "remember" a number of selected files (see the Reselect option, below).

Reselect <Alt>+<R>

Use this option to highlight files you previously "remembered" with [Write Select]. When you [Write Select] files in a folder you access from a Desktop Folder (Forms, Fonts, Graphics, or Documents) icon, use [Reselect] to highlight files with the same stem name (and the same or different extensions) in another folder.

Select All <Ctrl>+<A>

Selects (highlights) all files in a window. If the displayed window is Elixir Fonts window accessed through the Fonts icon, <Ctrl> + <A> selects the displayed *.HDR files, and also selects the *.GLH and *.GLY components of the fonts.

Unselect All <Ctrl> + <A>

Unselects all selected (highlighted) files in a window.

Make PubFile

[Make PubFile] and [Archive PubFile] options are valid only for Elixir-format Form files in *drive:\ELIXIR\FORMS\ELIXIR* and all subordinate directories, and are useful for copying forms to a diskette. The "Additional Desktop features" chapter explains these options in detail.

Archive PubFile

See [Make PubFile], above.

View menu

The following figure shows the **View** menu and an example of viewing files using the [Show Actual] option.

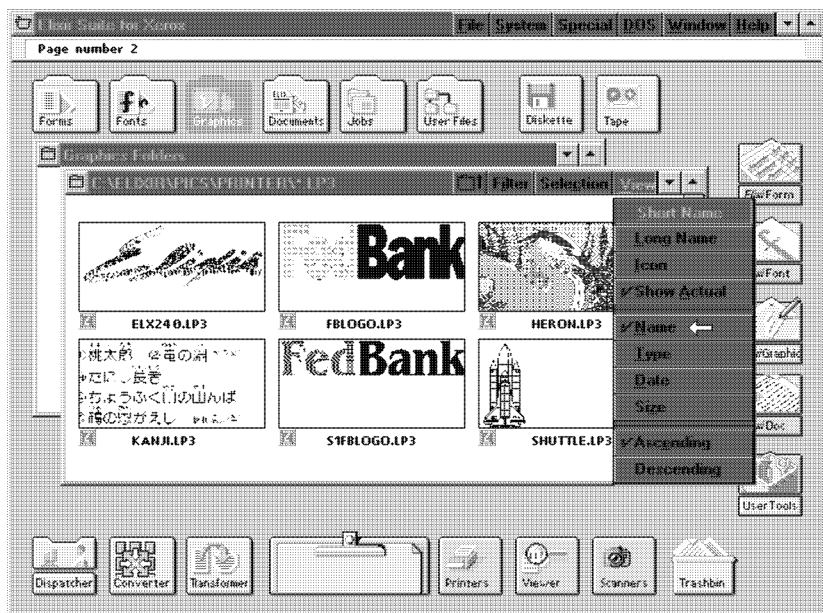


Figure 2-6. Show Actual example

The **View** menu allows you to display files in a window in different ways. The available options are:

Short Name

Displays files as icons in alphabetical order.

Long Name

Displays files textually in alphabetical order, including the name, date, and size.

Icon

Shows an icon with each file name in alphabetical order.

Show Actual

Displays reduced, bit-mapped screen versions of an Elixir form, font, or graphics file in alphabetical order, if screen versions exist. This option allows you to preview the above files without invoking the appropriate Elixir application and loading the file.

Name

Sorts files alphabetically by file name.

Type

Sorts files alphabetically by file type (extension).

Date

Shows information for each file, with files listed in order of creation.

Size

Shows information about each file, listed in order of size.

Ascending

Sorts files in ascending order (alphabetically, by date, or by size, depending on your choices).

Descending

Sorts files in descending order (alphabetically, by date, or by size, depending on your choices).

Settings

Displays the Local View dialog box which summarizes the file view settings for the open folder. View changes in this dialog box override global view settings.

You can apply view settings to all Desktop folders using the Global View dialog box. See the "Elixir folders" chapter for more information.

Accessing DOS

The **DOS** menu allows you to run DOS commands from the Desktop.

Selecting the [DOS Command] option or pressing <Ctrl> + <D> displays a dialog box that allows you to enter any standard DOS command. Enter a DOS command and select [OK] to display the Elixir Exec window, that executes the DOS command from the following directory:

- the \ELIXIR directory, if there are no windows open on the Desktop,
- the directory corresponding to the window, if a window is open on the Desktop.

After the DOS command executes, the system prompts you to press any key to redisplay the Desktop.

See the “Accessing DOS files and applications” chapter for additional ways to access DOS.

Exiting the Desktop

You can exit the Desktop in any of the following ways:

- Double-click on the Exit Box at the top left of the Desktop.
- Press <Alt> + <F4>.
- Press <Alt> + <X>.
- Use the **File** menu and select [Exit].

If you exit using <Alt> + <F4> or <Alt> + <X>, a dialog box displays requesting confirmation for exiting the Desktop.

3.

Elixir folders

This chapter describes the ElixirSys Desktop folder organization. To better understand this chapter, you should already be familiar with DOS directory structures.

Folders and DOS directories

Directories and subdirectories are structures DOS uses to store and organize files. Folder icons on the ElixirSys Desktop represent DOS directories or subdirectories. Just as a DOS directory contains files and subdirectories, Desktop folders contain files and other folders.

Using folder icons is easier than using DOS directories because you can display folder contents as icons in a window, and copy files from one folder to another (see the "Desktop basics" chapter in this guide).

The Elixir folder icons shown in the following figure display at the top left of the Desktop.



Figure 3-1. Elixir folder icons

Elixir folder icons allow you to use simple mouse operations to:

- access and display Elixir-format files
- copy Elixir-format files into different folders
- convert form, font, image, document and job files to and from Elixir format.

To the right of the Elixir folder icons, the User Files icon shown in the following figure displays.



Figure 3-2. User Files icon

The User Files icon allows you to access any file or directory on your hard disk or diskette drive. See the “Accessing DOS files and applications” chapter in this guide for a description of the User Files icon.

Elixir folder structure

This section describes the structure and use of the five Elixir folder icons.

Most Elixir folder icons contain three subordinate folders labeled Elixir, Input and Output.

For example, when you open the Elixir Forms folder icon, the following window displays.

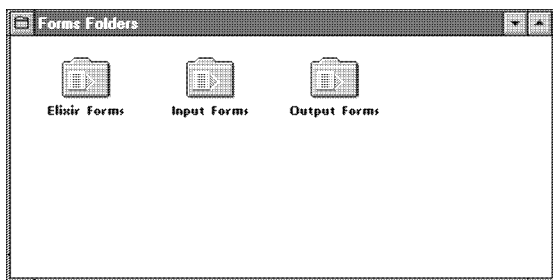


Figure 3-3. Forms Folders window

Similarly, opening each of the other Elixir folder icons displays a window showing subordinate folders called Elixir, Input and Output.

This folder structure allows you to edit or view form, font, image, document and job files having different formats, as shown in the following figure.

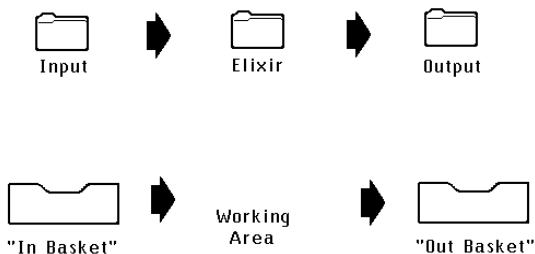


Figure 3-4. Input, Elixir and Output folders

- Each Input folder is similar to an "in basket" containing files you can convert to Elixir format by copying them to the Converter icon. See the "File conversions" chapter in this guide for more information.
- Each Elixir folder is similar to a "working area" where you can edit and view converted files.

- Each Output folder is similar to an “out basket”, to which edited Elixir-format files are written after you convert them to their original or other non-Elixir format by copying them to the Converter icon. See the “File conversions” chapter for more information.

To use Elixir folders for file editing:

1. **Copy a file you want to edit or view to the appropriate Input folder.**
2. **Convert the file to Elixir format as described in the File conversions chapter.**
3. **Double-click on the converted Elixir-format file to start the appropriate Elixir application (such as Elixifont or Elixigraphics) and load the file.**
4. **Edit the file using the tools provided by the Elixir application. After editing, save the file.**
5. **Convert the edited Elixir-format file to the format you want. The converted file writes to the appropriate Output folder.**
6. **Open the Output folder and copy the converted file to the desired location.**

The “File conversions” chapter describes this procedure in more detail.

Changing file display in a folder

You can change the way files display in all Desktop folders, or in individual folders only. Local settings override global settings. For more information on local settings, see the “Desktop basics” chapter.

To change the way files display in all folders:

1. **Select [Global View] from the Special menu.**

The Global View dialog box displays.



Figure 3-5. Global View dialog box

2. **Ensure that "Global" displays on the button at the bottom of the dialog box. If "Local" displays, click on the button once.**
3. **Select the desired view options and click on [OK].**

For more information on the view options, see the "Desktop basics" chapter.

The following sections describe the different Elixir, Input and Output folders.

Forms folder

The Desktop Forms folder corresponds to the *drive:\ELIXIR\FORMS* directory and contains the Elixir Forms, Input Forms and Output Forms folders shown in the following figure.

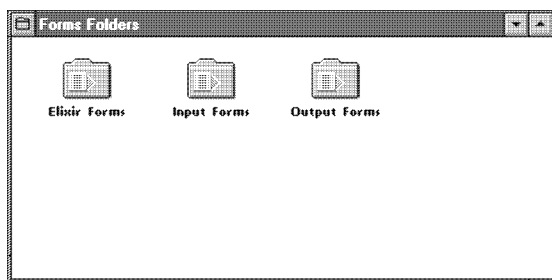


Figure 3-6. Forms Folders window

Elixir Forms folder

The Elixir Forms folder corresponds to the DOS *drive:\ELIXIR\FORMS\ELIXIR* directory and any user-defined subdirectories within the *drive:\ELIXIR\FORMS\ELIXIR* directory (such as *drive:\ELIXIR\FORMS\ELIXIR\DEMO*).

The Elixir Forms folder displays Elixir form files (files with .ELX name extensions). You can edit any file using Elixiform by opening (double-clicking on) the file.

The Elixir Forms folder also displays files with .BAK, .PUB and .INV name extensions, as follows:

- .BAK extension files are backup form files that Elixiform creates. You can edit .BAK files if you rename their extensions to .ELX.
- .PUB extension files are publication files used for archiving and copying Elixir form files and all related components (such as fonts and graphics used on the form) to a diskette. See the "Elixir Fonts folder" section in this chapter for more information.
- When you use the ELXINV utility to convert .ELX files to a different orientation (from portrait to inverse portrait, for example), you create .INV extension files. To edit these files using Elixiform, rename the extensions to .ELX. See the "Stand-alone utilities" chapter for more information about the ELXINV utility.

Input Forms folder

The Input Forms folder contains a number of subordinate folders, as shown in the figure below.

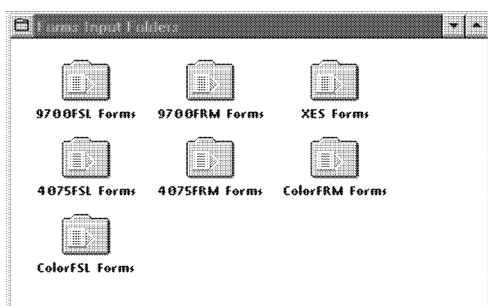


Figure 3-7. Input Forms folder

To prepare a form file for conversion, copy it to the appropriate Input Forms folder. Make sure it has the correct file extension for the folder, as shown in the following table.

<i>Input Forms folder</i>	<i>DOS subdirectory and file extensions</i>
9700 FSL Forms	\\ELIXIR\FORMS\FSLIN*.FSL
9700 FRM Forms	\\ELIXIR\FORMS\FRMIN*.FRM
XES Forms	\\ELIXIR\FORMS\UDKIN*.*
4075 FSL Forms	\\ELIXIR\FORMS\FSLIN75*.FSL
4075 FRM Forms	\\ELIXIR\FORMS\FRMIN75*.FRM
ColorFRM Forms	\\ELIXIR\FORMS\FRCIN*.FRM
ColorFSL Forms	\\ELIXIR\FORMS\FSCIN*.FSL

The above Input Forms folders show all formats from which ElixSys Desktop products can convert. See the tabbed section for the product/printer you are using for a specific list of formats. Note that Elixir supports only Elixir-generated FSLs.

Output Forms folder

The Output Forms folder contains a number of subordinate folders, as shown in the following figure.

<i>Output Forms folder</i>	<i>DOS subdirectory and file extensions</i>
9700 FSL Forms	\\ELIXIR\FORMS\FSLOUT*.FSL
9700 FRM Forms	\\ELIXIR\FORMS\FRMOUT*.FRM
2700 XES Forms	\\ELIXIR\PRINTS\X27PRINT*.PRN
4045 XES Forms	\\ELIXIR\PRINTS\X45PRINT*.PRN
4235 XES Forms	\\ELIXIR\PRINTS\X42PRINT*.PRN
4075 FSL Forms	\\ELIXIR\FORMS\FSLOUT75*.FSL
4075 FRM Forms	\\ELIXIR\FORMS\FRMOUT75*.FRM
4700 XES Forms	\\ELIXIR\DOCS\X47PRINT*.PRN
Color FRM Forms	\\ELIXIR\FORMS\FRCOUT*.FRM
Color FSL Forms	\\ELIXIR\FORMS\FSCOUT*.FSL
HP PCL Forms	\\ELIXIR\PRINTS\HPPRINT*.PRN
PostScript Forms	\\ELIXIR\FORMS\PSOUT*.PS
PDF Forms	\\ELIXIR\FORMS\PDFOUT*.*
VIPP Forms	\\ELIXIR\FORMS\VIPOUT*.VIP

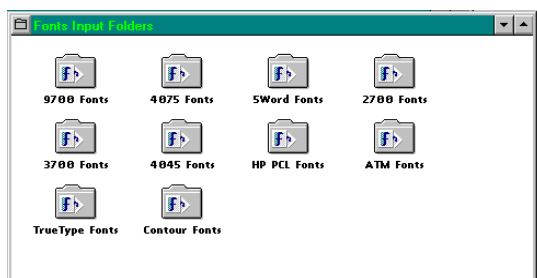


Figure 3-8. Forms Output Folders window

When you use the Converter icon to convert files (as described in the “File conversions” chapter), output files write to the Output folders with appropriate file extensions, as shown in the following table.

The above Output Forms folders show all formats to which ElixirSys Desktop products can convert. See the tabbed section for the product/printer you are using for a specific list of formats.

Fonts folder

The Fonts folder corresponds to the *drive:\ELIXIR* FONTS directory and contains the Elixir Fonts, Input Fonts and Output Fonts folders as shown in the following figure.

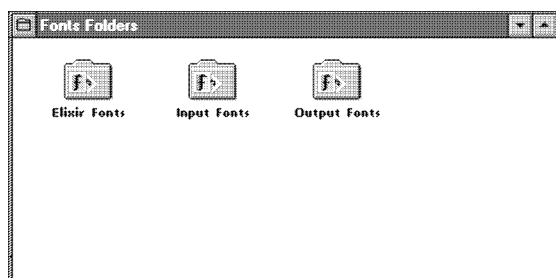


Figure 3-9. Fonts Folders window

Elixir Fonts folder

The Elixir Fonts folder corresponds to the DOS *drive:*\ELIXIR\FONTS\ELIXIR subdirectory and displays Elixir-format font file names with .HDR extensions. You can edit these files using ElixFont by opening (double-clicking on) the files. See the *Elix-Font Edition User Guide* for more information.

Although only .HDR extension files display, each Elixir-format font comprises four files having the same stem name but different extension, as follows:

- .HDR - the font header file
- .GLH - the glyph (character) header file
- .GLY - the glyph (character) bitmap file
- .HDA - the font properties header file

The .GLH, .GLY and .HDA files are also in the *drive:*\ELIXIR\FONTS\ELIXIR subdirectory, but do not display in the window. You can display all four components using the Filter menu and entering *.* as the filter.

When you copy a font from the Elixir Fonts folder using the Desktop copy operation (copying to a diskette, for example), all four file components copy.

If you want to copy an Elixir font using either the User Files icon or DOS COPY command, remember to copy all four components for each file.

Input Fonts folder

The Input Fonts folder contains subordinate folders, as shown in the following figure.

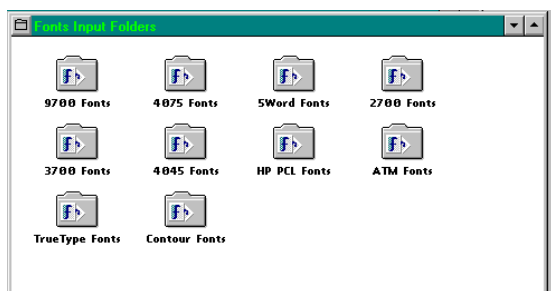


Figure 3-10. Fonts Input Folders window

To prepare a font file for conversion, first copy it to the appropriate Input Fonts folder. Make sure the file has the correct name extension for the folder, as shown in the following table.

<i>Input Fonts folder</i>	<i>DOS subdirectory and file extensions</i>
9700 Fonts	\\ELIXIR\FONTS\X97IN*.FNT
2700 Fonts	\\ELIXIR\FONTS\X27IN*.FNT
3700 Fonts	\\ELIXIR\FONTS\X37IN*.FNT
4045 Fonts	\\ELIXIR\FONTS\X45IN*.FNT
4075 Fonts	\\ELIXIR\FONTS\X75IN*.FNT
5Word Fonts	\\ELIXIR\FONTS\FN6IN*.FNT (Note: these are 300 dpi fonts)
HP PCL Fonts	\\ELIXIR\FONTS\HPIN*.FNT
Contour Fonts	\\ELIXIR\FONTS\CONTOURS*.TDF (default - also user-definable)
ATM Fonts	\\ELIXIR\FONTS\HPIN*.ATM
True-Type Fonts	\\ELIXIR\FONTS\HPIN*.TT

The above Input Fonts folders show all formats from which ElixSys Desktop products can convert. See the tabbed section for the product/printer you are using for a specific list of formats.

Note that ATM and TrueType font directory paths are controlled by Windows and have varying file extensions.

Output Fonts folder

The Output Fonts folder contains a number of subordinate folders, as shown in the following figure.

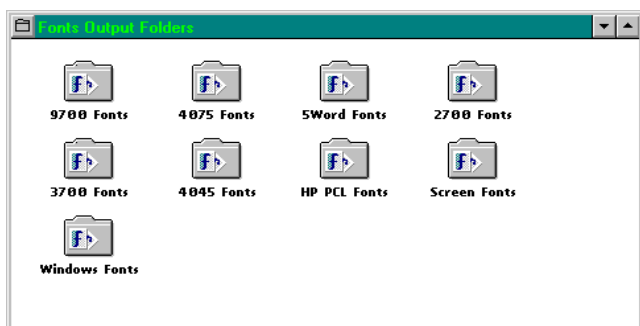


Figure 3-11. Fonts Output Folders window

When you use the Converter icon to convert files (described in the "File conversions" chapter), output files write to the Output folders with appropriate name extensions, as shown in the following table.

<i>Output Fonts folder</i>	<i>DOS subdirectory and file extensions</i>
9700 Fonts	\ELIXIR\FONTS\X97OUT*.FNT
2700 Fonts	\ELIXIR\FONTS\PRINTER*.F27 (regular fonts) \ELIXIR\FONTS\PRINTER*.R27 (rotated fonts for proof printing)
3700 Fonts	\ELIXIR\FONTS\X37OUT*.FNT
4045 Fonts	\ELIXIR\FONTS\PRINTER*.F45 (regular fonts) \ELIXIR\FONTS\PRINTER*.R45 (rotated fonts for proof printing)
4075 Fonts	\ELIXIR\FONTS\X75OUT*.FNT
5Word Fonts	\ELIXIR\FONTS\FN6OUT*.FNT (Please note: these are 300 dpi fonts)
HP PCL Fonts	\ELIXIR\FONTS\PRINTER*.FLJ (regular fonts) \ELIXIR\FONTS\PRINTER*.RLJ (rotated fonts)

The above Output Forms folders show all formats to which ElixSys Desktop products can convert. See the tabbed section for the product/printer you are using for a specific list of formats.

Graphics folder

The Graphics folder corresponds to the drive:\ELIXIR\PICS directory and contains the Elixir Images, Input Images and Output Images folders shown in the following figure.

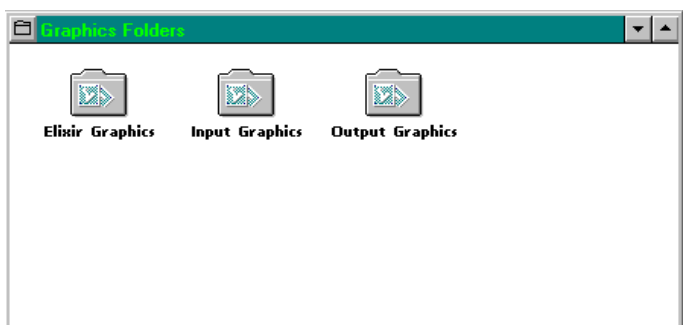


Figure 3-12. Graphics Folders window

Elixir Graphics folder

The Elixir Graphics folder corresponds to the *drive:\ELIXIR\PICS\PRINTER* directory and contains Elixir graphics-format files with .LP3 extensions. You can edit these files by opening (double-clicking on) the files. Opening a file starts Elixigraphics and loads the file.

Input Graphics folder

The Input Graphics folder contains a number of subordinate folders, as shown in the following figure.

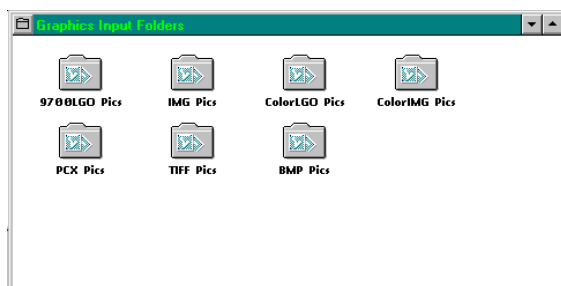


Figure 3-13. Input Graphics Folders window

To prepare a graphics file for conversion, first copy it to the appropriate Input Images folder. Make sure the file has the correct name extension for the folder, as shown in the following table.

<i>Input Graphics folder</i>	<i>DOS subdirectory and file extensions</i>
9700 LGO Pics	\\ELIXIR\\PICS\\LGOIN*.LGO
IMG Pics	\\ELIXIR\\PICS\\IMGIN*.IMG
Color LGO Pics	\\ELIXIR\\PICS\\LGCIN*.LGO
Color IMG Pics	\\ELIXIR\\PICS\\IMCIN*.IMG
PCX Pics	\\ELIXIR\\PICS\\PCXIN*.PCX
TIFF Pics	\\ELIXIR\\PICS\\TIFFIN*.TIF
BMP Pics	\\ELIXIR\\PICS\\BMPIN*.BMP

The above Input Images folders show all formats from which ElixSys Desktop products can convert. See the tabbed section for the product/printer you are using for a specific list of formats.

Output Graphics folder

The Output Graphics folder contains a number of sub-ordinate folders, as shown in the following figure.

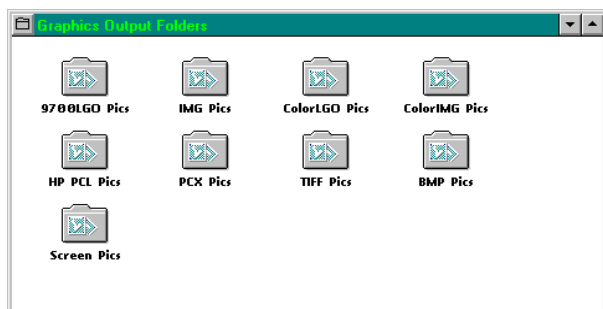


Figure 3-14. Output Graphics Folders window

When you use the Converter icon to convert files (described in the "File conversions" chapter), output files write to the appropriate Output folders with appropriate file extensions, as shown in the following table.

<i>Output Graphics folder</i>	<i>DOS subdirectory and file extensions</i>
9700 LGO Pics	\\ELIXIR\\PICS\\LGOOUT*.LGO
IMG Pics	\\ELIXIR\\PICS\\IMGOUT*.IMG
Color LGO Pics	\\ELIXIR\\PICS\\LGCOUT*.LGO
Color IMG Pics	\\ELIXIR\\PICS\\IMCOUT*.IMG
PCX Pics	\\ELIXIR\\PICS\\PCXOUT*.PCX
TIFF Pics	\\ELIXIR\\PICS\\TIFFOUT*.TIF
BMP Pics	\\ELIXIR\\PICS\\BMPOUT*.BMP
Screen Pics	\\ELIXIR\\PICS\\SCREEN*.LW8
HP PCL Pics	\\ELIXIR\\PRINTS\\HPPRINT*.IMH

The above Output Images folders show all formats to which ElixSys Desktop products can convert. See the tabbed section for the product/printer you are using for a specific list of formats.

Documents folder

The Documents folder corresponds to the DOS *drive*:\\ELIXIR\\DOCS directory and contains subordinate Elixir Document, Input Document and Output Document folders, as illustrated in the following figure.

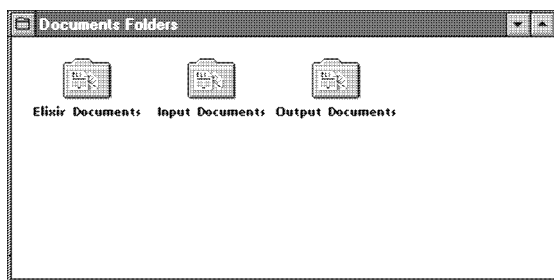


Figure 3-15. Documents Folders window

Elixir Documents folder

The Elixir Documents folder corresponds to the *drive:\ELIXIR\DOCS\DOCLIST* subdirectory and contains form list files.

A form list file is a .DAT file you create for proof printing using an ASCII editor, containing a list of Elixir (.ELX) form files for a multi-page document.

ElixiSys Converter for Xerox Distributed Printers users can also print multi-page documents using the Jobs icon. See the tabbed 4235 and 4700 Printers sections for more information about creating jobs using the Jobs icon.

Input Documents folder

The Input Documents folder contains a number of subordinate folders, as shown in the following figure.

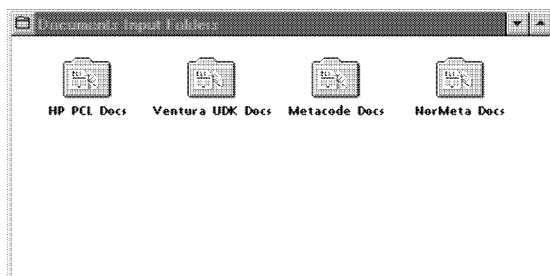


Figure 3-16. Input documents folder

Each folder contains non-Elixir document (multi-page) files you can convert to other formats. To convert a document file, copy it to the appropriate Input Document folder, and make sure it has the correct file extension for the folder, as shown in the following table.

<i>Input Documents folder</i>	<i>DOS subdirectory and file extensions</i>
Metacode Docs	\ELIXIR\DOCS\METAIN*.* (default - also user-definable)

The above Input Documents folders show all formats from which ElixSys Desktop products can convert. See your *Elixir Print Driver User Guide*, *VP297 User Guide*, or *HP2XRX User Guide* for more information on HP PCL and Ventura UDK documents.

Output Documents folder

The Output Documents folder contains a number of subordinate folders, as shown in the following figure.

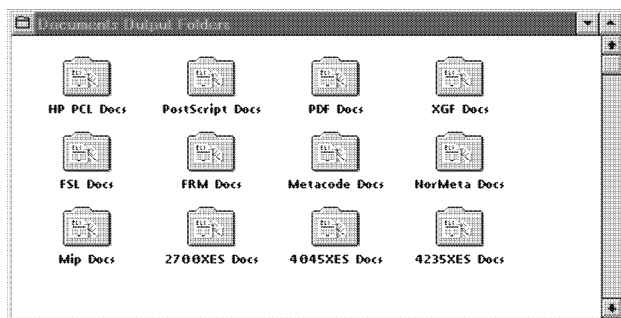


Figure 3-17. Documents Output Folders window

Note that the PDF and VIPP Docs output folders display only if their respective extended converters are installed.

When you use the Converter to convert files (as described in the "File conversions" chapter), output files write to an Output folder with the appropriate file extension, as shown in the following table.

<i>Output Documents folder</i>	<i>DOS subdirectory</i>
FSL Docs	\\ELIXIR\\DOCS\\FSLOUT*.*
FRM Docs	\\ELIXIR\\DOCS\\FRMOUT*.*
Metacode Docs	\\ELIXIR\\DOCS\\METAOUT*.*
NorMeta Docs	\\ELIXIR\\DOCS\\NRMETOUT*.*
Mip Docs	\\ELIXIR\\DOCS\\MIPOUT*.*
HP PCL Docs	\\ELIXIR\\DOCS\\HPOUT*.*
PDF Docs	\\ELIXIR\\DOCS\\PDFOUT*.*
PostScript Docs	\\ELIXIR\\DOCS\\PSOUT*.*
2700 XES Docs	\\ELIXIR\\DOCS\\UDK27OUT*.*
4045 XES Docs	\\ELIXIR\\DOCS\\UDK45OUT*.*
4235 XES Docs	\\ELIXIR\\DOCS\\UDK42OUT*.*
4700 XES Docs	\\ELIXIR\\DOCS\\UDK47OUT*.*
ELIXIR Docs	\\ELIXIR\\DOCS\\ELXOUT*.*
VIPP Docs	\\ELIXIR\\DOCS\\XGFOUT*.*

The above Output Documents folders show all formats to which ElixSys Desktop products can convert.

Jobs folder

The Jobs folder corresponds to the *drive:\ELIXIR\JOBS* directory and contains the subordinate folders shown in the following figure.

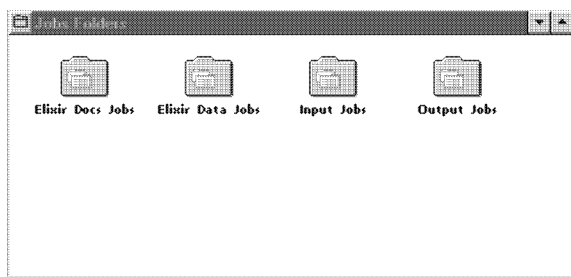


Figure 3-18. Jobs Folder window

The Jobs folder allows you to create multiple-page jobs for printing on 4235 and 4700 XES printers. See the tabbed 4235 Printers and 4700 Printers sections for more information.

Elixir Docs Jobs folder

The Elixir Docs Jobs folder corresponds to the *drive:\ELIXIR\DOCS\DOCLIST* directory and displays a list of Elixir jobs (.DAT files). Each Elixir job is an ASCII file that contains a list of Elixir form files and a job print ticket.

Elixir Data Jobs folder

The Elixir Data Jobs folder displays files in the *drive:\ELIXIR\JOBS\ELIXIR\SYSTEM* directory and contains files created using Elixir AppBuilder. Note that the DOS file names in *drive:\ELIXIR\JOBS\ELIXIR\SYSTEM* are not the same as those in the Elixir Data Jobs folder; rather, the displayed names are extracted from the DOS files.

See the *Elixir AppBuilder for VIPP User Guide* for more information.

Input Jobs folder

The Input Jobs folder contains a subordinate Xerox JDE folder with JDE files for conversion to other document formats.

Output Jobs folder

See the tabbed 4235 and 4700 Printers sections for information on output formats your software version supports.

4. Desktop configuration

To customize your ElixSys Desktop, you can use the **System** menu options shown in the following figure.1



Figure 4-1. System menu

Each option in the **System** menu allows you to perform certain configuration actions:

System Config <Alt> + <F6>

Configures basic system parameters.

Usage Switches

Enables and disables some Desktop functions.

User Privileges

Allows you to set up user access controls.

Diagnostics <Alt> + <F5>

Displays diagnostics information and allows you to access your diagnostic application.

Make Directory <Ctrl> + <M>

Allows you to create a DOS directory.

Converter Props

Displays and lets you modify control parameters for the Converter icon.

Transformer Props

Displays and lets you modify parameters for the Transformer icon.

Reset to Defaults

Resets all configuration parameters to the default values.

Refresh

Refreshes the screen display.

Toolset

Selects different Desktop toolsets.

System configuration

The [System Config] option in the **System** menu (<Alt> + <F6>) allows you to set system configuration parameters. The Desktop Basic Setup dialog box shown in the following figure displays.

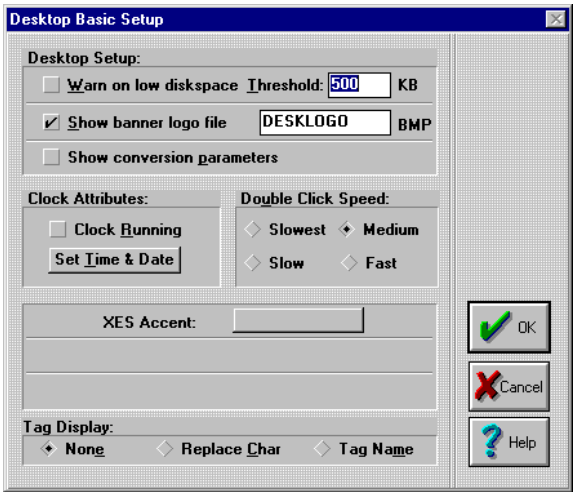


Figure 4-2. Desktop Basic Setup dialog box

The Desktop Basic Setup dialog box contains the following options:

Warn on low disk space

Displays a warning if disk space falls below the value specified in [Threshold]. The default is to not warn.

Threshold

The threshold disk space that triggers a warning to display on your screen — applicable only if you specify Yes for [Warn on low disk space]. The default is 500 KB, and the maximum is 25 MB.

Show banner logo file

The .BMP file that displays each time you start the Desktop, if there are no open windows. The banner logo may not display correctly if the image is very large. Initially, the default logo is DESKLOGO.BMP; you can specify any .BMP file that resides in *drive:\ELIXIR\PICS\BMPIN*.

Show conversion parameters

Displays conversion parameters when converting files.

Clock Attributes

Displays the date and time in the menu bar Message area when you select [Clock Running]. [Set Time and Date] displays a dialog box for setting the current date and time.

Double Click Speed

The speed at which successive mouse clicks interpret as a double-click.

XES Accent

Displays the Browse XES Accent dialog box for selection of an .ISO file in the \ELIXIR\FONTS\MAPS directory. These files determine which accents merge with alpha characters on XES font input.

Tag Display

Prints the data tags included in Elixir forms. [None] does not print the data tags, [Replace Chars] prints the data tag's field length and replacement characters, and [Tag Name] prints the data tag's field name.

Desktop usage switches

The [Usage Switches] option in the **System** menu allows you to customize the Elixir Desktop. Selecting this option displays the Usage Switches dialog box, as shown in the following figure.

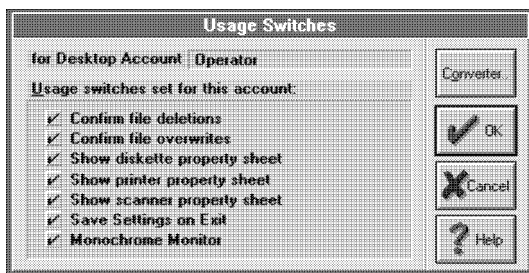


Figure 4-3. Usage Switches dialog box

The Usage Switches dialog box contains the following options:

Confirm file deletions

When deleting one or more files, select to display a Confirmation for Command dialog box. Otherwise, deletes the file(s) without requesting confirmation.

Confirm File Overwrites

When copying one or more files, if a file with the same name exists in the target folder, select to display the Confirmation for Command dialog box. Otherwise overwrites existing file(s) without requesting confirmation. This option is only applicable when you copy files through the Desktop.

Show diskette property sheet

Select to display the Diskette Properties dialog box each time you copy a file to or open the Diskette icon. See the “Additional Desktop features” and “Peripheral devices” chapters for more information.

Show printer property sheet

Select to display the Printer Properties dialog box each time you print a file.

Show scanner property sheet

Select to display the Scanner Properties dialog box each time you use the Scanners icon. See the "Peripheral devices" chapter for more information.

Save Settings on Exit

Retains the Usage Switches changes you made in the current Desktop session, and displays them in future sessions.

Monochrome Monitor

Select to execute the DOS MODE MONO command, required for SIGMA monitors on PS/2 systems, and for newer (after 1990) SIGMA monitors running in monochrome (not gray-scale) mode.

Converter

Displays the Converter Properties Dialog dialog box. See the "Converter properties" section for more information.

User privileges

The [User Privileges] option in the **System** menu, shown in the following figure, allows you to set the level of control over certain Desktop operations for the Elixir Desktop user.

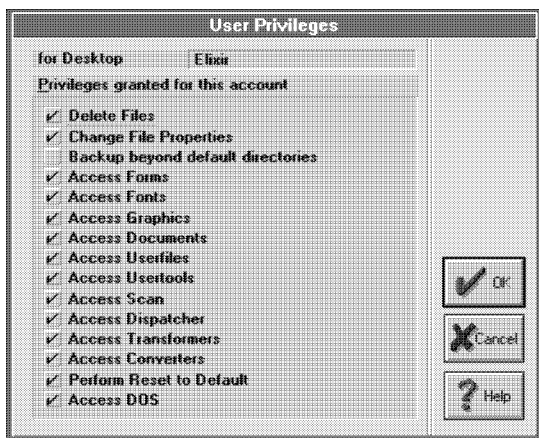


Figure 4-4. User Privileges dialog box

For example, you can choose whether or not to allow a user to access an Elixir application from the Desktop. If you choose not to allow access, the icons representing the Elixir application and its associated folder do not display.

Delete Files

Select to allow setting up the Desktop so users cannot delete files. Otherwise allows deletions.

Change File Properties

Allows users to change the file name in a Properties dialog box for a file.

Backup beyond default directories

In the Elixir file structure, select to allow you to back up directories to the specified drive. When not selected, allows you to back up to the default directory for the Elixir (Forms, Fonts, Graphics, and Documents) folders only. We recommend NOT selecting this option.

Access Forms

Allows access to ElixirForm or Elixir-format form files. The icons representing both do not display on the Desktop if you do not select this option.

Access Fonts

Allows access to ElixiFont or Elixir-format font files. The icons representing both do not display on the Desktop if you do not select this option.

Access Graphics

Allows access to ElixiGraphics or Elixir-format graphics files. The icons representing both do not display on the Desktop if you do not select this option.

Access Documents

Allows access to non-Elixir files. The User Files icon does not display on the Desktop if you do not select this option.

Access Userfiles

Allows access to non-Elixir applications. The User Files icon does not display on the Desktop if you do not select this option.

Access Usertools

Allows access to the User Tools icon. The icon does not display if you do not select this option.

Access Scan

Allows access to the ElixiScan icon. The icon does not display if you do not select this option.

Access Dispatcher

Allows access to the Dispatcher icon. The Dispatcher icon does not display on the Desktop if you do not select this option.

Access Transformers

Allows access to the Transformer icon. The icon does not display if you do not select this option.

Access Converters

Allows access to the Converter icon. The icon does not display if you do not select this option.

Perform Reset to Default

Select to enable resetting system defaults from the System menu.

Access DOS

Allows accessing DOS from the Desktop.

Diagnostics

The [Diagnostics] option in the **System** menu (<Alt> + <F5>) allows you to run a number of diagnostic utilities and to enter a command to run a diagnostic program of your choice. Selecting the option displays the Desktop Diagnostics dialog box, shown in the following figure.

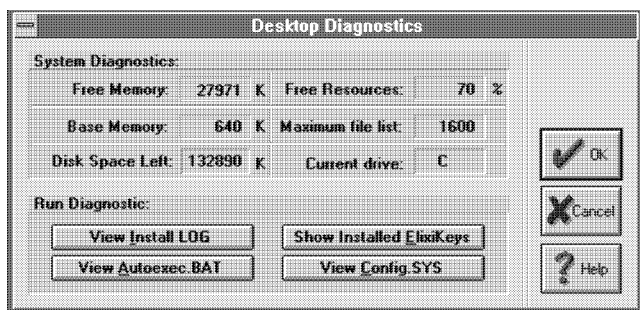


Figure 4-5. Desktop Diagnostics dialog box

Free Memory

Displays available memory in KB. The figure displayed also includes the size of the Windows swap file on your PC.

Free Resources

Displays available Windows resources as a percentage.

Base Memory

Displays total base RAM.

Maximum file list

Displays the maximum number of files that can display in a window.

Disk Space Left

Displays available disk space remaining on the hard disk on which the Desktop displays.

Current drive

Displays the current drive.

View Install LOG

Click on to display the log file INSTALL.LOG that generates when installing Elixir software on your PC. When you report any problems to the Support Center, the center may ask for the contents of this log file to help determine the source of your problem.

View Autoexec.BAT

Click on to display the contents of the AUTOEXEC.BAT file in a window.

Show Installed ElixiKeys

Click on to display installed ElixiKeys on your PC.

View Config.SYS

Click on to display the contents of the CONFIG.SYS file in a window. Available only in Windows 3.11 or Windows for Workgroups operating systems.

Creating a directory

The [Make Directory] option in the **System** menu allows you to create a directory in a path you enter. Selecting this option (<Ctrl> + <M>) displays the Enter Path of Directory to Create dialog box shown in the following figure.

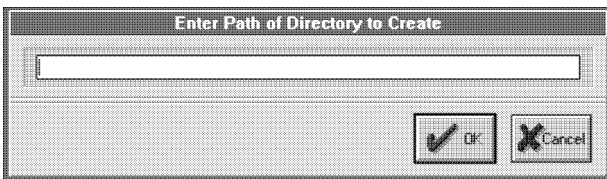


Figure 4-6. Enter Path of Directory to Create dialog box

Enter the name and path of any directory you want to create, then click on [OK] to create the directory.

If you do not enter a full path for a directory name:

- If a window is open, the directory you enter becomes subordinate to the directory corresponding to the window.
- If the Desktop does not display any open windows, the directory becomes subordinate to the root directory, on the drive on which you loaded Elixir software.

Converter properties

The [Converter Props] option in the **System** menu allows you to specify certain initial setup options for converting files. The Converters Properties dialog box in the following figure displays.

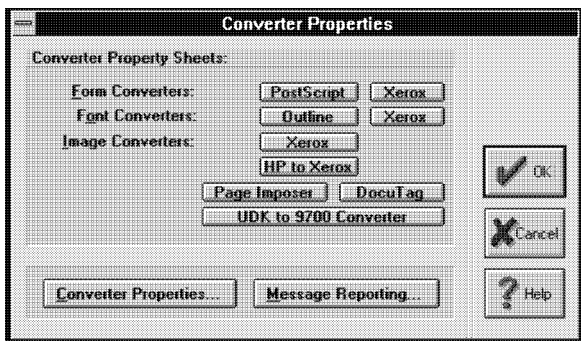


Figure 4-7. Converters Properties dialog box

Converter Property Sheets

Each button displays the appropriate dialog box for specifying setup parameters. The "File conversions" chapter describes these parameters.

Converter Properties

Displays the Converter Properties Dialog dialog box.

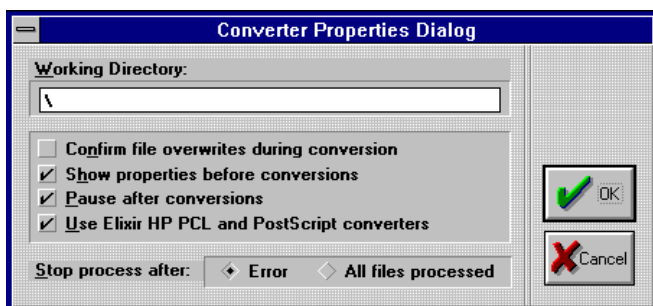


Figure 4-8. Converter Properties Dialog dialog box

Working Directory

The directory in which temporary reads and writes take place during file conversions. The default is the root (\). You should specify a RAM disk for faster conversions.

Show properties before conversions

Displays the appropriate dialog box prior to file conversion. If not selected, the dialog box does not display and the conversion uses previously selected defaults.

Pause after conversions

Specifies a pause after each conversion.

Use Elixir HP PCL and PostScript converters

Specifies use of Elixir's printer drivers when converting Elixir forms to HP PCL and PostScript formats. Leave unselected to use Windows printer drivers. Elixir printer drivers produce optimized files that require substantially less disk space, while creating printer output identical to Windows printer drivers.

When printing forms with highlight color shades, select this option and use the Converter icon to print the forms with gray shading. Using the Printer icon and Elixir HP Driver causes highlight color shades to print as solid black.

Stop process after - Error/All files processed.

Specifies whether you want conversion to stop either after an error or after file processing.

Message Reporting

Displays the Message Options Dialog dialog box.



Figure 4-9. Message Options Dialog dialog box

Select options to show messages after processing or write messages to a .LOG file with the specified stem name.

When writing messages to a .LOG file, you can select to either append new messages to the file, or to overwrite the file.

Due to Windows limitations, when message text exceeds 64 KB, the Message window cannot display the message. In this event, and when you select only [Show messages after processing], you can open the *drive:*\\ELIXIR\\MESSOUT.MSG file to view the message. When you select to both display messages and write them to a .LOG file, you can open the .LOG file to view any messages.

See the "File conversions" chapter for more information about the Converter icon.

Transformer properties

The [Transformer Props] option displays the Transformer Properties dialog box.

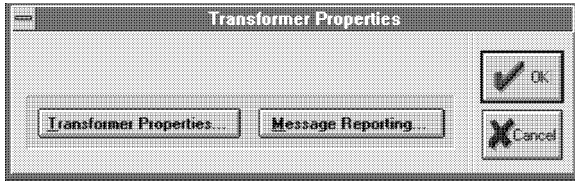


Figure 4-10. Transformer properties dialog box

Click on [Transformer Properties] to display the Transformer Properties Dialog dialog box.

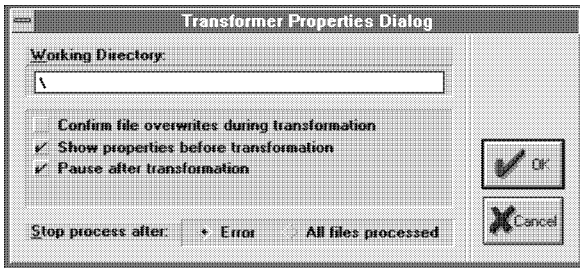


Figure 4-11. Transformer Properties Dialog dialog box

Working Directory

The directory in which temporary reads and writes take place during transformations. The default is the root (\). You should specify a RAM disk for faster transformations.

Confirm file overwrites during transformation

Specifies whether you automatically overwrite existing output files with files you create using the same names. Select to display a dialog box requesting confirmation before overwriting an existing file. Not selecting this option automatically overwrites existing files.

This option is applicable only when transforming form and .LGO files to Elixir format.

Show properties before transformation

Allows you to specify default setup options for dialog boxes for each transformation.

Pause after transformation

Select to pause after each transformation.

Stop process after: Error/All files processed

Select [Error] to stop a conversion when an error is reported, or select [All files processed] to stop a conversion after processing all files.

Clicking on [Message Reporting] in the Transformer Properties dialog box displays the Message Options Dialog box described in the "Converter properties" section earlier in this chapter.

See the "Transformations" chapter for more information about the Transformer icon.

Resetting System menu options

The [Reset to Defaults] option displays a dialog box that allows you to reset (to the initial default values) the specifications you set in the [System Config], [User Privileges], and [Diagnostics] options in the **System** menu.

Refreshing the screen

If closing a window does not completely remove it or leaves "snow" on the screen, use the [Refresh] option in the **System** menu to refresh the screen.

Selecting toolsets

When you install more than one Elixir Desktop on a PC drive, you can switch between Desktops using the [ToolSet] option in the **System** menu.

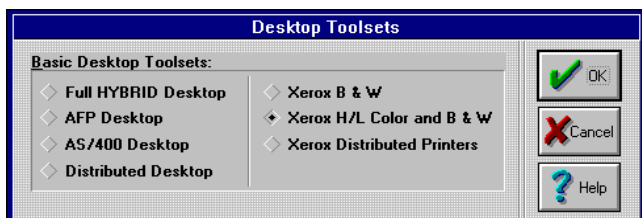


Figure 4-12. Desktop Toolsets dialog box

Desktops differ in icon appearances and allowed file conversions, that display in the Converter icon dialog boxes. See the “File conversions” chapter for more information about file conversions, and the tabbed printer sections for more information about different Desktop versions.

Selecting the [ToolSet] option displays the Desktop Toolsets dialog box shown in the previous figure.

Full HYBRID Desktop

Allows all conversions for all installed Desktop versions.

AFP Desktop

Displays the AFP Desktop.

AS/400 Desktop

Displays the AS/400 Desktop.

Distributed Desktop

Displays the Elixir Forms Editor Desktop.

Xerox B & W

Allows all black-and-white Xerox conversions. Primarily for Elixiform/ElixiSys and ElixiSys for Xerox Distributed Printers users.

Xerox H/L Color and B & W

Displays the Desktop for the Elixir HighLight Option and Plus products. Allows color and black-and-white Xerox conversions, if you installed both versions (for users running both B&W and color monitors and Xerox 4850 and other printers).

Xerox Distributed Printers

Displays the 4235 XES Desktop.

5. Additional Desktop features

This chapter describes additional operations you can perform from the ElixSys Desktop. You can perform all the operations described in this chapter from the **File**, **System** and **Special** menus accessed from the menu bar. You can also perform most of the operations using keyboard shortcuts. Operations described in this chapter include:

- opening icons
- setting icon properties
- displaying/deleting different formats of a file
- displaying a logo at start-up
- copying files
- using the Scheduler Desktop
- viewing files
- printing folder contents

If you are just starting to use the Desktop, you may want to read the “Desktop basics” chapter first to become more familiar with basic Desktop operations.

Opening icons

Opening an icon has different meanings depending on the icon, but generally results in a window or dialog box being displayed (showing some properties of the icon). Depending on the icon, you can modify some displayed properties to affect the performance of the object the icon represents.

You can open an icon in one of the following ways:

- double-click on it
- click on it and press <Enter>
- click on it and select [Open] from the **File** menu

Opening a folder icon

When you open a folder icon, a window showing the contents of the folder displays. A folder may contain files and additional folders. Each folder corresponds to a DOS directory.

Opening Elixir files

Elixir files are files with the generic Elixir format that you access from the Desktop Elixir Folders, for example:

- Elixir-format form files in the Elixir Forms folder (*drive*:\ELIXIR\FORMS\ELIXIR\) and any subordinate folders you define
- Elixir-format font files in the Elixir Fonts folder (*drive*:\ELIXIR\FONTS\ELIXIR\)
- Elixir-format graphics files in the Elixir Graphics folder (*drive*:\ELIXIR\PICS\PRINTER).

When you open an Elixir file, the corresponding Elixir application starts and the file loads in the application.

For example, if you open an Elixir graphics file, the ElixGraphics application starts, and the graphics file loads (displays on the screen) and is ready for editing.

Note that the PC must have the corresponding application installed and enabled. Elixir applications can be enabled/disabled in the **System** menu, as described the “Desktop configuration” chapter.

Note also that you cannot open an Elixir document icon in the Elixir Documents folder (*drive:\ELIXIR\DOCS*).

When you exit the Elixir application, the ElixSys Desktop redisplay.

Opening Elixir application icons

Opening any of the ElixGraphics, ElixFont, or ElixForm application icons at the right of the Desktop starts the application. When you exit the application, the Elixir Desktop redisplay.

Opening device icons

Opening any of the Diskette, Tape, Scanners, or Dispatcher icons displays a setup dialog box, that allows you to set specifications and properties for these items, as follows:

Diskette icon



Opening the Diskette icon displays the System Diskette dialog box which allows you to configure your internal or external diskette drive. See the “Desktop basics” and “Peripheral devices” chapters for more information.

Tape icon



Opening the Tape icon displays a dialog box for setting your Qualstar Tape device parameters. See the “Peripheral devices” chapter for more information.

Scanners icon



Opening the Scanners icon displays the User Application Setup dialog box for configuring a scanner connected to your PC. See the "Peripheral devices" chapter for more information.

Dispatcher icon



Opening the Dispatcher icon displays the Dispatcher Commands dialog box, that allows you to enter DOS batch commands. The "Accessing DOS files and applications" chapter describes this dialog box in detail.

DOS files

The "Accessing DOS files and applications" chapter describes how to use the Elixir Desktop Tool Links to link files in a window (accessed through the User Files icon), to DOS applications. For example, you can link all WordPerfect-format files in a window to the WordPerfect application.

When files in a window link to an application, as described above, opening a file starts the application and loads the file. In the above example, opening a WordPerfect-format text file starts the WordPerfect application and loads the text file.

Icon properties

You can view or modify the specifications and properties of the following Desktop items:

- all files
- Converter icon
- Dispatcher icon
- device (Tape, Diskette, Printers, and Scanners) icons.

To display and modify the properties of any of the above, select the icon, then perform either of the following:

- Press <F2>.
- Press the right mouse button.
- Select [Properties] from the **File** menu.

Files

To display file properties, select one or more files in any open window and press <F2> or select [Properties] from the **File** menu. The File Object Properties dialog box, shown in the following figure displays. See the "Desktop basics" chapter for more information.

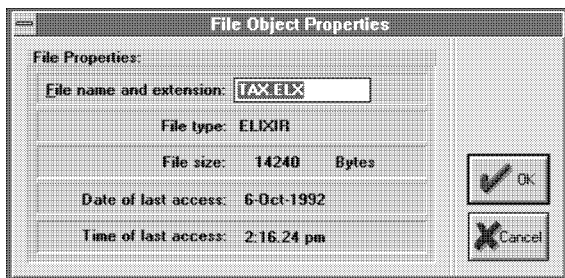


Figure 5-1. File Object Properties dialog box

The File Object Properties dialog box contains the following options:

File name and extension

The name, including any extension, of the selected file. This is the only specification you can change. Enter a new file name and extension to rename the file.

File type

The type of file selected; for example, Elixir, 9700 FSL, HP, etc.

File size

The size of the selected file in bytes.

Date of last access

The date you created or last changed the file.

Time of last access

The time you last accessed the file.

If you select more than one file, a dialog box for each subsequent file displays when you click on [OK] or [Cancel].

Converter icon



Selecting [Properties] for the Converter icon displays the Converter Properties dialog box described in the “Desktop configuration” and “File conversions” chapters.

Dispatcher icon



Selecting [Properties] for the Dispatcher icon displays the same Dispatcher Commands dialog box described in the “Opening icons” section. This dialog box allows you to enter DOS batch commands. See the “Accessing DOS files and applications” chapter for more detail.

Device icons

Selecting [Properties] for any of the Tape, Scanners, Printers, or Diskette icons displays a dialog box showing the current properties of the device.

See the “Peripheral devices” chapter for more information about the above devices.

Different Elixir file formats

When you convert files in Elixir and Input folders, files with the same stem names but different extensions generate in the appropriate Output folders (see the “Elixir folders” and “File conversions” chapters for more information).

The ElixSys Desktop file formats feature allows you to select a file in the Elixir Forms, Fonts, Graphics, or Jobs Desktop folders and to display all files on the same drive with the same stem name but different extensions. This feature also allows you to delete all or selected file formats from the directory.

To display different versions of a file, select the file from the Elixir Forms, Fonts, or Graphics folders, then either press <Ctrl> + <F> or select [Formats] from the **File** menu. The File Formats dialog box, shown in the following figure displays.

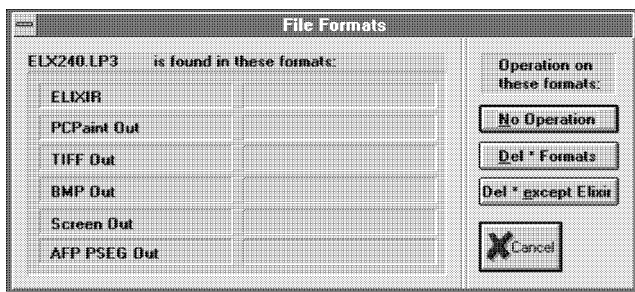


Figure 5-2. File Formats dialog box

The File Formats dialog box contains the following options:

No Operation

Performs no operations on displayed files.

Delete * Formats

Deletes all displayed formats of a selected file.

Delete * except Elixir

Deletes all formats of a selected file, except the Elixir format.

The left side of the dialog box displays different formats of the selected file.

Printing folder contents

You can print a listing of all files displayed in a folder.

To print a list of files in a folder:

1. **Open a folder.**
2. **Select [Print Directory Listing] from the File menu.**

The Print dialog box displays.

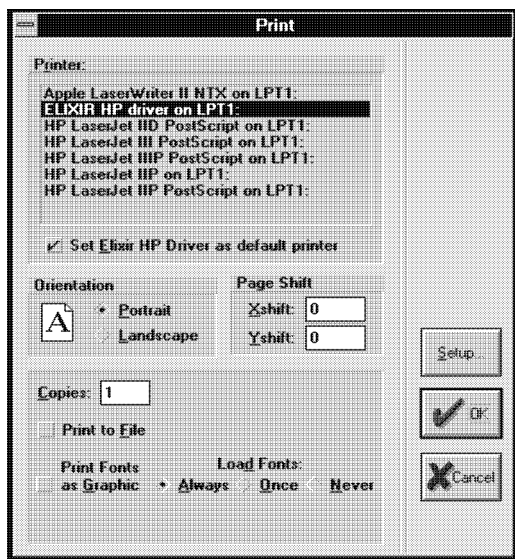


Figure 5-3. Print dialog box

3. **Specify print information, then click on [OK].**

Displaying a logo

You can configure the ElixSys Desktop to display a logo when you first start the Desktop from DOS. The logo displays at the center of the Desktop if you closed all windows when last exiting the Desktop.

The logo that displays may be any .BMP graphics file in *drive:\ELIXIR\PICS\BMPIN*. The default logo is DESKLOGO.BMP.

To specify the logo you want displayed, follow these steps:

1. **Select [System Config] from the System menu.**
2. **In the Desktop Basic Setup dialog box that displays, select [Show banner logo file] and specify the stem name of the .BMP file in the drive:\ELIXIR\PICS\BMPIN directory you want displayed.**

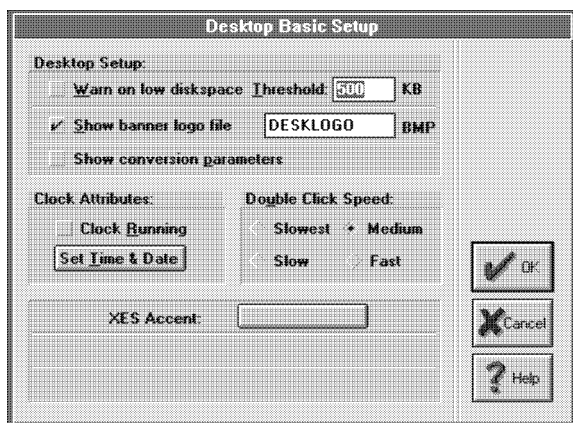


Figure 5-4. Desktop Basic Setup dialog box

Note that the size of the displayed logo changes, depending on your monitor.

Copying files

Copying files involves different procedures, depending on where you copy files to and from, as follows:

- copying files to Elixir folders (represented by the four Elixir folder icons at the top left of the Desktop),
- copying files to and from DOS directories on the hard disk,
- copying files to and from DOS-format diskettes,
- copying files to and from DOS-Elixir format diskettes,
- copying files to and from Xerox printer format diskettes,
- copying files to and from a tape drive,
- copying files to the Viewer icon.

In each case, you select files from a window, then copy them in one of the following ways:

- Drag and drop the files on a destination icon.
- Press <Ctrl> + <C> and click on the destination icon.
- Select [Copy] from the **File** menu, then click on the destination icon.

See the “Overwriting existing files” section in the “Desktop basics” chapter for information about overwriting existing files in a folder.

Copying files to Elixir folders

You copy files to the Elixir folders (represented by the four icons at the top left of the Desktop) when you want to convert the files to different formats. Before conversion, make sure that files have the correct extensions for the folders they are in. See the “Elixir folders” chapter for more information about copying files to Elixir folders.

Copying files to a DOS directory



This section describes how to use the ElixSys Desktop to copy one or more files from any DOS hard disk directory to another.

To copy one or more files in a window to another hard disk directory:

1. **Select the files and drag and drop them on the User Files icon.**

The User Files: Directory Paths and Tool Links dialog box displays.

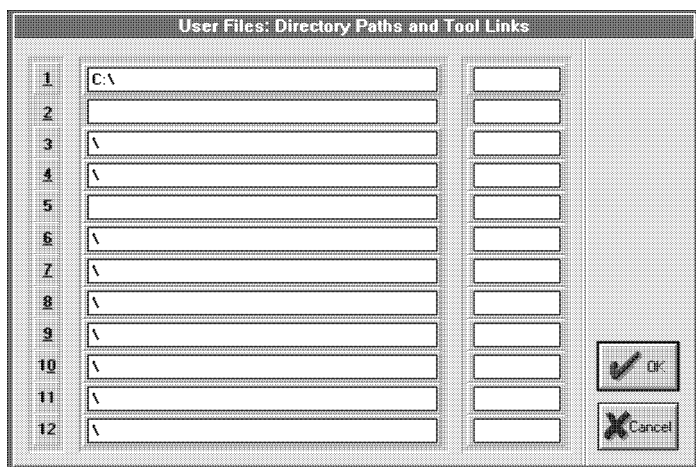


Figure 5-5. User Files: Directory Paths and Tool Links

The dialog box contains lines on which you can specify up to twelve DOS directory paths. The dialog box shows the paths you entered the last time you accessed the icon (as shown in the above figure).

2. Specify the target directory by performing one of the following:

- Select any line and type the directory into which you want to copy files.
- If the directory to which you want to copy files displays, click on it to highlight it.
- Select any line that shows a path and edit it.

If you enter a directory that does not exist, a dialog box displays requesting confirmation to create a new directory.

3. Select [Yes] to create the new directory.

An empty window for the new directory displays.

4. Click on [OK] to copy the files.

See the “Accessing DOS files and applications” chapter for more information.

Copying files from a DOS directory



To copy one or more files from a DOS directory:

- 1. Click on the User Files icon to display the User Files Directory Paths dialog box.**
- 2. Enter the name of the directory from which you want to copy files, or if the path to the directory displays, select it and click on [OK].**

A window displays, showing the contents of the directory.

- 3. In the window, select the files you want to copy, then drag and drop the files to the target icon on the Desktop.**

The target icon can be any of the Elixir folders, the Diskette icon, or the User Files icon.

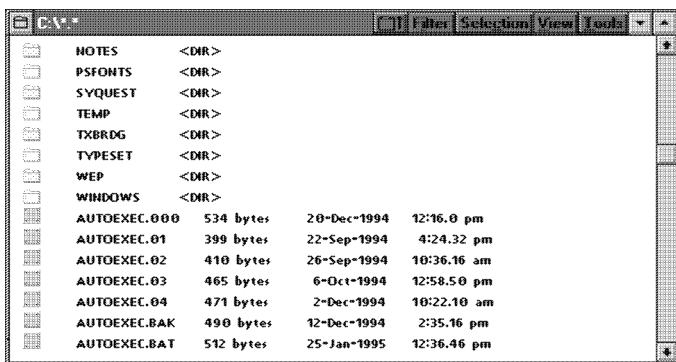


Figure 5-6. Directory window example

Copying files to a DOS-format diskette



To copy selected files from a displayed window to a DOS-format diskette:

1. Insert a diskette into your PC disk drive.
2. Copy the selected files to the Diskette icon on the Desktop.

The System Diskette dialog box displays.

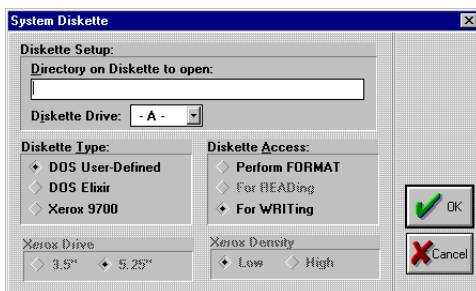


Figure 5-7. System Diskette dialog box

3. In the System Diskette dialog box, specify the following options to copy files to a DOS-format diskette:

Directory on Diskette to open

The diskette directory to which you write files.

Diskette drive

The disk drive identifier for your disk drive, normally A or B.

Diskette Type

To copy files to a DOS directory, select [DOS User-Defined].

Diskette Access

Select [For WRITing] for a formatted diskette.
Select [Perform FORMAT] to perform a DOS format operation on the diskette.

4. Click on [OK] to copy files.

Copying files from a DOS-format diskette



To copy files from a DOS-format diskette:

1. Open the Diskette icon on the Desktop to display the System Diskette dialog box.
2. Specify the following options to copy files from a DOS-format diskette:

Directory on Diskette to open

The diskette directory from which you want to copy files.

Diskette drive

The disk drive identifier for your disk drive, normally A or B.

Diskette Type

To copy files from a DOS directory, select [DOS-User Defined].

A window displays showing the contents of the directory you specify.

3. Select the files you want to copy, then copy the files to a target icon on the Desktop.

Copying files to a DOS-Elixir format diskette



A DOS-Elixir format diskette is a DOS-format diskette that contains the Elixir file directory structure. You can copy files such as .PUB files to a DOS-Elixir format diskette without first creating the destination Elixir directories on the diskette.

To copy selected files from a displayed window to a DOS-Elixir format diskette:

- 1. Insert a diskette into your PC disk drive.**

If the diskette is not already DOS-Elixir formatted, select the [DOS Elixir] and [Perform FORMAT] options to format the diskette before copying files.

- 2. Copy the selected files to the Diskette icon on the Desktop.**

The System Diskette dialog box displays.

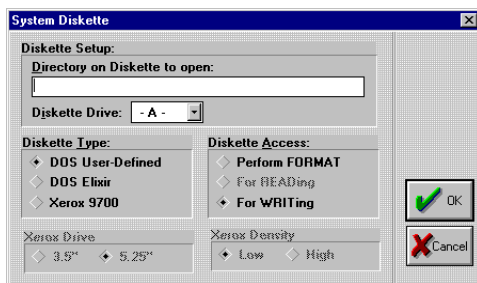


Figure 5-8. System Diskette dialog box

- 3. Specify the following options to copy files to a DOS-Elixir format diskette:**

Directory on Diskette to open

The `drive:\ELIXIR` directory displays when you select DOS Elixir.

Diskette drive

The disk drive identifier for your disk drive, normally A or B.

Diskette Type

To copy files to an DOS Elixir diskette, select [DOS-Elixir].

Diskette Access

Select [For WRITing] for a formatted diskette; select [Perform FORMAT] to perform a DOS format operation and to create an Elixir directory structure on the diskette.

4. Click on [OK] to copy files.

Copying files from a DOS-Elixir format diskette



To copy files from a DOS-Elixir format diskette:

1. Open the Diskette icon on the Desktop to display the System Diskette dialog box.
2. Specify the following options to copy files from a DOS-Elixir format diskette:

Directory on Diskette to open

The drive from which you want to copy files.

Diskette drive

The disk drive identifier for your disk drive, normally A or B.

Diskette Type

To copy files from an Elixir diskette, select [DOS Elixir].

Diskette Access

Select [for READING].

3. Click on [OK].

A window displays showing the contents of the directory you specify.

4. Select the files you want to copy, then copy the files to a target icon on the Desktop.

Copying files to and from a Xerox printer format diskette

You can copy files to and from Xerox 3.5 inch high (1.44 MB) or low (720 KB) density, or 5.25 inch low density diskettes.

The following limitations exist when copying files to and from low-density 5.25 inch Xerox printer format diskettes:



ElixirDisk utilities that read and write floppy diskettes used for carrying data to and from the x9700 printers function on most compatible PCs. ElixirDisk utilities may not function on PCs with motherboard BIOS chips that contain implementations that prohibit operation, however. See the "Stand-alone utilities" chapter for more information about the ElixirDisk utilities.

- IBM PS/2 may not support ElixirDisk utilities. PS/2 users can copy files to the host using a supported PC-to-mainframe communications package.
- Xerox printers use a non-standard diskette format which is different from DOS format. When accessing or copying files to or from Xerox 9700 format diskettes from within the System Diskette dialog box, the ElixirDisk utilities must access the diskette at a hardware level that Windows may not allow. (The utilities must directly access the real (BIOS) memory area, while Windows makes only virtual memory available for these utilities.) Due to these restrictions, Elixir cannot guarantee the results of Xerox 9700 diskette operations from the Desktop. If you experience problems accessing or copying files to or from a Xerox 9700 format diskette, you can use the stand-alone ElixirDisk utilities from the DOS command line.

Copying files to a Xerox printer format diskette

You can copy only the following files from the Elixir folders (at the top left of the Desktop) to Xerox printer format diskettes:

<i>File type</i>	<i>Directory/folder</i>
Font files	<p>9700 Fonts folder (Output) (\ELIXIR\FONTS\X97OUT*.FNT)</p> <p>5WORD Fonts folder (Output) (\ELIXIR\FONTS\FN6OUT*.FNT)</p> <p>9700 Fonts folder (Input) (\ELIXIR\FONTS\X97IN*.FNT)</p> <p>5WORD Fonts folder (Input) (\ELIXIR\FONTS\FN6IN*.FNT)</p>
Form files	<p>9700FRM Forms folder (Output) (\ELIXIR\FORMS\FRMOUT*.FRM)</p> <p>ColorFRM Forms folder (Output) (\ELIXIR\FORMS\FRCOUT*.FRM)</p> <p>9700FRM Forms folder (Input) (\ELIXIR\FORMS\FRMIN*.FRM)</p> <p>ColorFRM Forms folder (Input) (\ELIXIR\FORMS\FRCIN*.FRM)</p> <p>9700FSL Forms folder (Output) (\ELIXIR\FORMS\FSLOUT*.FSL)</p> <p>ColorFSL Forms folder (Output) (\ELIXIR\FORMS\FSCOUT*.FSL)</p> <p>9700FSL Forms folder (Input) (\ELIXIR\FORMS\FSLIN*.FSL)</p> <p>ColorFSL Forms folder (Input) (\ELIXIR\FORMS\FSCIN*.FSL)</p>
Logo files	<p>9700LGO Pics folder (Output) (\ELIXIR\PICS\LGOUT*.LGO)</p>

To copy files to a Xerox printer format diskette:

1. **Insert a diskette into the disk drive.**
2. **Open any of the 9700 folders by clicking on the appropriate Elixir folder icon, then on the Input or Output folder.**
3. **Select the files you want to copy, then copy them to the Diskette icon.**

The System Diskette dialog box displays.

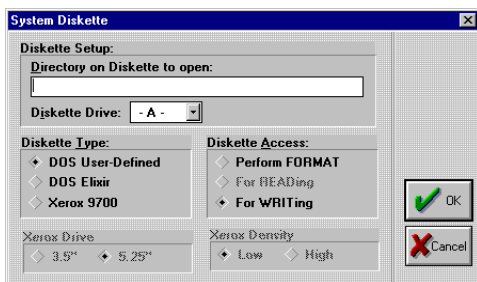


Figure 5-9. System Diskette dialog box

4. **If your 5.25 inch diskette is not Xerox formatted, select [Xerox 9700] and [Perform FORMAT] to perform a Xerox format operation on the diskette.**

If the diskette is Xerox formatted (required for 3.5 inch diskettes), select [Xerox 9700], specify the [Xerox Drive] size and [Xerox Density] type, select [For WRITing], and then click on [OK] to copy the files.

Copying files from a Xerox printer format diskette

You can copy the following files from Xerox printer format diskettes to the Elixir folder icons:

<i>File type</i>	<i>Directory/folder</i>
Font files	9700 Fonts folder (\ELIXIR\FONTS\X97IN*.FNT) 5WORD Fonts folder (\ELIXIR\FONTS\FN6IN*.FNT)
Form files	9700FRM Forms folder (\ELIXIR\FORMS\FRMIN*.FRM) ColorFRM Forms folder (Input) (\ELIXIR\FORMS\FRCIN*.FRM) ColorFSL Forms folder (Input) (\ELIXIR\FORMS\FSCIN*.FSL) 9700FSL Forms folder (\ELIXIR\FORMS\FSLIN*.FSL)
Logo files	9700LGO Pics folder (\ELIXIR\PICS\LGOIN*.LGO) ColorLGO Pics folder (Input) (\ELIXIR\PICS\LGCIN*.LGO)
Graphics files	IMG Pics folder (\ELIXIR\PICS\IMGIN*.IMG)

To copy files from a Xerox printer format diskette:

- 1. Insert a Xerox printer format diskette into the disk drive.**

2. **Double-click on the Diskette icon to display a Diskette Properties dialog box similar to the one shown in the previous figure.**
3. **In the dialog box, specify the diskette drive, [Xerox 9700] type, [Xerox Drive] size, [Xerox Density] type, and [For READING].**
4. **A window showing the contents of the Xerox diskette displays. Select the files you want to copy, then drag and drop the files to the appropriate Elixir folder (and sub-folders) at the top left of the Desktop.**

Copying files to and from a tape



To copy files to and from a tape, first make sure you configure the tape drive as described in the "Peripheral devices" chapter.

<i>File type</i>	<i>Directory/folder</i>
Font files	9700 Fonts folder (\ELIXIR\FORMS\X97IN*.FNT)
Form files	9700FRM Forms folder (\ELIXIR\FORMS\FRMIN*.FRM) ColorFRM Forms folder (\ELIXIR\FORMS\FRCIN*.FRM) 9700FSL Forms folder (\ELIXIR\FORMS\FSLIN*.FSL) ColorFSL Forms folder (\ELIXIR\FORMS\FSCIN*.FSL)
Logo files	9700LGO Pics folder (\ELIXIR\PICS\LGOIN*.LGO) ColorLGO Pics folder (Input) (\ELIXIR\PICS\LGCIN*.LGO)
Graphics files	IMG Pics folder (\ELIXIR\PICS\IMGIN*.IMG)

Copying files from a tape

You can copy only the following files from a tape to the Elixir folders on your PC.

To copy files from a tape:

1. Double-click on the Tape icon.

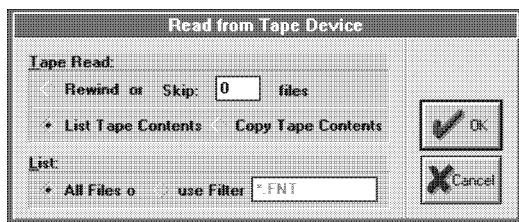


Figure 5-10. Read From Tape Device dialog box

The Read from Tape Device dialog box displays with the following options:

Rewind

Rewinds the tape to the beginning.

Skip xxx files

Rewinds the tape then skips forward by the number of files you specify (1 - 999). This option is useful if you know the order of files on the tape.

List Tape Contents

Displays a window showing all files on the tape, then rewinds the tape.

Copy Tape Contents

Copies the files you specify to the hard disk.

All Files

Copies or displays all files on the tape.

use Filter

Allows you to use wildcard characters for file extensions to specify files for copying or display.

2. **To copy all files, select [All Files] and [Copy Tape Contents].**

To copy selected files, select [List Tape Contents], then select the files you want to copy.

3. **Click on [OK] to copy files to the appropriate folders listed at the beginning of this section.**

For example, to copy all Xerox .FRM files from tape to the appropriate directory on the hard drive:

1. **Open the Tape icon to display the Read from Tape Device dialog box.**
2. **Click on Rewind, enter *.FRM for [use Filter], click on [Copy Tape Contents], then click on [OK].**

The tape rewinds to the beginning and all .FRM files copy to the Input 9700 FRM Forms folder (*drive:\ELIXIR\FORMS\FRMIN*).

Please note that the tape copy operation does not support copying color .FRM files from tape to the *drive:\ELIXIR\FORMS\FRCIN* directory (color .FRMs also copy to *drive:\ELIXIR\FORMS\FRMIN*).

CAUTION: If the tape drive is not ready, a dialog box displays requesting you to cancel or retry. Due to uncontrollable DOS error messages, you may need to perform one or more of the following:

- click on [Cancel] more than once to cancel the copy operation
- turn the tape drive on
- reboot your PC
- refresh the screen.

Copying files to a tape

You can copy the following files from Elixir folders to tape:

<i>File type</i>	<i>Directory/folder</i>
Font files	9700 Fonts folder (Output) (\ELIXIR\FONTS\X97OUT*.FNT) 9700 Fonts folder (Input) (\ELIXIR\FONTS\X97IN*.FNT) 5WORD Fonts folder (Output) (\ELIXIR\FONTS\FN6OUT*.FNT) 5WORD Fonts folder (Input) (\ELIXIR\FONTS\FN6IN*.FNT)
Form files	9700FRM Forms folder (Output) (\ELIXIR\FORMS\FRMOUT*.FRM) ColorFRM Forms folder (Output) (\ELIXIR\FORMS\FRCOUT*.FRM) 9700FRM Forms folder (Input) (\ELIXIR\FORMS\FRMIN*.FRM) ColorFRM Forms folder (Input) (\ELIXIR\FORMS\FRCIN*.FRM) 9700FSL Forms folder (Output) (\ELIXIR\FORMS\FSLOUT*.FSL) ColorFSL Forms folder (Output) (\ELIXIR\FORMS\FSCOUT*.FSL) 9700FSL Forms folder (Input) (\ELIXIR\FORMS\FSLIN*.FSL) ColorFSL Forms folder (Input) (\ELIXIR\FORMS\FSCIN*.FSL)

Logo files	9700LGO Pics folder (Output) (\ELIXIR\PICS\LGOUT*.LGO) ColorLGO Pics folder (Output) (\ELIXIR\PICS\LGCOU*.LGO) 9700 LGO Pics folder (Input) (\ELIXIR\PICS\LGAIN*.LGO) ColorLGO Pics folder (Input) (\ELIXIR\PICS\LGAIN*.LGO)
Graphics files	IMG Pics folder (Output) (\ELIXIR\PICS\IMGOUT*.IMG) ColorIMG Pics folder (Output) (\ELIXIR\PICS\IMCOU*.IMG) IMG Pics folder (Input) (\ELIXIR\PICS\IMGIN*.IMG) ColorIMG Pics folder (Input) (\ELIXIR\PICS\IMCIN*.IMG)

To copy files to tape:

1. **Open any of the folders shown in the above table and select the files you want to copy.**
2. **Copy the files to the Tape icon.**

The Write to Tape Device dialog box displays with the following option:

Rewind

Rewinds the tape to the beginning.

Skip xxx files

Fast-forwards the tape by the number of files you specify (1 - 999). This option is useful if you know the order of files on the tape and want to append files after a certain file number.

Skip to end of Tape

Fast-forwards to just before the end-of-tape marker and allows you to append files to the end of the tape.

Copy to Tape

Copies the files you selected to tape.

3. Click on [OK].

Copying files from Output to Input folders

The following procedure describes how to copy one or more files from an Output Forms, Fonts, or Graphics folder to a corresponding Input folder. You can use this procedure to convert a file in an Output folder to another format. However, as described previously in this chapter, before you convert a file, you must first copy it to an Input folder.

- 1. Open an Elixir Forms, Fonts, or Graphics folder, then open the Output folder in the displayed window, and select the output file(s) you want to copy from the appropriate output folder.**
- 2. Copy the file(s) to the destination Elixir icon on the Desktop.**

The selected file(s) copy into the appropriate Input folder.

Note:

- You cannot copy files directly from the Output Documents folder to the Input Documents folder. Instead, you must copy them to the User Files icon, and in the displayed User Files Directory Paths and Tool Links dialog box, specify the DOS path for the appropriate Document Input folder.
- You cannot copy files from an Input folder to an Output folder.

Copying Elixir form files

You cannot use standard DOS or Elixir copy procedures to copy Elixir form files because Elixir form files contain elements (such as text, font, and graphics) located in different Elixir directories.

To copy a form file and all associated elements, you use the Desktop archival feature.

The archival feature allows you to create a publication (.PUB) file containing references to all font, graphics, and form information for an Elixir-format (.ELX) form file in the Elixir Forms folder (*drive:\ELIXIR\FORMS\ELIXIR*).

Creating a .PUB file

To create a .PUB file for an Elixir form file:

1. **Open the Elixir Forms folder and select the .ELX file you want to archive.**
2. **Select [Make Pubfile] from the Selection menu.**

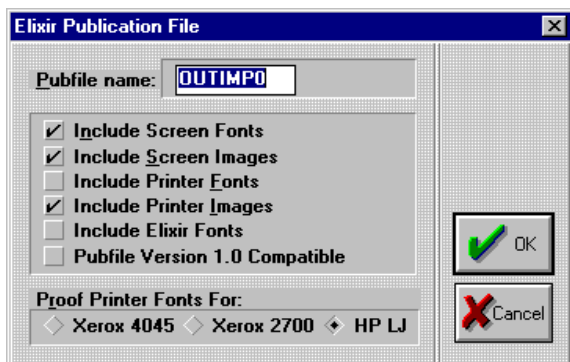


Figure 5-11. Elixir Publication File dialog box

The Elixir Publication File dialog box displays with the following options:

Pubfile name

The name of the .PUB file you want to create, based on the stem name of the .ELX file.

Include Screen Fonts

Includes screen fonts in the .PUB file.

Include Screen Images

Includes screen images in the .PUB file.

Include Printer Fonts

Includes proof printer fonts (for the proof printer you specify in the [Proof Printer Fonts for] option) in the .PUB file. Also includes rotated fonts, if used.

Include Printer Images

Includes printer images in the .PUB file.

Include Elixir Fonts

Includes Elixir versions of the fonts in the .PUB file.

Pubfile Version 1.0 Compatible

Disables the [Include Elixir Fonts] option so that .PUB files you create are usable in previous versions of the Desktop.

Proof Printer Fonts for

Allows you to specify your proof printer as [Xerox 4045], [Xerox 2700], or [HP LJ].

The Desktop creates a .PUB file in the Elixir Forms folder with the same stem name as the file you selected. If a .PUB file with the same name exists in the Elixir Forms folder, the program prompts you to confirm overwriting it.

You can view the contents of a .PUB file by double-clicking on its icon.

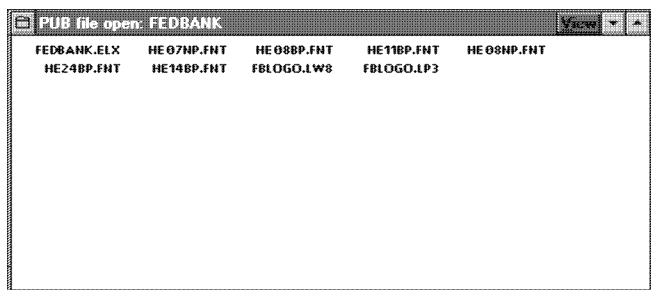


Figure 5-12. Publication file components example

Copying a .PUB file to a diskette

To copy a .PUB file to a diskette:



1. **Insert a formatted diskette into your diskette drive. Open the diskette icon and make sure that [Diskette Drive] indicates the correct drive.**
2. **Select the .PUB file from the Elixir Forms window.**
3. **Select [Archive Pubfile] from the Selection menu.**

Alternatively, copy the .PUB file to the Diskette icon.

All directories required for each element of the .PUB file and all related files copy to the diskette. If a .PUB file with the same name exists on the diskette, the program prompts you to confirm overwriting it. Your confirmation also overwrites any component files with the same stem name.

Restoring a .PUB file from a diskette

To copy a .PUB file and all associated graphics, font and form files from a diskette to your hard disk:



1. **Insert the diskette into your diskette drive, open the diskette icon, and select [DOS Elixir] to display a window with the diskette contents.**
2. **Display the *drive:\ELIXIR\FORMS\ELIXIR* (or subordinate directory) window in which the .PUB file resides.**
3. **Copy the .PUB file icon to the Desktop Forms icon.**
4. **Click on the Elixir Forms folder in the displayed window.**

The .PUB file and all associated files copy to the appropriate Elixir folders. If a .PUB file with the same name exists in the Elixir Forms folder, the program prompts you to confirm overwriting it. Your confirmation also overwrites any existing component files with the same stem name.

If you restore a .PUB file to a PC with a different monitor than the PC from which you copied the form file, your screen fonts and screen graphics may not display correctly. For correct font and graphics display, use the Converter icon (described in the “File conversions” chapter) to regenerate the screen fonts and graphics.

Using the Elixir Scheduler Desktop

The Elixir Scheduler Desktop allows you to specify automated actions and to specify conditions for performing the actions.

The actions you can specify are:

- file conversions,
- running transcripts,
- executing an application defined as a user tool,
- executing an application defined in the Dispatcher icon,
- executing any .BAT, .EXE, or .COM command.

The conditions you can specify for performing the above actions are:

- the date and/or time for performing an action,
- checking for the existence of a file before performing an action,
- performing an action at specified intervals.

Examples of automated actions you can specify with the Scheduler Desktop are:

- If files in an Input Folder are present, convert them to one or more formats.
- At a certain time, perform a certain action (such as back up files).

(Detailed examples are given later this section.)

In addition, if you installed the Elixir Desktop on a dedicated PC attached to a network, the Scheduler enables uploading files to another destination, for example, to a high-speed printer.

An example of a Scheduler setup on a network follows:

- You can print an application document to a file on a Network Scheduler.
- The Scheduler Desktop detects the file and converts it from its native format to a high speed printer format.
- The Scheduler then automatically sends the file to the printer for processing.

Scheduler setup

To execute operations from the Scheduler Desktop, follow these steps:

First, install the Scheduler Desktop on a dedicated PC attached to the network.

If you want to specify automated file conversions, follow steps 1 through 3. If you want to specify actions other than file conversions (such as executing batch files), go to step 5.



1. **Open the User Files icon and specify the Network Scheduler directory to which the files print to disk (see the "Accessing DOS files and applications" chapter for more information).**



2. **Install the appropriate converter on the Network Scheduler drive or set its input and output paths to the Network Scheduler drive.**
3. **Right-click on the Dispatcher icon and set up the Dispatcher to run the files for conversion through a DOS batch file (see the "Accessing DOS files and applications" chapter for more information). Note the line number as you will need it later.**
4. **Click on [Setup] in the Dispatcher Commands dialog box and in the displayed User Application Setup box, click on [Send only Filename] option.**

Create the batch file to perform the following:

- convert input Dispatcher files to the output format you previously set up in the Desktop
- write an error log; you can set the Scheduler desktop to check for the existence of the log and to pause or to transmit an error message if it exists
- send files directly to the printer
- delete any unwanted files on the PC.

(Later, this chapter describes the above actions in more detail.)

5. **Set up the Scheduler Desktop by selecting [Scheduler Setup] from the Special menu, or by pressing <Alt> + <F2>**
6. **Make the appropriate selections in the Scheduler Setup dialog box shown in the following figure.**

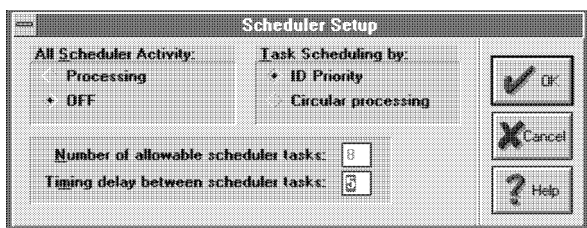


Figure 5-13. Scheduler Setup dialog box

The Scheduler Setup dialog box contains the following options:

All Scheduler Activity

Sets processing to [Processing] (on) or [OFF] for up to eight Scheduler actions. [Processing] polls each Scheduler action to test it for a TRUE condition. If a Scheduler action tests TRUE a consequent action takes place.

Task Scheduling by

The processing mode. [ID Priority] processes Scheduler actions using number 1 as the highest priority, and number 8 as the lowest priority. [Circular processing] processes Scheduler actions sequentially without priority.

Number of allowable scheduler tasks

The number of Scheduler actions tested for when you select [Processing]. The maximum is eight actions.

Timing delay between scheduler tasks

The frequency at which the Scheduler tests for TRUE Scheduler actions, in seconds.

7. **Set up the Scheduler action by selecting [Scheduler Actions] from the Special menu, or pressing <Alt> + <F3>.**

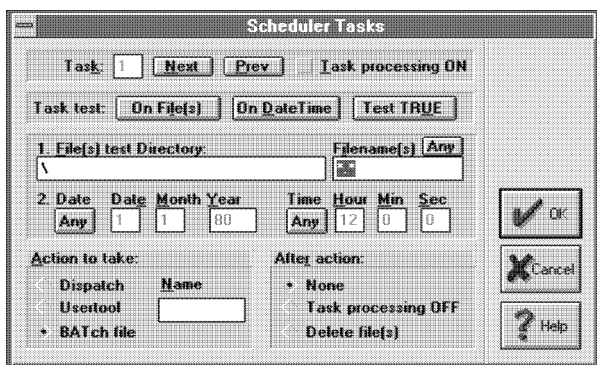


Figure 5-14. Scheduler Tasks dialog box

The Scheduler Tasks dialog box displays with the following options:

Task

Allows definition of up to eight Scheduler actions (tasks), and to set [Task processing ON] (selected) or off (unselected). Click on [Next] or [Prev] to display and to modify tasks 1 through 8.

Task test

[On File(s)] tests for the existence of a file in a directory, both of which you specify (see next options),

[On DateTime] tests for a specified PC date and time, and [Test TRUE] continually executes the specified action at the timing interval specified in step 5.

File(s) test Directory

The directory in which the Scheduler checks for the existence of a file if you select [On File(s)] in Task test.

Filename(s)

The file for which the Scheduler checks if you select [On File(s)] in Task test. DOS wildcards are permissible. [Any] searches for any files in the specified directory.

Date

When testing for passage of a specified date, enter the [Date] (day), [Month], and [Year] you want the Scheduler action processed. Select [Any] after the date to process the Scheduler action every day at the time specified by Time.

Time

When testing for passage of a specified time, enter the [Hour], [Min], and [Sec] you want the Scheduler action processed.

Action to take

Select [Dispatch] and enter the number of the Dispatcher command to process the Dispatcher command, [User tool] to process the user tool, or [BATch file] to process the batch file specified in [Name].

After action

[Delete files] deletes files after the Scheduler action, [Task processing OFF] turns processing off after the action, and [None] specifies that the Scheduler continues processing for further actions.

Please note the following Scheduler operation conditions:

- The Scheduler Desktop pauses during keystrokes, mouse clicks or movements, menu pull down operations, and dialog displays, but resumes polling after an allotted time delay once these actions end.
- To operate the Scheduler with the [Date/Time] option, select the [System Config] option in the **System** menu and set the system clock on ([Clock Running]) in the Desktop Basic Setup dialog box that displays.
- To reset the Scheduler functions to defaults, enter the following command at the DOS prompt:

DEL\ELIXIR\DESKTOP\SYSTEM\DISPATCH*.SRV <Enter>

The Scheduler Desktop is single tasking and you must operate it on a dedicated workstation. You can accomplish full Scheduler operations without using network interrupts, all from a DOS-based system.

- The Scheduler Desktop is operational in non-network environments, and can process files sent over modems for printing to a remote printer.

Scheduler Desktop examples

This section describes examples of using the Scheduler Desktop.

Scheduler example 1

The following example describes setting up a Scheduler action to run a batch file at one minute past noon.

The example assumes that the Scheduler Desktop is on a dedicated PC, attached to a network, and if applicable, the Network Scheduler directory to which files print to disk is defined.

1. **Select the [Scheduler Setup] option from the Special menu and select the options you want in the dialog box that displays.**
2. **Select the [Scheduler Actions] option from the Special menu and enter or select the following to set up a Scheduler action based on a DateTime test:**

[Task] 2
[Task test] **On DateTime**
[Filename(s) test Directory] *.SYS
[Date] 02 [Month] 12 [Year] 92
[Hour] 12 [Min] 1 [Sec] 0
[Action to take] **BATchFile**
[Name] **JOBXXX**
[After action] **Task processing OFF**

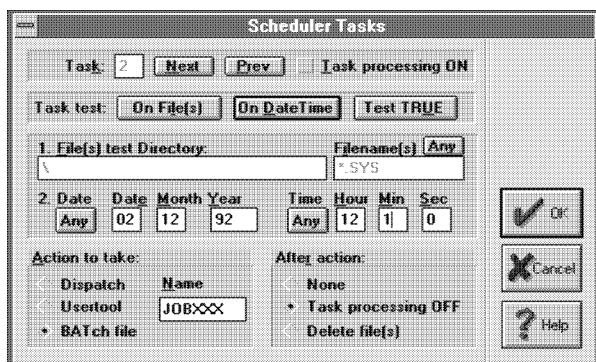


Figure 5-15. Testing for a passed date/time example

This example sets up Scheduler task number 2 to run the file JOBXXX on 12/02/92 at 12:01 PM.

If [Any] is selected for the Date, the Scheduler action would occur every day at 12:01 PM.

Scheduler example 2

The following example describes setting up a Scheduler action that continuously runs a utility at specified time intervals.

1. Select the [Scheduler Setup] option from the Special menu and select the options you want in the dialog box that displays.
2. Select the [Scheduler Actions] option from the Special menu and enter or select the following to set up a Scheduler action based on a Test TRUE test:

[Task] 3
 [Task test] Test TRUE
 [Action to take] User tool
 [Name] NETCOMX
 [After action] None

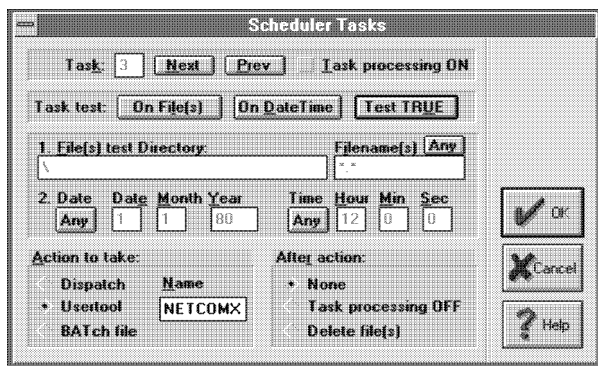


Figure 5-16. Testing for a TRUE condition example

This example sets up Scheduler action number 3 to run the user tool NETCOMX continuously at intervals specified in step 4 in the Scheduler setup section.

You can use this Scheduler action to periodically send messages over the network to inform nodes that the Scheduler is active and waiting.

Viewing files



The Viewer icon allows you to link applications to file extensions so that copying a file with a certain extension to the icon starts the application and loads the file.

For example, you can link all .PCX file to the Windows PaintBrush program so that copying a .PCX file to the Viewer icon starts PaintBrush and displays the .PCX file.

To link applications to file extensions, use any ASCII editor to edit the ELX.INI file in the *drive:\WINDOWS* directory.

You can also right-click on the Viewer icon to start Windows Notepad with ELX.INI loaded.

In the file, under the [Viewer_Filemap] section add lines in the following format:

extension=application

- *extension*
is the file extension
- *application*
is the executable linked to *extension*.

For example:

PCX=PBRUSH.EXE

Copying a .PCX file to the Viewer icon launches the PaintBrush application and loads the .PCX file.

Viewing Elixir graphics files



The Viewer icon also allows you to display Elixir format graphics (.LP3) and screen graphics (.LW8) by copying these files to the icon.

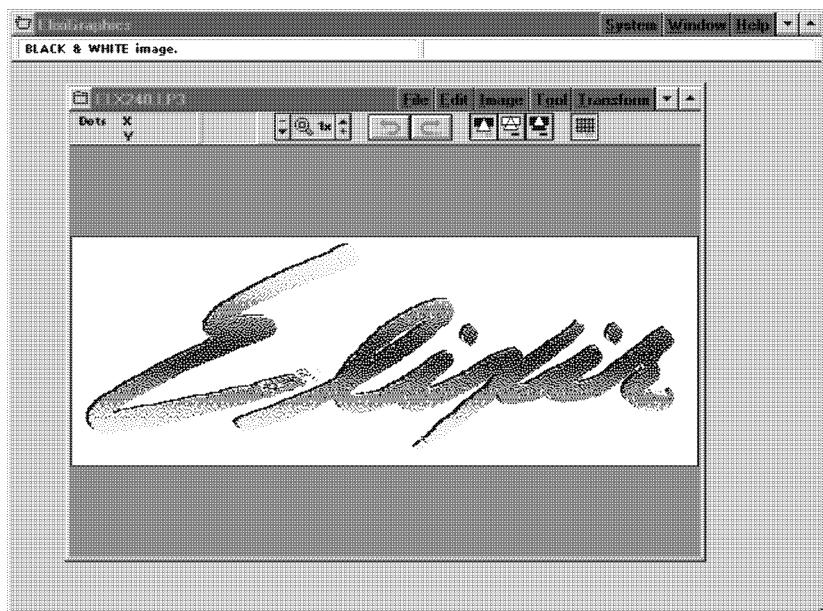


Figure 5-17. Elixir graphics (.LP3) display example

The Elixir Image Viewer application displays Elixir graphics or the screen versions of Elixir graphics in an image window, as shown in the above example.

From the **File** menu select [Attributes] to display information about the graphics, [Print] to print the graphics, and [Exit] to exit the Viewer.

Click on the arrows in the image window header to zoom in to 2X, 4X, 8X, 16X, and 32X magnifications and to zoom out to -2X, -4X, and -8X magnifications. The printed image size also displays (PRN displays in the window header).

When displaying magnifications greater than 1X, the left of the window displays the magnified view and the right of the window shown a portion of the image at 1X magnification.

Click on the button to the right of the arrow to toggle a grid at magnifications of 8X or greater.

Move the screen pointer in the window to display its coordinates (in dots) with respect to the top left corner of the image.

Setting the default Elixiform font

By default, Elixiform uses screen fonts when creating forms. You can change the default to Elixir-generic format fonts by editing a parameter in the ELX.INI file.

To set the default Elixiform font to Elixir-generic format:

- 1. Close all open Elixir products.**
- 2. Open the ELX.INI file (typically in C:\WINDOWS, C:\WIN95, or C:\WINNT) in the Windows Notepad or Wordpad.**
- 3. In the [AdvancedOptions] section, change the value of the PreferScreenFonts parameter from 1 to 0.**

"1" represents screen fonts, and "0" represents Elixir-generic fonts

- 4. Restart Elixir for the change to take effect.**

6. Peripheral devices

This chapter describes how to access and use peripheral devices connected to your PC. Devices covered in this chapter include:

- diskette drives (internal or external)
- scanners
- tape drive units.

The tabbed "Local printers" section covers use of a supported local printer.

Diskette drive

You access diskette drives through the Desktop Diskette icon.



The Diskette icon allows you to:

- specify the drive letter of the diskette drive you want to access,
- copy files from the hard disk to a diskette,
- copy files from a diskette to the hard disk,
- format a high or low density diskette in DOS or DOS-Elixir formats (DOS format with the standard Elixir directory structure on the diskette),
- format a low density 5.25 inch diskette with the Xerox printer format.
- access various Xerox diskette drives

The “Additional Desktop features” chapter provides procedures for copying DOS and Xerox printer format files to and from diskettes.

To assign a drive letter or to format diskettes, open the Diskette icon to display the System Diskette dialog box shown in the following figure. This dialog box also displays when you copy one or more files to a diskette (by copying file icons to the Diskette icon).

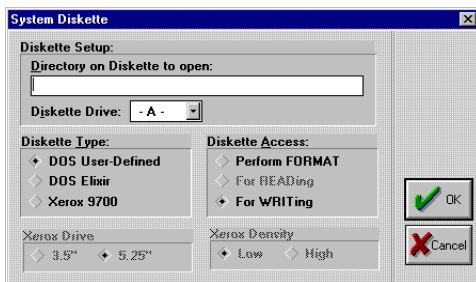


Figure 6-1. System Diskette dialog box

Diskette Setup

To specify a drive letter, enter the letter in the [Diskette Drive] option. Any actions you subsequently perform using the Diskette icon apply to the diskette drive you specify.

Diskette Access

To format a diskette, select [Perform FORMAT], then select the format type for the [Diskette Type] option.

When you format a diskette the following options apply:

Diskette Type

[DOS User-Defined] formats the diskette using the DOS FORMAT command.

[DOS Elixir] formats the diskette using the DOS FORMAT command and creates an \ELIXIR subdirectory on the diskette.

[Xerox 9700] formats only a low density 5.25 inch diskette using the XFORMAT utility (for more information about XFORMAT see the "Stand-alone utilities" chapter.)

When you copy files to and from a diskette, the following options also apply:

Directory on Diskette to open

The diskette directory you want to access (not valid for [Xerox 9700]). The default is A:*.*

Diskette Access

[For READing] displays a dialog box showing a list of files and directories on the diskette.

[For WRITing] copies hard disk files to the diskette.

Xerox Drive

[3.5"] (for 3.5 inch Xutilities users) or [5.25"] specifies the size of the Xerox diskette and drive.

Xerox Density

[High] (for 3.5 inch Xutilities users) or [Low] specifies the density of the Xerox diskette drive.

Tape drive



The Tape icon on the Elixir Desktop allows you to copy Xerox production printer format files (listed in the "Additional Desktop features" chapter) to and from any 9-track, 1600 BPI tape drive using the Overland TX-8 controller card.

The tape devices supported are the Qualstar 1052 and the Qualstar 1260.

Configuring your PC for the tape drive

Copy the TAPE_MT0.SYS file (and if provided, the LDIMG.EXE file) from the driver diskette supplied by Qualstar to the root directory on your PC.

Add the following line to your CONFIG.SYS file:

DEVICE = TAPE_MT0.SYS 8

If LDIMG.EXE is present on the Qualstar driver diskette, add the following line to your AUTOEXEC.BAT file:

LDIMG

Opening the tape icon

You can open the Tape icon by double-clicking on it, selecting [Open] or [Properties] from the **File** pull-down menu, or by pressing <F2>.

Opening the Tape icon displays the Read From Tape Device dialog box shown in the following figure.

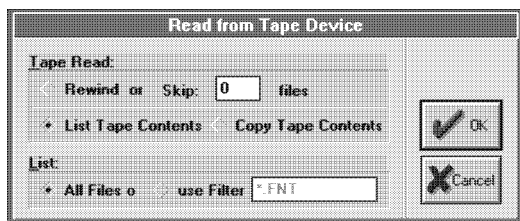


Figure 6-2. Read From Tape Device dialog box

The Read from Tape Device dialog box contains the following options:

Rewind

Rewinds the tape mounted on your tape drive.

Skip xxx files

Allows you to specify the position on the tape after which files begin to write. You specify the position as number of files after the start of the tape (between 1 and 999). This option is useful if you know the order of files on the tape.

List Tape Contents

Displays a dialog box showing files on the tape and rewinds the tape.

Copy Tape Contents

Copies selected files to the hard disk.

List

[All Files] - copies or displays all files on the tape.

[use Filter] - allows you to specify a filter on the file extension.

For more information and examples of copying files to and from a supported tape drive, see the “Additional Desktop features” chapter.

Non-responding tape drive

If the tape device is off or does not respond, a dialog box requests that you cancel or retry the tape copy operation. You may have to click on [Cancel] more than once to cancel the operation. The software operating environment sometimes attempts to access the tape drive after repeated cancel requests. In such case, turn the tape drive on, then cancel the request.

Scanner device



You can access any scanning device connected to your PC through the Desktop Scanners icon when you have the appropriate scanner software installed that can create 300 dpi .TIF or .PCX files.

Before using your scanner, configure the Desktop as described in the following section.

You can only run one scanner from the Desktop.

Configuration

To use your scanner from the Desktop, first set the scanner specifications as follows:

Select the Scanners icon and press <F2> or select [Properties] from the **File** menu. The User Application Setup dialog box shown in the following figure displays:

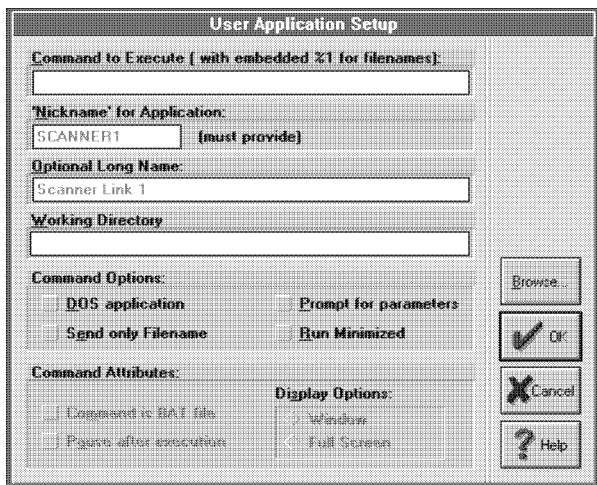


Figure 6-3. User Application Setup dialog box

The User Application Setup dialog box contains the following options:

Command to Execute

The command that executes the application you want associated with the icon. For example, to create a WordPerfect icon, you would specify WP.

If you want to link the application to files in the same directory as the application (see the “Linking files to an already-defined User Tool” section), you can also type in the DOS command with an embedded %1 parameter. The embedded %1 parameter specifies the location in the command at which you want the file name to display. See also the [Prompt for parameters] option.

'Nickname' for Application

A nickname (up to 8 characters) for the application you want to run. For example, you may specify VENT as a nickname for Ventura Publisher. After creating an icon, the User Tools window displays the icon with the nickname under it.

Optional Long Name

A descriptive name for the application (up to 29 characters). For example, for Ventura Publisher, you can enter Ventura Publisher. The long name is informational only; it identifies the application in the dialog box.

Working Directory

The DOS path for the executable. Use this field if the application you are running is not present in the *drive:\ELIXIR* directory and if you have not specified a DOS PATH= statement for the directory in which the application executable resides.

Command Options

Select [DOS Application] if running a DOS application (enables the [Command Attributes] options).

[Send Only Filename] uses only the stem name of the file for command execution.

Select [Prompt for parameters] if you want the program to prompt you to enter an argument that appends to the command in [Command to execute]. This displays a dialog box allowing you to enter an argument when you run the application. Leave unselected (the default) to run the application without prompting for an argument.

[Run Minimized] executes the command in a minimized window.

Command Attributes

Select [Command is .BAT file] if the command you specify is a DOS batch file. This redisplay the Desktop when you exit the application. Leave unselected to return you to the directory specified in the batch file. If the application is a batch file that calls another batch file, the Desktop does not redisplay when you exit the application (see the "Starting batch files" section in this chapter for more information).

Select [Pause after execution] to pause after exiting the application and to request entering any key to continue before returning to the Desktop. Leave unselected to return to the Desktop after exiting the application.

Display Options

[Window] displays command execution in a window.
[Full Screen] displays command execution in a full screen environment.

[Browse] button

Click to display the contents of a DOS directory from which you can select a file.

Using scanners



To use your scanner, double-click on the Scanners icon. After confirming that the information in the User Application Setup dialog box is correct, click on [OK] to start the scanner application.

See your scanner user manual for information on configuring your system for your scanner.

7. File conversions

The main function of the ElixSys Desktop is to convert form, font, graphics, document and job files to and from different formats.

General procedures

Before copying or converting a file, you may want to first check the file's property specifications.

To display file properties:

1. **Select one or more files in any open window.**
2. **Either press <F2> or select [Properties] from the File menu.**

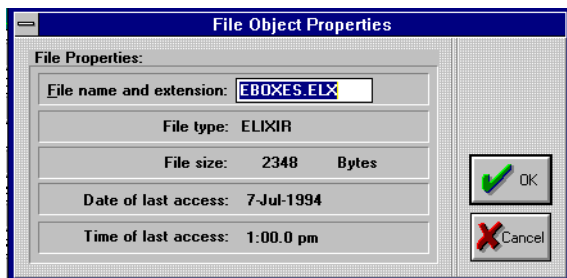


Figure 7-1. File Object Properties dialog box

The File Object Properties dialog box displays with the following options:

File name and extension

The name, including any extension, of the selected file. This is the only option you can change. To rename the file, enter a new file name and extension.

File type

The type of file selected (for example, Elixir, HP PCL or PostScript).

File size

The size of the selected file in bytes.

Date of last access

The date you created or last changed the file.

Time of last access

The time you last accessed the file.

Note that if you select more than one file, a dialog box for each subsequent file displays when you click on [OK] or [Cancel].

3. After you select your options, click on [OK].

The easiest way to convert files is to use the Desktop Converter icon. To convert files:



- 1. Select the file(s) you want to convert from the appropriate Elixir or Input folder.**
- 2. Copy the file(s) to the Converter icon.**
- 3. In the dialog boxes that subsequently display, specify the output format(s) to which you want the file(s) converted.**

Based on the file type (as determined by file location and extension), the Converter generates one or more output files with the correct file extensions, and writes them to the appropriate Output folders.

Elixir folders

This section explains how you convert files to different formats. You may want to first review the “Elixir folders” chapter before proceeding with this section.

The Forms, Fonts, Graphics, Documents and Jobs folders displayed on the Desktop each contain subordinate Input, Elixir and Output folders.

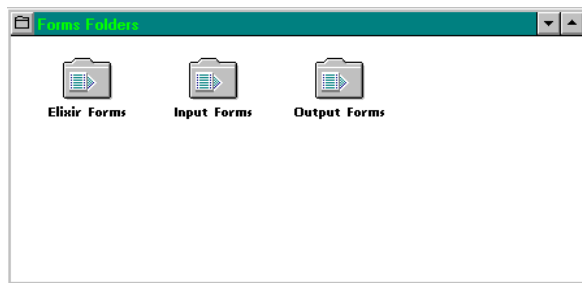


Figure 7-2. Subordinate folders example

Forms folder

The Input Forms folder comprises folders containing non-Elixir, single-page form files that you can convert to other formats. To convert a non-Elixir single-page file to another format, you must first copy it to the appropriate folder in the Input Forms folder.



The Elixir Forms folder contains Elixir-format form (.ELX) files and/or other subordinate folders containing Elixir forms. When you create Elixir forms or convert form files to Elixir-format, the files write to this folder.

When you convert form files from the Input Forms folder to any non-Elixir format, or when you convert Elixir forms from the Elixir Forms folder, the resulting output form files write to folders in the Output Forms folder.

Fonts folder

The Input Fonts folder comprises folders containing non-Elixir font files that you can convert to other formats. To convert a non-Elixir font, you must first copy it to the appropriate folder in the Input Fonts folder.



The Elixir Fonts folder contains Elixir-format font (.HDR) files. When you create Elixir fonts, or convert font files to Elixir format, the files write to this folder.

When you convert font files from the Input Fonts folder to any non-Elixir format, or when you convert Elixir fonts from the Elixir Fonts folder, the resulting output font files write to folders in the Output Fonts folder.

Graphics folder

The Input Graphics folder comprises folders containing non-Elixir graphics files that you can convert to other formats. To convert a non-Elixir graphics file, you must first copy it to the appropriate folder in the Input Graphics folder.



The Elixir Graphics folder contains Elixir-format graphics (.LP3) files. When you create Elixir Graphics or convert graphics files to Elixir-format, the files write to this folder.

When you convert graphics files from the Input Graphics folder to any non-Elixir format, or when you convert Elixir graphics from the Elixir Graphics folder, the resulting output files write to folders in the Output Graphics folder.

Documents folder

The Input Documents folder comprises folders containing non-Elixir multi-page documents.



The Elixir Documents folder contains .DAT files, which are ASCII files referencing the Elixir-format form (.ELX) files comprising a multi-page document.

When you convert documents from the Input Documents folder to any non-Elixir format, or when you convert .DAT files from the Elixir Documents folder, the resulting output files write to folders in the Output Documents folder.

Jobs Folder



Together with the Elixir AppBuilder, the Jobs Folder supports creation of multiple Elixir form print files (jobs). A job comprises form files and a print ticket, and includes formatting information for individual pages and the print run. If installed, the Elixir AppBuilder starts when you open an associated file in the Jobs folder.

Initial converter setup

Before beginning file conversions, you may find it helpful to set up several parameters that are common to most conversions for display in dialog boxes when you convert files. You specify these options in the Converter Properties dialog box.

To display the Converter Properties dialog box, select the Converter icon, then:

- select [Properties] from the **File** menu
- press <F2>.
- right-click on the icon.
- select [Converter Props] from the **System** menu.

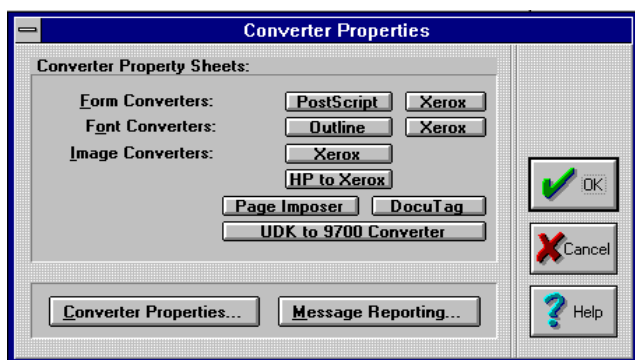


Figure 7-3. Converter Properties dialog box

The Converter Properties dialog box contains options that allow you to specify the default form, font, graphics, and document converter options.

After changing information in the above dialog boxes, click on [OK] to save your changes and return to the Converter Properties dialog box. Note that your changes save even if you click on [Cancel] in the Converter Properties dialog box.

Clicking on the [Converter Properties] button displays the Converter Properties Dialog dialog box.

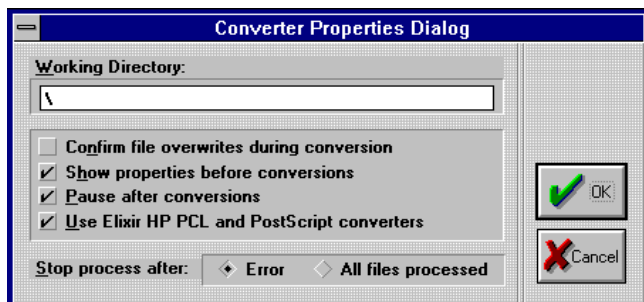


Figure 7-4. Converter Properties Dialog dialog box

Working Directory

The directory in which temporary reads and writes take place during file conversion. The default is the root (\) directory. Specifying a RAM disk for faster conversions is recommended.

Confirm file overwrites during conversion

Displays a dialog box requesting confirmation before overwriting an existing file. Not selecting this option automatically overwrites existing files.

Show properties before conversions

Displays the appropriate dialog box prior to file conversion. If not selected, the dialog box does not display and the conversion uses previously selected defaults.

Pause after conversions

Specifies a pause after each conversion.

Use Elixir HP PCL and PostScript converters

Specifies use of Elixir printer drivers when converting Elixir forms to HP PCL 4 and PostScript formats. Leave unselected to use Windows printer drivers. Note that Elixir printer drivers produce optimized files that require substantially less disk space, while creating printer output identical to Windows printer drivers.

When printing forms with highlight color shades to an HP printer, select this option and use the Converter icon to print the forms with gray shading. Using the Printer icon and Elixir HP Driver causes highlight color shades to print as solid black.

Stop process after: Error/All files processed.

Specifies whether you want conversion to stop either after an error or after file processing.

Clicking on the [Message Reporting] button displays the Message Options Dialog dialog box.

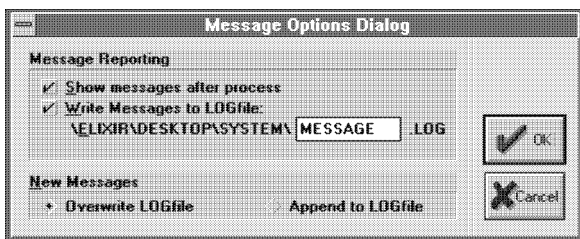


Figure 7-5. Message Options Dialog dialog box

Select options to show messages after processing or write messages to a .LOG file with the specified stem name.

When writing messages to a .LOG file, you can select to either append new messages to the file, or to overwrite the file.

Due to Windows limitations, when message text exceeds 64 KB, the Message window cannot display the message. In this event, and when you select only [Show messages after processing], you can open the *drive:\ELIXIR\MESSOUT.MSG* file to view the message. When you select to both display messages and write them to a .LOG file, you can open the .LOG file to view any messages.

File conversion procedures

This section briefly describes file conversion steps. Later sections provide more detailed descriptions.

To convert a form, font, graphics, document or job file to a different format:

1. **To convert a non-Elixir file, copy the file to the appropriate Input folder.**

(If you want to convert an Elixir-format file, the file may already reside in an Elixir folder.)

2. **Open the appropriate Input or Elixir folder and select the file(s) you want to convert.**
3. **Copy the selected file(s) to the Converter icon.**

The Converter Properties dialog box displays.

4. **Select the output file format(s), then click on [OK].**

The selected file(s) convert and the generated output writes to the appropriate Output folder. If you specified more than one output format in step 4, each input file converts to the formats you selected and writes to the appropriate Output folders.

Specifying options in the dialog boxes assigns parameters to Elixir file conversion utilities, as described in the "Stand-alone utilities" chapter. Note that some dialog boxes may not include all available options.

A dialog box displays showing actual completion percentage (status) of the conversion. Following conversion, click on [OK] in the dialog box.

A message dialog box displays showing final disposition of the conversion, including any errors that may have occurred.

Converting forms

This section describes how to convert a single-page form.

The ElixSys Desktop allows you to convert Elixir forms (.ELX files) to HP PCL, PostScript, PDF, VIPP and XSOP formats. You can also convert to and from the following formats:

- Elixir FSL
- Elixir or RPMF-only UDK
- all FRMs
- online and offline metacode

You can also rasterize and convert a form to an Elixir-format image (.LP3) file.

To convert one or more forms from the Elixir Forms folder (*drive:\ELIXIR\FORMS\ELIXIR* or a subordinate directory), select and copy the files to the Converter icon.

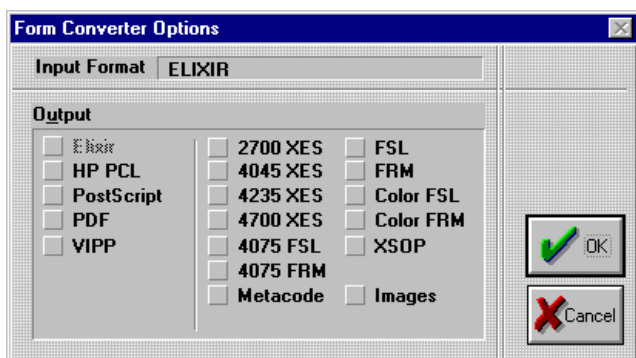


Figure 7-6. Form Converter Options dialog box

The Form Converter Options dialog box displays with the following options:

Input Format

The format of the form selected for conversion.

Output

The formats to which you can convert the form. Unavailable formats are grayed.

See the tabbed printer section for the product you are using for specific form conversion capabilities.

Converting Elixir forms to HP PCL format

You can convert forms to HP PCL format using Windows printer drivers (supplied with Windows) or by using the Elixir HP PCL converter.

The Elixir HP PCL converter produces optimized output files that are identical to, but significantly smaller than, those produced by Windows drivers.

Select the [Use Elixir HP PCL and PostScript converters] option in the Converter Properties Dialog dialog box to use the Elixir converter. Deselect this option to use the Windows printer driver.

See the "Initial converter setup" section in this chapter for more information on Elixir converters.

To convert Elixir form files to HP PCL format using the Elixir HP PCL converter:

1. **Copy the Elixir form(s) to the Converter icon.**

The Form Converter Options dialog box displays.

2. **Select [HP PCL] and click on [OK].**

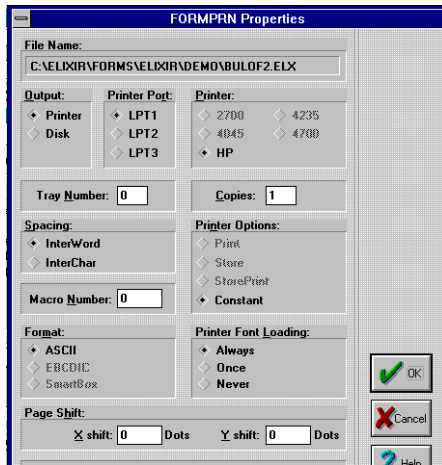


Figure 7-7. FORMPRN Properties dialog box

The FORMPRN Properties dialog box displays with the following options:

File Name

The name of the selected file.

Output

The output: [Printer] or [Disk].

Printer Port

The printer port assigned to the printer: [LPT1], [LPT2] or [LPT3].

Printer

The printer type: [2700], [4045], [4235], [4700] or [HP] (unavailable options are grayed).

Tray Number

The desired printer paper tray number.

Copies

The number of copies desired.

Spacing

[InterWord] justifies text by adding or deleting spaces between words. [InterChar] justifies text by adding or deleting spaces between characters. Selecting [InterWord] reduces complexity so that forms print faster, while selecting [InterChar] may make the form more readable, but print slower.

Printer Options

Select one of the following (unavailable options are grayed):

[Print] to send your form to the printer

[Store] to store your form on the printer hard disk

[StorePrint] to both print your form and store it on the printer

[Constant] to store your form (one page only) in the printer's memory until the printer is either reset or turned off.

Macro Number

The macro number assigned to your form. This stores your form in the printer's memory until the printer is either reset or turned off.

Format

Select one of the following (unavailable options are grayed):

[ASCII] to produce ASCII output for writing to a disk

[EBCDIC] to produce EBCDIC output for Xerox printers connected to your PC via coaxial cable and a protocol server

[SmartBox] if your PC is connected to the printer through a SmartBox or Agile protocol converter.

Printer Font Loading

Select one of the following (unavailable options are grayed):

[Always] to download fonts each time you print.

[Once] to download fonts to the printer only once, as they are encountered (fonts stay resident until the printer is reset).

[Never] to not download fonts to the printer (use only fonts that are resident).

Page Shift

The number of dots you want the printed page shifted either right ([Xshift]) or down ([Yshift]). Negative values are permissible.

Page Orientation

The page layout orientation: [Portrait] or [Landscape].

Select Font Table

Displays a list from which you can select a font table.

3. After you select your options, click on [OK].

If you are using the Windows printer driver, the Print Driver dialog box displays with the following options.

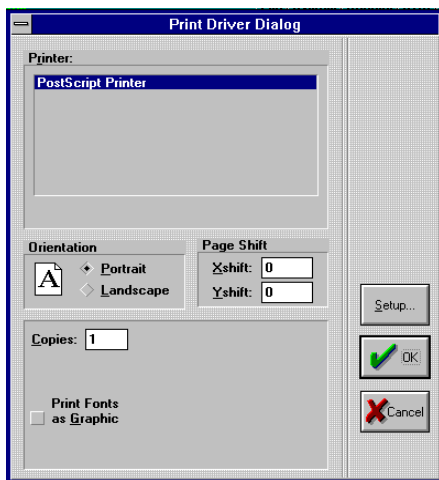


Figure 7-8. Print Driver Dialog dialog box

Orientation

Specify printed page orientation (either [Landscape] or [Portrait]).

Page Shift

Specify the number of dots you want the printed page shifted right (X-shift) or down (Y-shift). Negative values are permissible.

Copies

Specify the number of copies desired.

Print Fonts as Graphic

Rasterizes fonts as graphics. This operation requires less printer memory and may speed printing time.

Load Fonts

[Always] includes (in the output data stream) every font used on every form you convert. [Once] includes every font the first time that the Desktop session encounters it. [Never] does not include fonts in the output data stream (this option assumes that all required PostScript fonts reside on the printer).

Message

Displays the Message Options Dialog dialog box for setting up message reporting. See the "Initial Converter setup" section for more information.

Setup

Specify Windows setup parameters for your printer.

You must use the Efont Factory to generate the screen fonts for the forms you want to convert. See the "Generating fonts from outlines" section in this chapter for more details.

After conversion, one-page PCL-format files write to the Output HP PCL Forms folder (*drive:\ELIXIR\PRINTS\HPPRINT*). Converted PCL files have .PRN extensions.

For information about printing PCL files, see the tabbed "Local printers" section.

Writing soft fonts to disk as a separate file

You can use the Dispatcher utility to automate the FORMPRN utility and write soft fonts to disk as a separate file when you convert to HP PCL format.

To use the stand-alone FORMPRN utility to automate conversion to HP PCL:

- 1. Open the Dispatcher icon.**

The Dispatcher Commands dialog box displays.

- 2. On a blank line, enter the following command:**

FORMPRN %1 HP disk -SPLITFILES

- 3. Click on the [Setup button].**

The User Application Setup dialog box displays.

- 4. Select only the [DOS application] option in the Command Options area, then click on [OK] to close both dialog boxes.**

You can copy Elixir form files to the Dispatcher icon, select this command, and then select [Start] to print HP PCL (.PRN) and soft font files (.FLJ). to *drive:\ELIXIR\PRINTS\HPPRINT*.

Converting Elixir forms to PostScript format

You can convert Elixir forms to PostScript format using Windows printer drivers (supplied with Windows) or by using the Elixir PostScript converter.

The Elixir PostScript converter produces optimized output files that are identical to, but significantly smaller than, those produced by Windows drivers.

Select the [Use Elixir HP PCL and PostScript converters] option in the Converter Properties Dialog dialog box to use the Elixir converter. Deselect this option to use the Windows printer driver.

See the "Initial converter setup" section in this chapter for more information on Elixir converters.

To convert Elixir form files to PostScript format using the Elixir PostScript converter:

1. **Copy the Elixir form(s) to the Converter icon.**

The Form Converter Options dialog box displays.

2. **Select [PostScript] and click on [OK].**

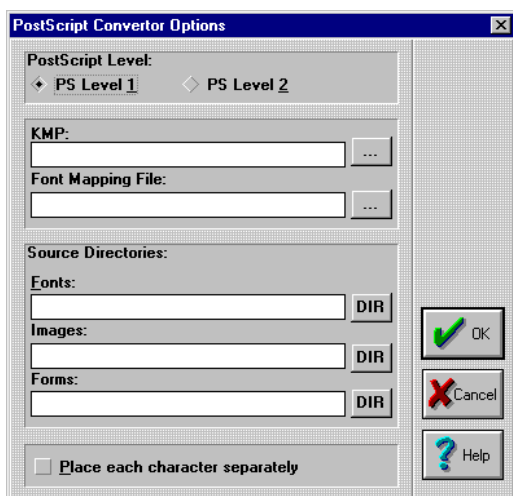


Figure 7-9. PostScript Converter Properties dialog box

The PostScript Converter Properties dialog box displays with the following options:

PostScript Level

Select your printer's PostScript level: [PS Level 1] or [PS Level2].

KMP

Enter the path for your .KMP file or click on the [...] button and select one from the Browse KMP File dialog box.

Font Mapping File

Enter the path for your .MAP file or click on the [...] button and select one from the Browse Font Mapping File dialog box.

Source Directories/Fonts

Enter the path for your input fonts file or click on the [DIR] button and select one from the Browse Input Fonts Directory dialog box.

Source Directories/Images

Enter the path for your input images file or click on the [DIR] button and select one from the Browse Input Images Directory dialog box.

Source Directories/Forms

Enter the path for your input forms file or click on the [DIR] button and select one from the Browse Input Forms Directory dialog box.

Place each character separately

Approximates the correct font positioning in the PostScript file if the fonts in the form you are converting did not convert from standard Adobe Type 1 fonts.

If you are using the Windows printer driver, the Print Driver Dialog dialog box displays, with the following options.

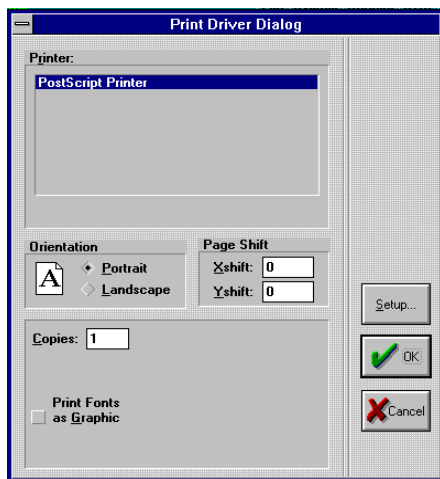


Figure 7-10. Print Driver Dialog dialog box

Orientation

Specify printed page orientation (either [Landscape] or [Portrait]).

Page Shift

Specify the number of dots you want the printed page shifted right (X-shift) or down (Y-shift). Negative values are permissible.

Copies

Specify the number of copies desired.

Print Fonts as Graphic

Rasterizes fonts as graphics. This operation requires less printer memory and may speed printing time.

Message

Displays the Message Options Dialog dialog box for setting up message reporting. See the "Initial Converter setup" section for more information.

Setup

Specify Windows setup parameters for your printer.

You must use the Efont Factory to generate the screen fonts for the forms you want to convert. See the "Generating fonts from outlines" section in this chapter for more details.

After conversion, one-page PostScript-format files write to the Output PostScript Forms folder (*drive:\ELIXIR\FORMS\PSOUT*). Converted PostScript files have .PS extensions.

For information about printing PostScript files, see the tabbed "Local printers" section.

3. **After you select your options, click on [OK].**

Converting Elixir forms to Elixir graphics files

To convert or rasterize a form to an Elixir graphic (.LP3 file in *drive:\ELIXIR\PICS\PRINTER*):

1. **Copy the Elixir form(s) to the Converter icon.**

The Form Converter Options dialog box displays.

2. **Select [Images] and click on [OK].**

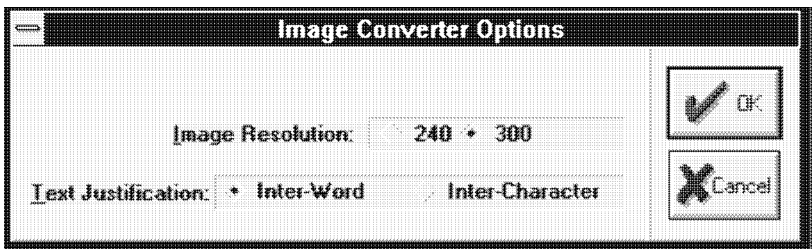


Figure 7-11. Image Converter Options dialog box

The Image Converter dialog box displays with the following options:

Image Resolution

Specify image resolution as either [240] or [300] dpi (the default).

Text Justification

[InterWord] justifies text by adding or deleting spaces between words while [InterChar] justifies text by adding or deleting spaces between characters. Selecting [InterWord] reduces complexity so that forms print faster, while selecting [InterChar] may make the form more readable but print slower.

Note that Elixir versions of all fonts in the form must be in residence.

- 3. After you select your options, click on [OK].**

Converting Elixir forms to PDF format

The ElixSys Desktop allows you to convert a single-page Elixir form to Adobe's Portable Document Format (PDF) without first installing the Elixir extended PDF converter; however, converting multiple-page form and document files does require installation of the extended PDF converter.

To convert Elixir forms to PDF format:

- 1. Copy the Elixir form(s) to the Converter icon.**

The Form Converter Options dialog box displays.

- 2. Select [PDF] and click on [OK].**

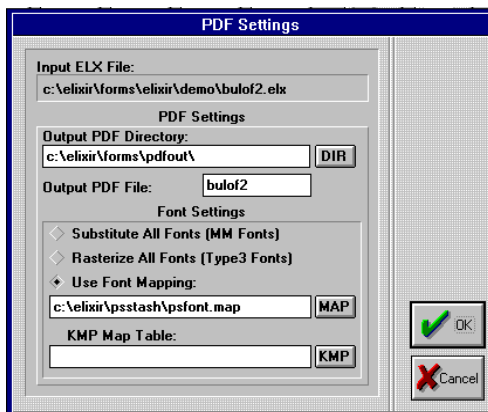


Figure 7-12. PDF Settings dialog box

The PDF Settings dialog box displays with the following options for creating .PDF output using Adobe Acrobat products:

Input ELX File

The name of the input file (form) to be converted.

Output PDF Directory

The output directory for the .PDF file. The default is *drive:\ELIXIR\DOCS\PDFOUT*.

DIR

Press this button to browse and select files residing on the Output PDF Directory.

Output PDF File

The name of the output file. If you are processing multiple files, leave this option blank.

Substitute All Fonts (MM Fonts)

Creates Multiple Master versions of all fonts in your job. This option requires that Elixir versions of the fonts are in *drive:\ELIXIR\FONTS\ELIXIR*.

Use this option when your document text consists mostly of alphanumeric information with common typefaces.

The Converter scans each Elixir font used in the form and embeds hints for generating Adobe Multiple Master instances into the .PDF file. As these are vector fonts, .PDF file size is minimized.

To view the file you must have Adobe Type Manager 3.0 or newer installed. Note that custom characters (such as logos, special symbols fonts or symbol fonts) display as regular alphanumeric characters. For documents containing fonts of this type, see the [Rasterize All Fonts] or [Use Font Mapping] options described below.

Rasterize All Fonts (Type 3 Fonts)

Embeds all form fonts into the .PDF file as Adobe Type 3 raster fonts. This option requires that Elixir versions of the fonts are in drive:\ELIXIR\FONTS\ELIXIR.

Select this option when most fonts used in your form comprise special characters or images (such as a logo). This ensures that the special characters are viewable when the file is distributed. Because the actual raster graphics of the characters are embedded in the file, .PDF files are fairly large.

Use Font Mapping

Uses a mapping table to control, on a font-by-font basis, the .PDF file's font format. Allows the Converter to use a combination of Multiple Master, Adobe Type 3 raster fonts and Adobe Type 1 (PostScript) name mappings for the fonts. The name entry box allows you to specify the mapping file. The default file is *drive:\ELIXIR\PSSTASH\PSFONT.MAP*.

Use this option when form character mappings do not match standard Windows character mappings.

When you select this option, the Converter scans the specified file and compares the Elixir font names used in the form with those names found in the file (see example below). If a match for a font is not found, a Multiple Master instance is generated. If a match is found, the Converter looks at the right half of the entry to determine whether to rasterize as a Type 3 font or call the font out by a Type 1 name.

The mapping file is an editable text file with a simple equivalence table. The syntax for entries is:

font name= [RASTERIZE] [TYPE1fontname-weight point-size]

For example:

```
TR11NP=Times-Roman 11
TR12NP=Times-Roman 12
HE07BP=Helvetica-Bold 77
CH14SP=ZapfChancery-MediumItalic 14
SIGFNT=RASTERIZE
```

If you specify a Type 1 font, you must enter it exactly as it appears in the Adobe Type Manager "Installed ATM Fonts" window. If you want to view the resulting .PDF file on another PC, the chosen font must also be available through ATM on the target machine.

MAP

Press this button to select a .MAP file other than the default file.

KMP Map Table

Uses a customized mapping table to control translation of .PDF file keystrokes. The name entry box displays the specific mapping file to be used for the conversion. The default file is *drive:\ELIXIR\FONTS\MAPS\X1000437.KMP* (U.S.) See the *ElixirForm for AFP User Guide* and *ElixirFont for AFP User Guide* for more information.

KMP

Press this button to browse and select other files residing on the Keyboard Country Mapping Table. See the *ElixirForm for AFP User Guide* and *Elixir-Font for AFP User Guide* for more information.

3. After you select your options, click on [OK].

Converting Elixir forms to VIPP format

The ElixirSys Desktop allows you to convert a single-page Elixir form to Variable Data Intelligent PostScript PrintWare (VIPP) format without first installing the Elixir extended VIPP converter. Converting multiple-page form and document files requires installation of the extended VIPP converter.

To convert Elixir forms to VIPP format:

1. Copy the Elixir form(s) to the Converter icon.

The Form Converter Options dialog box displays.

2. Select [VIPP] and click on [OK].

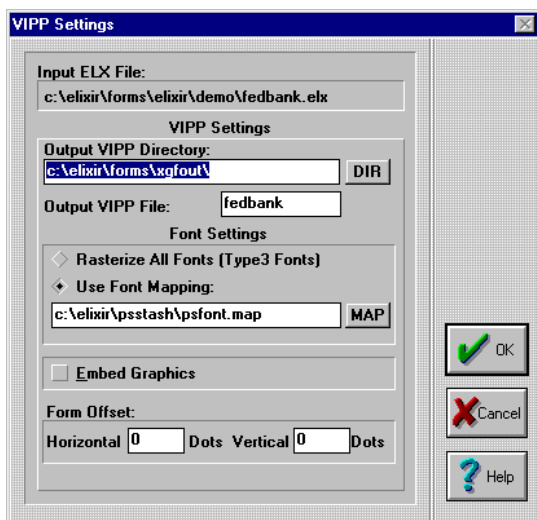


Figure 7-13. VIPP Settings dialog box

The VIPP Settings dialog box displays with the following options for creating .VIP output:

Input ELX File

The name of the input file (form) to be converted.

Output VIPP Directory

The output directory for the .VIP file. The default is *drive:\ELIXIR\DOCS\XGFOUT*.

Output VIPP File

The name of the output file. If you are processing multiple files, leave this option blank.

Rasterize All Fonts (Type 3 Fonts)

Embeds all form fonts into the .VIP file as Adobe Type 3 raster fonts. This option requires that Elixir versions of the fonts are in *drive:\ELIXIR\FONTS\ELIXIR*.

Select this option when most of the fonts in your form comprise special characters or images (such as a logo). This ensures that the special characters are viewable if you distribute the file. Because the actual raster graphics are embedded in the file, the .VIP files are fairly large.

Use Font Mapping

Uses a mapping table to control, on a font-by-font basis, the .VIP file's font format. Allows the Converter to use a combination of Adobe Type 3 raster fonts and Adobe Type 1 (PostScript) name mappings for the fonts. Enter the mapping file name including path, or use the *drive:\ELIXIR\PSSTASH\PSFONT.MAP* default file.

The Converter scans the mapping file, and when Elixir fonts are used, looks in the [Elixir] section of the file for the font name on the left, then maps it to the name on the right side of the list. The Converter treats the name as though it were an ATM name. The Converter then looks in the [VIP] section of the file to find the new name on the left side of the list, and maps it to a VIPP key on the right side of the list. If a match for a font is not found, the following warning message displays:

"Font <fontname> maps to NO PostScript equivalent"

The mapping file is an editable text file with a simple equivalence table. For example, where the Elixir form uses font "TEST01", and the VIPP key name is "ELXTST", the .MAP file has the following lines:

```
[Elixir]
TEST01=TEST01
```

```
[VIPP]
TEST01=ELXTST
```

If you specify a Type 1 font, you must enter it exactly as it appears in the Adobe Type Manager "Installed ATM Fonts" window. If you want to view the resulting .VIP file on another PC, the chosen font must also be available through ATM on the target machine.

MAP

Press this button to select a .MAP file other than the default file.

3. After you select your options, click on [OK]

Converting Elixir forms to XSOP format

The ElixSys Desktop allows you to convert single-page Elixir forms to Xerox Services for Open VMS Printing (XSOP) format, in support of Xerox mid-range printers running off a DEC host computer. For XSOP conversions, choose only TrueType, ATM or Elixir Efont Factory fonts.

To convert Elixir form files to XSOP format:

1. Copy the Elixir forms to the Converter icon.

The Form Converter Options dialog box displays.

2. Select [XSOP] and click on [OK].

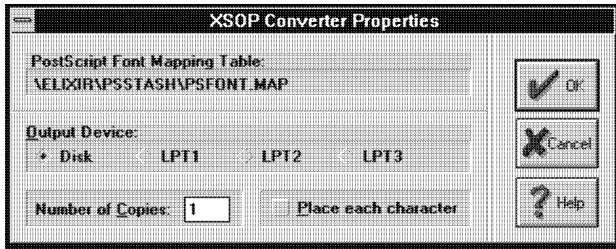


Figure 7-14. XSOP Converter Properties dialog box

The XSOP Converter Properties dialog box displays with the following options for creating XSOP output:

PostScript Font Mapping Table

Displays the full DOS path name of the font mapping table (PSFONT.MAP). This table corresponds PostScript fonts to DOS file names, required because DOS limits file names to 8 characters and PostScript font names can contain more. Note that you cannot change the full path name of the font mapping table (\ELIXIR\PSSTASH\PSFONT.MAP).

Output Device

Select either [Disk] or the desired printer port ([LPT1], [LPT2], [LPT3]).

Note that if you select DISK as the output option, the file writes to *drive:\ELIXIR\FORMS\PSOUT*.

Number of Copies

Specify the number of copies desired.

Place each character

Select if the fonts in the form you are converting did not convert from standard Adobe Type 1 fonts. Selecting this option approximates correct font positioning in the PostScript file.

3. After you select your options, click on [OK].

Converting forms to and from Xerox format

Before converting forms, make sure that the fonts and graphics referenced in the forms have been converted.

The 9700 FSL supported is not the full-scale Mainframe HFDL, but a subset of the full FSL which does not allow high-level functions such as the Repeat verb, Section command, and multiple origins. This subset also does not support units other than dots, or acknowledge the Origin or Comment commands.

If your input FSL is a complex form that was created by ElixSys, it may contain too many text elements. ElixSys operates within certain limits, so you may receive a warning message when attempting to convert the form. To reduce the number of text elements, edit the FSL file with your standard editor and combine multiple text elements into one element.

Converting forms from FSL format is not recommended. Instead, compile the FSL on the printer and copy the resulting FRM to your PC for converting to other formats.

When you convert forms to or from FSL, FRM, (the formats to which you can convert depend on your product), the Xerox Form Converter Options dialog box shown in the following figure also displays.

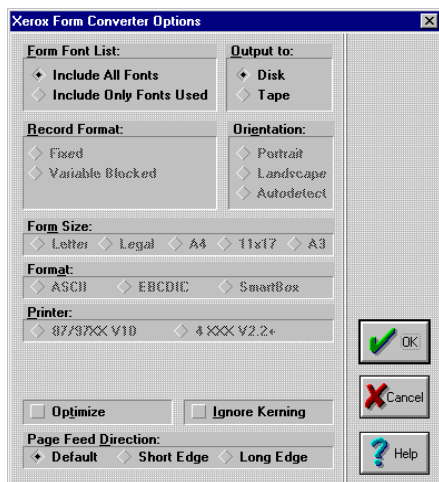


Figure 7-15. Xerox Form Converter Options

The Xerox Form Converter Options dialog box displays the following options:

Form Font List

The type of font list created during form conversion. [Include All Fonts] uses all the fonts in the form font list. [Include Only Fonts Used] uses only fonts on the form (prints faster).

Output To

[Disk] outputs to disk, and [Tape] outputs to an attached tape unit. If your PC does not have a tape unit connected, the file is written to hard disk.

Record Format, Orientation, Form Size, Format

Not applicable to this conversion.

Printer

When converting to (B&W) FSL or FRM formats, [87/97XX V10] creates output files for 87XX/97XX printers running V10 software [4XXX V2.2+] creates output files for 4XXX printers running V2.2 and higher (allows inserting "page size equal" command in output files).

Optimize

Select to decrease the number of bytes per record in the file and increase the throughput from host to printer.

Ignore Kerning

Ignores the kerning values in the file during conversion. You can then create a width table containing width, height, offset, left, and right kerning, and ASCII index values for each font character.

Page Feed Direction

When printing large paper sizes:

Select [Default] when both dimensions are less than or equal to 14.33 inches, so no long edge rotation occurs; or when one dimension exceeds 14.33 inches, so the form is output using opposite resources (short edge).

[Short Edge] outputs the form using opposite resources (portrait for landscape, and landscape for portrait), with paper size specified as dimensions rather than keywords (for example, 8.5 x 11 instead of US Letter). Uses P2LFORMATS.LST and INVFORMATS.LST.

[Long Edge] converts the form as it was input, with no rotations occurring. Use when printing on a continuous feed printer.

When converting forms to FSL or FRM formats, any included graphics are converted to either graphics (IMG) or logos (LGO), depending on the format last specified when you converted the graphic.

When converting forms from FRM format, up to 30 fonts or logos per FRM file are supported. An error message is issued if the number of fonts or logos on the form exceeds 30.

When converting FSL forms with thick lines to ELX format, the lines may convert to multiple thin lines, making line movement difficult. To move a thick line after conversion to ELX format, use the [Group] option to group the multiple lines. See the *ElixirForm User Guide* for information about grouping form elements.

When converting a form to 4235XES or 4700XES formats, an additional [More] button displays at the right of the dialog box. Clicking on this button displays the Job Print Ticket dialog box, described in the 4235 and 4700 printers tabbed sections.

Converting forms to 4075 FSL

As the 4075 printer does not support graphics, conversion to 4075 FSL format will remove any graphics from the output file.

Converting forms to metacode

When converting forms to metacode format, the Metacode Converter Options dialog box shown in the following figure also displays.

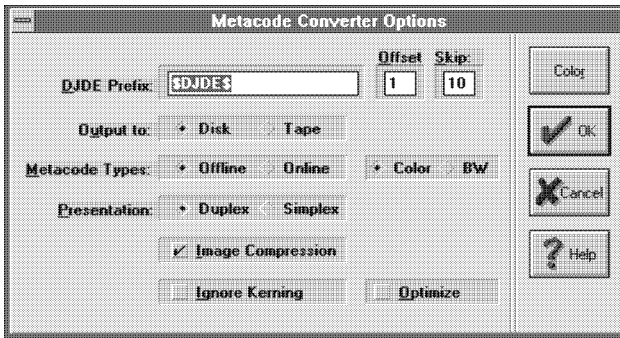


Figure 7-16. Metacode Converter Options dialog box

The Metacode Converter Options dialog box contains the following options:

DJDE Prefix

The exact Dynamic Job Descriptor Entry (DJDE) prefix string coded in the PREFIX statement of your printer JSL. The default is \$DJDE\$.

Offset

The number of characters or spaces present before the first character of the DJDE string. The default is 1.

Skip

The total number of characters or spaces to skip before reading a command. The default is 10.

Metacode Types

Select [Offline] (the default) or [Online] as the meta-code output type and [Color] (the default) or [BW] (black-and-white) for meta output.

Output to

Select [Disk] (the default) or [Tape] as your output medium.

Presentation

Select [Duplex] (the default) for two-sided, or [Simplex] for one-sided output.

Page Feed Direction

When printing large paper sizes:

Select [Default] when both dimensions are less than or equal to 14.33 inches, so no long edge rotation occurs; or when one dimension exceeds 14.33 inches, so the form is output using opposite resources (short edge).

[Short Edge] outputs the form using opposite resources (portrait for landscape, and landscape for portrait), with paper size specified as dimensions rather than keywords (for example, 8.5 x 11 instead of US Letter). Uses P2LFFONTS.LST and INVFFONTS.LST.

[Long Edge] converts the form as it was input, with no rotations occurring. Use when printing on a continuous feed printer.

Text Justification

[InterWord] justifies text by adding or deleting spaces between words while [InterChar] justifies text by adding or deleting spaces between characters. Selecting [InterWord] reduces complexity so that forms print faster, while selecting [InterChar] may make the form more readable but print slower.

Ignore Kerning

Ignores the kerning values in the file during conversion. You can then create a width table containing width, height, offset, left, and right kerning, and ASCII index values for each font character.

Optimize

Select to decrease the number of bytes per record in the file and increase the throughput from host to printer.

Image Compression

Compresses images in the file.

Transforming Xerox forms

You may need to modify Xerox forms to make them compatible with the formats required for certain operations such as uploading to a host, copying to a tape, or sending via a network connection. In addition to the file conversion capability, Elixir includes utilities that allow you to:

- modify 9700 FRM and FSL form file headers (refer to Xerox documentation for more information about files headers),
- convert FSL files to and from 80-byte record (ASCII) and 512-byte block (standard labeled) formats,
- insert XES escape sequences in 2700, 4045, or 4700 XES format forms.

You can access these utilities through the Transformer icon described in the "Transformations" chapter.

Converting fonts

This section describes font conversion and generation procedures.

The ElixirSys Desktop allows you to perform the following font operations:

- convert Elixir fonts to HP PCL, ATM Type 3, Windows and Screen formats, and supported Xerox formats

- convert Contour (outline) fonts to Elixir, HP PCL, ATM Type 3, Windows and Screen formats, and supported Xerox formats
- convert ATM and TrueType fonts to Elixir, HP PCL, Screen, and supported Xerox formats
- generate Elixir, non-Elixir and Screen fonts

To convert fonts, select and copy either the .HDR font components from the Elixir Fonts folder or fonts from the Input Fonts folder to the Converter icon.

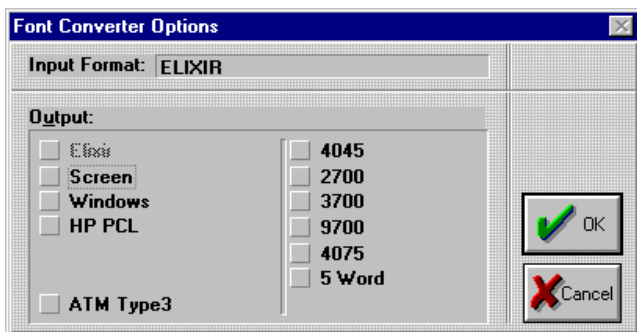


Figure 7-17. Font Converter Options dialog box

The Font Converter Options dialog box displays with the following options:

Input Format

The format of the font selected for conversion.

Output

The formats to which you can convert the font. Unavailable formats are grayed.

Converting fonts to Screen and Window formats

To convert fonts to Screen or Window formats:

1. Copy the font file(s) to the Converter Icon.

The Font Converter Options dialog box displays.

2. **Select either [Screen] or [Window] and click on [OK].**

The Font Conversion Status dialog box displays.

3. **Click on [OK] when conversion is complete.**

Converting fonts to HP PCL format

To convert fonts to HP PCL format:

1. **Copy the font file(s) to the Converter icon.**

The Font Converter Options dialog box displays.

2. **Select [HP PCL] and click on [OK].**

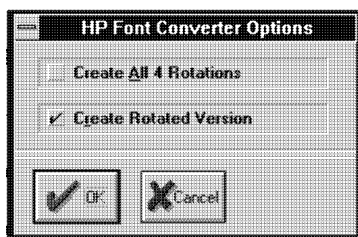


Figure 7-18. HP Font Converter Options dialog box

The HP Font Converter Options dialog box displays with the following options:

Create All 4 Rotations

Select to create font versions rotated in all four (0°, 90°, 180° and 270°) inline print directions.

Create Rotated Version

Select to create rotated font version for proof printing a form containing rotated fonts.

3. **After you select your options, click on [OK].**

Converting Elixir fonts to HP PCL soft fonts

When converting Elixir fonts to HP PCL soft fonts, all characters in the Elixir font are maintained if you add the following entry to the *drive:\WINDOWS\ELX.INI* file:

```
[ADVANCEDOPTIONS]  
GENSPACEGLYPHS=1
```

Where 1 maintains all characters below position x064, and 0 removes these characters.

Adding HP PCL fonts to Windows applications

The following procedure describes the steps necessary to add HP PCL fonts to your Windows application fonts list.

- 1. Open the Windows Control Panel and select the Printers icon.**

The Printers dialog box displays.

- 2. Select the desired printer in the Installed Printers box and click on [Setup].**
- 3. Click on [Fonts], then in the Font Installer dialog box, click on [Add Fonts].**
- 4. In the Add Fonts dialog box, set the directory path to *drive:\ELIXIR\FONTS\PRINTER*, then click on [Add].**

The installer reads all soft font files in the directory and builds a list that displays a default font name and point size.

Note that you can simplify this process by converting one font at a time.

- 5. Select the desired font from the right list box.**

The actual file name displays at the bottom of the dialog box. Check the file name to ensure you selected the correct file.

6. Click on [Add].

Unless otherwise necessary, accept the default directory (*drive:\PCLFONTS*) by clicking on [OK] in the Add fonts dialog box.

7. Select the font from the left list box and click on [Edit].

The Edit dialog box displays.

8. Modify the name to match the font file name and click on [OK].**9. Exit to the Program Manager.**

The HP PCL fonts are now available in the fonts list of your Windows applications.

Converting fonts to Xerox formats

To convert fonts to 4045, 2700, 3700, 9700, 4075, and 5Word formats:

1. Copy the font file(s) to the Converter icon.

The Font Converter Options dialog box displays.

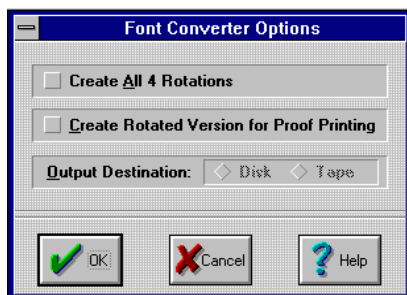
2. Select the desired format and click on [OK].

Figure 7-19. Font Converter Options dialog box

A second Font Converter Options dialog box displays with the following options:

Create All 4 Rotations

Creates font files for all four (0°, 90°, 180° and 270°) inline print directions (rotations).

Create Rotated Version for Proof Printing

Creates rotated font version for proof printing a form containing rotated fonts.

Output Destination

Outputs to either [Disk] or [Tape].

3. **After you select your options, click on [OK].**

Converting TrueType fonts

You can use TrueType fonts on your Elixir forms, but you must first convert the fonts to bitmap format.

You can display the TrueType Fonts window by either opening the Input Fonts, TrueType Fonts icon; selecting [TrueType Fonts] from the **Special** menu; or pressing <Alt>+<T>.

Note: TrueType underline and overstrike styles are not supported during Desktop conversion. You must first convert to Elixir format, then use Elixifont to add these styles. You can then convert the underline/overstrike Elixir font to other formats.

To convert TrueType fonts to supported formats:

1. **Copy a file from the TrueType Fonts folder to the Converter icon.**

The Font Converter Options dialog box displays.

2. **Select the desired output format and click on [OK].**

Depending on the output format, a Font Converter Options dialog box may display prior to the TrueType Fonts Attributes dialog box.

3. **If a Font Converter Options dialog box displays, select the desired font rotation and/or output options, then click on [OK].**

For more information on these options, see the procedures for converting fonts to Xerox and HP formats.

The TrueType Fonts Attributes dialog box displays.

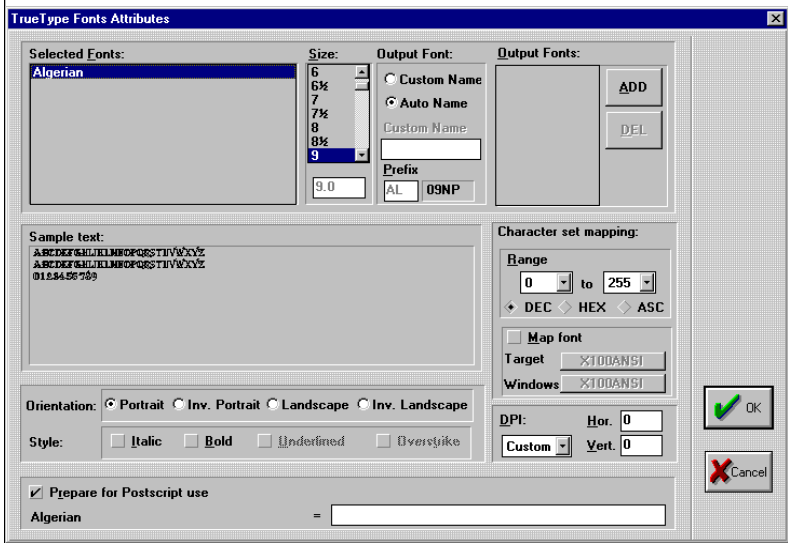


Figure 7- . TrueType Fonts Attributes dialog box

Selected Fonts

The name of the font you want to convert.

Size

The point size for the converted file. The Desktop does not output scalable TrueType fonts, so you must create all desired sizes.

Output Font/Custom Name

The font prefix as specified in the Custom Name text block. If a font with the specified prefix exists, the system prompts for a different prefix.

Output Font/Auto Name

The system-generated name based upon the font name and point size. The naming convention for half-point sizes uses alpha characters in the third position of the name to represent the point size.

For example, A=1 point, B=2 points, C=3 points, through Z=26 points. The auto-name for an Arial 10.5 normal font is ARJ5NP. AR for Arial, J for 10 points, 5 for .5 of a point, N for normal, and P for portrait.

Output Fonts

The list of fonts to convert and output. Click on the [ADD] button to add the selected font to the list or [DEL] to delete it.

Sample text

Displays a sample of the selected font and point size.

Character set mapping

The lowest and highest character positions in the font's range in either decimal ([DEC]), hexadecimal ([HEX]), or ASCII ([ASC]) representation.

Map font

Allows selection of non-standard keyboard maps for the TrueType fonts you are converting, and for your output fonts.

Target

Displays a dialog box for selecting the keyboard mapping file (.KMP) to use for the non-default character layout you want to map to.

Windows

Displays a dialog box for selecting the keyboard mapping file (.KMP) when the TrueType font you are converting uses a non-standard keyboard map.

Orientation

The orientation of the output font: portrait, inverted portrait, landscape, or inverted landscape. You can click on [ADD] after selecting each orientation to simultaneously create all four font rotations for use in Elixiform.

Style

The character style of the output font: italic, bold, underlined, or overstrike.

DPI

The dots per inch resolution of the output font: [240], [300], or [Custom], including the custom horizontal and vertical measures.

Prepare for PostScript use

Adds an entry in the PSFONT.MAP file for each font generated, and for each font's corresponding PostScript font (for printing).

Converting to and embedding PostScript (ATM Type 3) fonts

You can convert Elixir fonts to PostScript (ATM Type 3) fonts and embed them in your PostScript output using Elixir's PostScript driver.

To convert Elixir or Xerox fonts to ATM Type 3 format:

1. **Copy the Elixir or Xerox font file to the Converter icon.**

The Font Converter Options dialog box displays.

2. **Select [ATM Type 3] and click on [OK].**

The Desktop creates a PostScript font with a .PS extension and writes it to the \ELIXIR\FONTS\ATMT3OUT directory.

To embed the PostScript font within a PostScript file, you must edit the PSFONT.MAP file to include a special command for the font.

To edit the PSFONT.MAP file:

1. **Open the *drive*:\ELIXIR\PSSTASH\PSFONT.MAP file with any text editor.**
2. **On the left side of the equation, type the name of the font you want to embed, followed by "=EMBED" (in caps).**

For example: 5PT10N=EMBED

3. Save and exit the file.

To convert the Elixir document that contains the font:

1. Copy the .ELX file to the Converter icon.

The Font Converter Options dialog box displays.

2. Select [PostScript] and click on [OK].

Generating fonts from outlines ---

The Desktop includes the Elixir Font Factory (Efont Factory), a utility that uses contour fonts compatible with Bitstream Facelift to generate Elixir-format and printer-format fonts. The Efont Factory cannot generate fonts from Bitstream Fontware and Fontware-compatible fonts.

The Desktop installation procedure installs 35 contour fonts compatible with Bitstream Facelift in *drive:\ELIXIR\FONTS\CONTOURS* (Input Contour Fonts folder).

If not already installed, you can install Bitstream Facelift fonts on your PC as follows:

Select [Install Fonts] from the **Special** menu. The program prompts you to insert the first Bitstream Facelift diskette into your diskette drive and follow the instructions displayed on your screen.

The Efont Factory allows you to:

- generate up to six point sizes of a font in each conversion
- generate whole or partial character sets
- generate different font resolutions
- automatically generate font names
- perform additional transformations such as font orientation and darkening.

You can display the Contours Fonts window by either opening the Input Fonts, Contour Fonts icon; selecting [Efont Factory] from the **Special** menu; or pressing <Alt> + <E>.

The following figure shows the Input Contours folder window.

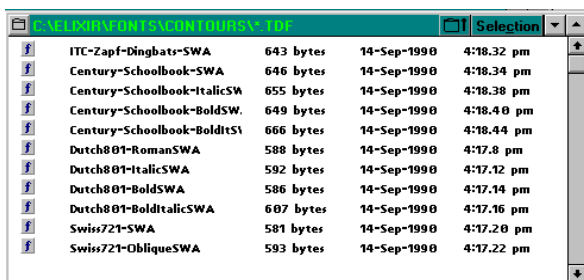


Figure 7-21. Input Contour Fonts folder window

To generate Elixir fonts from a contour font:

1. **Copy one or more contour fonts from the Input Contours folder to the Converter icon.**

The Font Converter Options dialog box displays.

2. **Select an output format and click on [OK].**

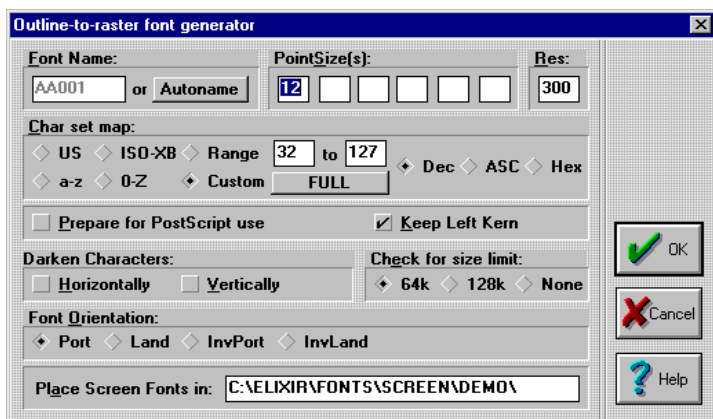


Figure 7-22. Outline-to-raster font generator dialog box

The Outline-to-raster font generator dialog box displays with the following options:

Font Name

The name of the converted raster font(s). If converting to more than one point size (see the description for the next option), enter a file name stem ending with 01. Names for converted files increment by 1 for each point size selected, in order of ascending point size.

If you convert more than one contour font file to multiple point sizes, the converted files are similarly named. The maximum number of files you can create is 99.

Autoname

Names font files as described in the "Font naming conventions" section that follows. Using [Autoname] rather than [FontName] for naming fonts is recommended. To identify newly created fonts using this option, view the fonts using the [By Date] option in the Elixir Fonts folder **View** menu.

Point Size(s)

The point size(s) for the converted font file(s). Enter any size from 2 to 99. See the [Font Name] option description for information about converting to more than one point size.

Res(olution)

The resolution (in dots per inch, dpi) of the target printer. The default is 300 dpi.

Char(acter) set map

The character set of the raster font being generated: [US], [ISO-XB] (international ISO), [Custom] (creates full character sets), [0-Z] (upper case and numerals only), [a-z] (lowercase only). Each corresponds to a font generation mapping table. A mapping table is a .GMP ASCII file in *drive:\ELIXIR\FONTS\MAPS*. Each line in a .GMP file is of the form *mm=nn*, where *mm* is the hex position number of a character in the input font and *nn* is the hex position number of the corresponding character in the output font.

Range

The number for the first and last characters you

want to convert, in [DEC] (decimal), [HEX] (hexadecimal) or [ASC] (ASCII) representation. The default range is 0-255 (decimal).

Prepare for PostScript use

Select this option when printing on a PostScript printer to place the screen font reference in the fonts mapping table, PSFONT.MAP, a file containing a mapping between the PostScript name and DOS file name for each font.

When you do not select this option, the fonts mapping table does not include the PostScript font name.

Keep Left Kern

Keeps left kerning information for left-kerned characters. When you do not select this option, you delete left kerning and create a width table in the *drive:\ELIXIR\FONTS\TABLES* directory containing width, height, offset, left, and right kerning, and ASCII index values for each font character. The width table has the same name as the font file and has a .TFB file extension. Information in .TFB files allows you to build a left kerning table for using the font in non-Elixir environments.

Check for size limit

Ensures that the generated font size is within your printer's size limit. [64k] and [128k] truncate the font at the specified limit and issue an error message. [None] generates the font regardless of size. Creating a screen font larger than 128 KB may result in errors. See your printer manual for printer font size limits.

Darken characters

Due to the limitation of some printers, small fonts may print lightly. To compensate for the problem, select [Horizontally] to darken horizontally when printing in portrait orientation and [Vertically] to darken vertically when printing in landscape orientation.

Font Orientation

Specifies [Portrait], [Landscape], [Inverse Portrait] or [Inverse Landscape] orientation for output fonts (see the glossary for explanation of these terms).

Place Screen Fonts in

The directory where screen fonts write to (creates a new directory if one does not exist).

3. After you select your options, click on [OK].

Font naming conventions

When you select [Autoname] in the Outline-to-raster font generator dialog box, Efont Factory generates raster fonts and names them using the following conventions:

- A six-character stem name generates.
- The first two characters of the generated font name describe the font family from the following table.

<i>Font Family</i>	<i>First two file characters</i>
Courier	CO (Courier)
Dutch	TR (Times Roman)
Swiss	HE (Helvetica)
ITC-Avant-Garde	AG (Avant Garde)
ITC-Bookman	BM (Bookman)
Swiss Narrow	HN (Helvetica Narrow)
Symbol-Set	SY (Symbol)
Century-Schoolbook	CS (Century Schoolbook)
ITC-Zapf-Chancery	CH (Chancery)
ITC-Zapf-Dingbats	DB (Dingbats)
Zapf-Calligraphic	PA (Palatino)

- If you add a new font family without a descriptor to the Input Contour Fonts folder, the Efont Factory assigns XX as the first two characters.
- The third and fourth characters of the generated font name describe the point size you enter in the Outline-to-raster font generator dialog box.
- The fifth character of the generated font file name describes the type style from the following table:

<i>Type style</i>	<i>Character used</i>
Normal	N
Demi	D
Bold	B
Italic	I
Oblique	O
Light Italic	Q
Demi Italic	R
Medium Italic	S
Bold Italic	T
Demi Oblique	U
Bold Oblique	V

- The sixth character of the generated font name describes the orientation from the following table:

<i>Orientation</i>	<i>Character</i>
Portrait	P
Landscape	L
Inverse portrait	I
Inverse landscape	J

For example, a converted ITC-Zapf-Chancery, 12 point, bold, portrait font has a name of CH12BP.

You can assign two-character descriptors for additional fonts not included in the above tables as follows:

Use the DOS TYPE command to display the contents of the .TDF file for the font (the Input Contour Fonts folder contains .TDF font files). To determine the .TDF file name, select a font and drag it within the folder. The cursor changes and identifies the font name. Press <Esc> to return to a standard cursor. The .TDF file displays the HP code, a two-character font family identifier.

Using an ASCII editor, edit BTFONT.NAM in *drive:\ELIXIR\FONTS\MAPS* to add a line at the end of the file that includes the full DOS name of the .TDF file, a space, the two-character designator, a space, and the typestyle.

Generating Elixir fonts

When using Efont Factory to create fonts for use in Elixiform, select the [Keep Left Kern] option in the Outline-to-raster font generator dialog box. Elixiform supports left kerning, and selecting this option spaces and kerns all form characters correctly on both the screen and the printer output.

Xerox production printers do not support left kerning. When converting Elixir forms to Xerox production formats (if supported by the product you are using), the left-kerned fonts are individually positioned on the print output. Note that selecting [Yes] results in files that may be too large for your production printer. Check your production printer manual for font size limitations.

Generating non-Elixir fonts

If you want to use the Efont Factory to either create fonts for non-Elixir applications or produce Xerox production printer output format, do not select the [Keep Left Kern] option.

See the description for the [Keep Left Kern] option in the "Generating fonts from outlines" section in this chapter for more information.

Regenerating screen fonts

Screen version fonts differ for different monitors and resolutions, and therefore require regenerating each time you:

- copy Elixir fonts from a PC on which Elixir for another monitor or resolution is installed
- reinstall Elixir on your PC and specify a different monitor or resolution.

ElixiForm requires screen fonts when you create or edit forms. When creating screen versions of forms you can preview Elixir fonts in the Elixir Fonts folder.

Transforming Xerox fonts

In addition to font file conversion, Elixir includes utilities to allow you to transform Xerox fonts as follows:

- modify Xerox 9700 font headers
- assign internal names to Xerox XES fonts.

You can access these utilities using the Transformer icon described in the "Transformations" chapter.

Converting graphics

This section describes graphics file conversion procedures.

The ElixiSys Desktop allows you to convert Elixir .LP3, .BMP, .PCX and .TIF file formats to Elixir, .PCX, .BMP, Screen and .TIF file formats. You can also convert Elixir Graphics files to tiles in an Elixir-format font.

Note: To convert TIF CCITT 4 images, use the IC utility at the DOS prompt. See the "Stand-alone utilities" chapter for details.

See the tabbed printer section for the product you are using for specific graphics conversion capabilities.

To convert one or more graphics files from the Elixir Graphics folder or sub-folder:

1. **Select and copy the files to the Converter icon.**

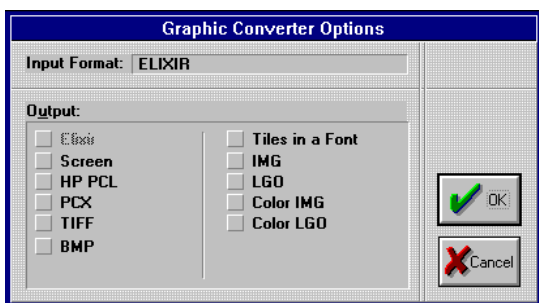


Figure 7-23. Graphic Converter Options dialog box

The Graphic Converter Options dialog box displays with the following options:

Input Format

The format of the graphic selected for conversion.

Output

The formats to which you can convert the graphic. Unavailable formats are grayed.

2. **After you select your options, click on [OK].**

Converting Elixir graphics to Tiles in a Font format

This option places a grid on an image and converts each cell of the grid to a character in an Elixir font. See the *ElixGraphics User Guide* for more information.

To convert Elixir graphics to tiles in a font:

1. **Copy the Elixir graphic(s) to the Converter icon.**

The Image Converter Options dialog box displays.

2. **Select [Tiles in a Font] and click on [OK].**

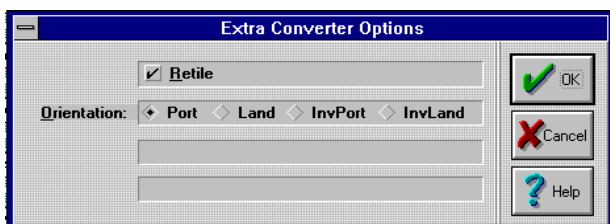


Figure 7-24. Extra Converter Options dialog box

The Extra Converter Options dialog box displays with the following options:

Retile

Retiles the .TXT file associated with the Elixir-format (.LP3) file.

Orientation

Select [Port] for portrait, [Land] for landscape, [InvPort] for inverse portrait or [InvLand] for inverse landscape format fonts.

3. **After you select your options, click on [OK].**

Converting to or from PCX and TIFF formats

To convert to or from .PCX and .TIFF formats:

1. **Copy the graphic(s) file to the Converter icon.**

The Graphic Converter Options dialog box displays.

2. **Select the desired format and click on [OK].**

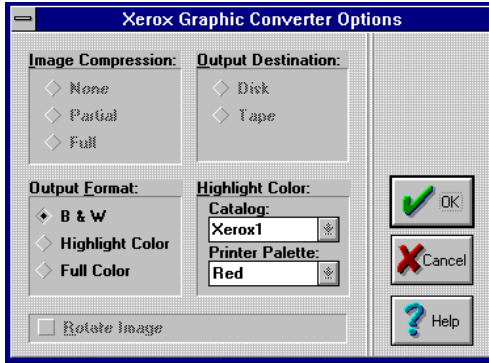


Figure 7-25. Xerox Graphic Converter Options dialog box

The Xerox Graphic Converter Options dialog box displays with the following options:

Image Compression

For conversions to [Color IMG] format only. [None] does not compress files. [Partial] compresses duplicate and blank (null) lines, and [Full] compresses duplicate and blank lines and optimizes for white space.

Output Destination

Select [Disk] or [Tape] as your output medium. If you select [Tape] and your PC does not have an attached tape unit, the converted file writes to a hard disk without issuing an error message.

Output Format

Select either [B&W], [Highlight Color] or [Full Color] for image output format.

Highlight Color

(Applicable only when you select [Highlight Color] as the [Output format] option). Select [Catalog] to view a collection of available printer palettes or [Printer Palette] to view actual output color (e.g., Red) to be used for the image.

Rotate Image

For conversions to IMG formats only. Selecting this option rotates graphics by 90 degrees to allow correct printing of a landscape graphic on a portrait form.

Unavailable options are grayed.

Restrictions and limitations

The program supports the following formats for converting .TIF files:

TIFF #	Import support	Export support	Comments
1	Yes	Yes	Uncompressed format. Also supports 256 level gray-scale graphics.
2	Yes	No	CCITT Group 3
4	Yes	Yes	CCITT Group 4 facsimile format. Best compression for scanned and line art.
5	Yes	No	LZW (black-and-white) compression
32771	Yes	No	Similar to TIFF #1. Can also support 256 level gray-scale.
32773	Yes		Pack bits compression; used on Macintosh computers.

Converting Elixir graphics to BMP format

To convert Elixir graphics to .BMP format:

- 1. Copy the Elixir graphic(s) to the Converter Icon.**

The Graphic Converter Options dialog box displays.

2. Select [BMP] and click on [OK].

The BMP Options dialog box displays.

3. Select options, then click on [OK].

The Graphic Conversion Status dialog box displays.

4. Click on [OK] when the conversion is complete.

Converting Elixir graphic files to .IMG and .LGO format

When converting Elixir-format files to (black and white) .IMG or .LGO format, a dialog box similar to the following displays.

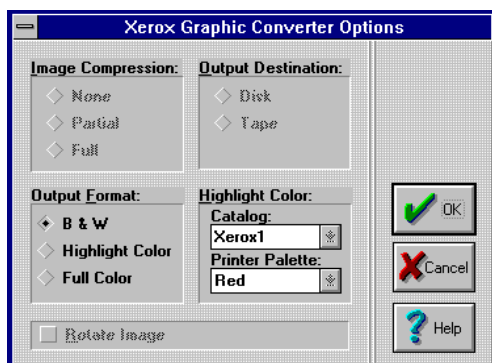


Figure 7-26. Xerox Graphic Converter Options dialog box

Options that are grayed do not apply to the conversion.

Image Compression

For conversions to .IMG format only: [Partial] compresses duplicate lines and blank (null) lines, [Full] compresses duplicate lines, blank lines, and optimizes for white space. [None] does not compress files.

[Full] takes the longest time to process and produces the smallest .IMG file. If your documents contain graphic images larger than half a page and you are printing on a Xerox 8700 or 9700 series printer, select [Full].

Output Destination

Select [Disk] or [Tape] as your output medium. If your PC does not have a tape unit connected, the converted file is written to hard disk without issuing an error message.

Rotate Image

For conversions to .IMG format only: Check to rotate the image by 90 degrees, which allows correct printing of a landscape graphic on a portrait form.

Converting graphics to Xerox format

Please note the following when converting graphics for printing on production or distributed printers:

- Xerox distributed printers support graphics names up to seven characters long; the first (left) character is reserved for a color plane identifier (C, M, Y, or K),
- Xerox production printers support graphic file names up to six characters.

When converting graphics to Xerox format, make sure that file names do not contain more than six letters.

Transforming Xerox graphics files

In addition to graphic file conversion, you can modify Xerox .IMG and .LGO graphic file headers.

You use the Transformer icon to modify graphics files. Refer to the "Transformations" chapter for more information.

Converting documents

In this manual, multi-page forms are referred to as documents.

Document formats to and from which you can convert depend on the Elixir Suite for Xerox Desktop product you are using and also on additional Elixir applications such as Print Driver, PageHandler and DocuTag. See the associated user guide for more information.

Document definitions are different if you use the Elix-Sys Converter for Xerox Distributed Printers product, where "Jobs" is the term applied. See the tabbed 4235 and 4700 Printers sections for more information.

To convert one or more documents, copy files from the Elixir Documents folder or from folders in the Input Documents folder to the Converter icon. A Document Converter Options dialog box displays with the following options.

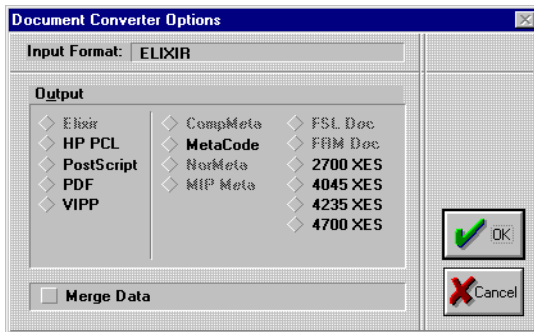


Figure 7-27. Document Converter Options

The Document Converter Options dialog box displays the following options:

Input Document

Displays the format of the file you selected to convert.

Output Document

The formats to which you can convert the input file. You cannot convert to formats displayed in gray.

Converting metacode to Elixir format

Copy a metacode (.MET) file from the Input Metacode Docs folder or a normalized metacode (.NOR) file from the Input NorMeta Docs folder to the Converter icon.

In the Document Converter Options dialog box select ELIXIR (the only available option). The Xerox Form Converter Options dialog box shown in the following figure displays.

Selecting options in the dialog box runs the Elixir MET2ELX utility (supplied with all Elixir Suite for Xerox products). See the “Stand-alone utilities” chapter for more information on the MET2ELX utility.

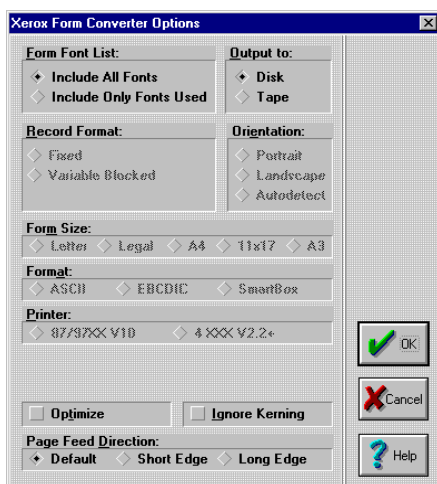


Figure 7-28. Xerox Form Converter Options dialog box

The Xerox Form Converter Options dialog box displays the following options. Grayed options are not applicable.

Record Format; Size

Select [Fixed] or [Variable Blocked] (the default). Select [Variable Blocked], unless you want to convert normalized metacode files. Normalized metacode files contain four-byte record descriptor word (RDW) and block descriptor word (BDW) fields that describe the length of each record and block of records. [Size] is the value for [Fixed] blocking. The default Record Format setting is [Variable Blocked] which has no associated [Size] value.

Orientation

Select [Portrait] or [Landscape] orientation for your document, or [Autodetect] (the default) for automatic detection of page orientation.

Form Size

Select [Letter] (the default), [Legal], [A3], [A4], or [11x17].

Flist

Flist is the eight-character font list stem name. This is an ASCII .LST file in the default Elixiform screen fonts directory (initially after installation, the directory is *drive:\ELIXIR\FONTS\SCREEN\DEMO*). This file is specified in Elixiform and contains a list of up to 24 Elixir font stem names which can be used to generate an Elixir form. Refer to the *Elixiform User Guide* for more information.

Please note: Before conversion, you must have the associated screen fonts and logos loaded on your system in the appropriate directories.

For multi-page documents, MET2ELX output files are named as follows:

- The name of the first page of a converted file retains the first six characters of the source file name. If the source file name has less than six characters, all characters are retained.

- For pages two through nine, the right character of the output file name is replaced with a digit from two through nine. For pages 10 through 99, the two right characters of the output file name are replaced with the digits 10 through 99. A similar naming convention applies to pages 100 through 999. MET2ELX only supports documents up to 999 pages long.

If the metacode contains graphics, the converted graphics are written to the *drive:\ELIXIR\PICS\PRINTER* directory with .LP3 extensions. Screen versions are written to *drive:\ELIXIR\PICS\SCREEN* with .LW8 extensions. Elixir-format graphics and screen image file names are also constructed as described above.

Transforming Xerox data streams

In addition to document file conversion, Elixir includes utilities that allow you to:

- modify the header of .FRM and .FSL documents
- convert .FSL files to and from 80-byte record (AS-CII) and 512-byte block (standard-labeled) formats
- insert UDK escape sequences in distributed printer XES format forms
- compress metacode (.MET) and PageHandler metacode (.MIP) files.

You can access these utilities using the Transformer icon described in the "Transformations" chapter.

8. Transformations

This chapter describes Transformation operations, which apply Elixir utilities to modify Xerox-format form, font, graphics and document files.

These modifications change the file header information to make the files compatible with operations such as uploading files to a host, copying files to tape, or sending files through a network.

To transform a Xerox format file, you copy it from the appropriate Output or Input folder to the Transformer icon, then select the Elixir utility as described in the following sections.

See the "Stand-alone utilities" chapter for more information about Elixir utilities.

Transformer icon setup

This section describes how to set up the Transformer icon properties.

Select the Transformer icon and press <F2> or right-click on the icon to display the Transformer Properties dialog box shown below.

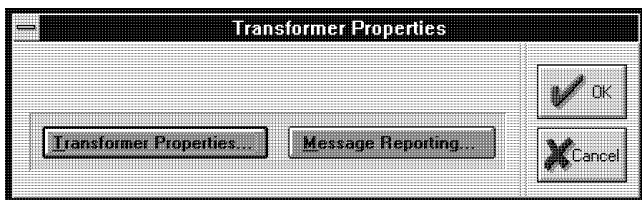


Figure 8-1. Transformer Properties Dialog dialog box

Select [Transformer Properties] to display the Transformer Properties Dialog dialog box.

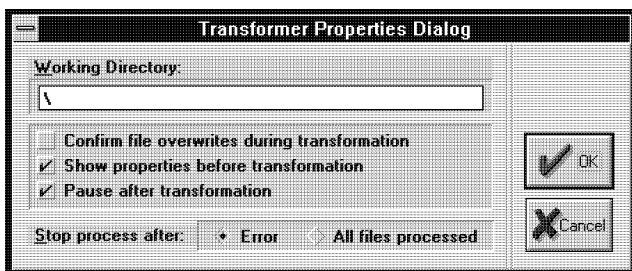


Figure 8-2. Transformer Properties Dialog box

Working Directory

The directory in which temporary read/writes take place during file transformations. The default is the root (\). We recommend specifying a RAM disk for faster transformations.

Confirm file overwrites during transformation

Allows you to specify whether you overwrite existing output files with files you create using the same names. Select to display a dialog box requesting confirmation before overwriting an existing file. Not selecting this option automatically overwrites existing files.

Show properties before transformation

Allows you to specify default setup options for dialog boxes for each file transformation type.

Pause after transformation

Select to pause after each transformation.

Stop process after: Error/All files processed.

Specify whether you want conversion to stop after an error has occurred or after file processing.

Select [Message Reporting] to display the Message options dialog box.

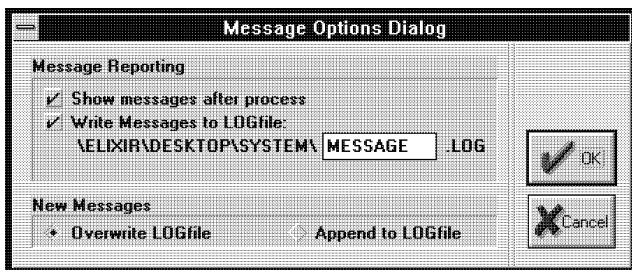


Figure 8-3. Message Options dialog box

Select options to [Show messages after process] or to [Write Messages to LOGfile], the stem name of which you can specify.

You can also specify to append new messages to an existing .LOG file or to overwrite an existing .LOG file.

Transforming Xerox forms

This section describes Xerox form transformations. To transform a Xerox form, copy appropriate Xerox files from Input or Output folders to the Transformer icon to display the following Form Transformer Options dialog box (options which are not applicable display gray).

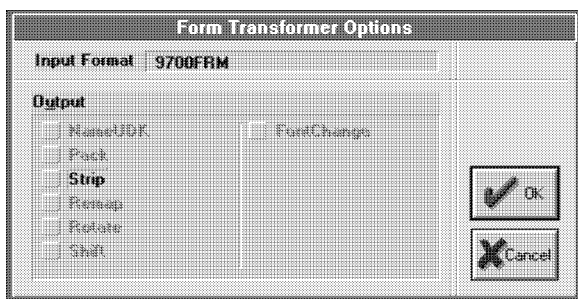


Figure 8-4. Form Transformer Options dialog box

Modifying 9700 .FRM headers

To modify an .FRM file header, copy .FRM files from the Input or Output 9700 FRM Forms folders to the Transformer icon. Select [Strip] in the Form Transformer Options dialog box to display the Xerox Header Control Utility dialog box, shown in the following figure.

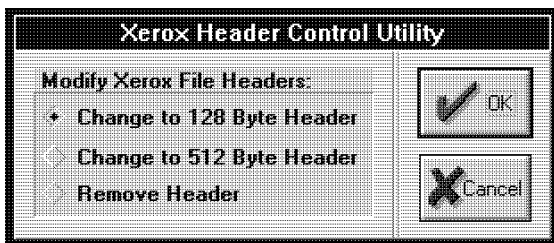


Figure 8-5. Xerox Header Control Utility dialog box

Change to 128 Byte Header

Adds a 128-byte Xerox header to the file (required if copying files to a tape device with a Qualstar controller).

Change to 512 Byte Header

Adds a 512-byte Xerox header to the file (required if transferring files to a mainframe computer or if copying files to a tape device without a Qualstar controller).

Remove Header

Removes an existing Xerox header from the file.

(See also the "Stand-alone utilities" chapter for a description of the Strip utility.)

Modifying 9700 .FSL headers

To modify an .FSL file header, copy an .FSL file from the Input or Output 9700 FSL Forms folders to the Converter icon.

Select [Strip] in the Form Transformer Options dialog box to display the Xerox Header Control Utility dialog box described in the previous section.

Converting .FSL records

To convert .FSL records, copy .FSL files from the Input or Output 9700 FSL Forms folders to the Transformer icon. Select [Pack] in the Form Transformer Options dialog box to display the Xerox File Packing Utility dialog box, shown in the following figure. (See also the "Stand-alone utilities" chapter for a description of the Pack utility.)

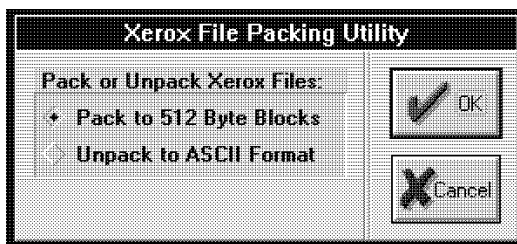


Figure 8-6. Xerox File Packing Utility dialog box

Pack to 512 Byte Blocks

Converts an 80-byte record (ASCII) file to Xerox, 512-byte, standard label format.

Unpack to ASCII Format

Converts a Xerox, 512-byte, standard label format file to 80-byte record ASCII format.

Inserting UDK escape codes

You can insert an XES escape sequence in 2700 XES and 4045 XES forms in the Output Forms folder. Inserting escape sequences allows storing XES print files on a Xerox distributed printer hard disk.

Copy a .PRN from the Output 2700 XES or Output 4045 XES folders to the Transformer icon to display the Form Transformer Options dialog box. Click on [NameUDK Utility] to insert the escape sequence.

See the "Stand-alone utilities" chapter for more information about NameUDK.

Transforming Xerox fonts

This section describes Xerox font transformations. To transform a Xerox font, copy appropriate Xerox files from Input or Output folders to the Transformer icon to display the following Font Transformer Options dialog box (options that are not applicable display as grayed/dimmed).

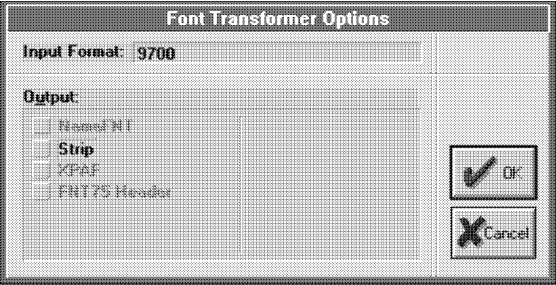


Figure 8-7. Font Transformer Options dialog box

Modifying Xerox 9700 font headers

To modify a Xerox 9700 font header, copy the font file from the Input 9700 Fonts or Output 9700 Utility Fonts folder to the Transformer icon and click on [Strip] to display the Xerox Header Control Utility dialog box shown in the following figure.

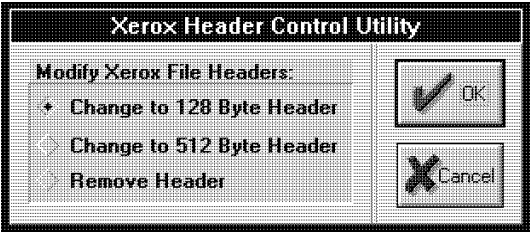


Figure 8-8. Xerox Header Control Utility dialog box

The Xerox Header Control Utility dialog box contains the following options:

Change to 128 Byte Header

Adds a 128-byte Xerox header to the file (required if copying files to a tape device with a Qualstar controller).

Change to 512 Byte Header

Adds a 512-byte Xerox header to the file (required if transferring files to a mainframe computer or if copying files to a tape device without a Qualstar controller).

Remove Header

Removes a Xerox header from the 9700 font file.

Assigning internal names to XES fonts

The internal name of an XES font is the name recognized by a print file or an XES printer. To assign an internal name to an XES or 2700 font, copy it from the Output or Input 4045 Fonts (or 2700 Fonts) folder to the Transformer icon and click on [NameFNT]. The Modify internal name of UDK file dialog box displays.

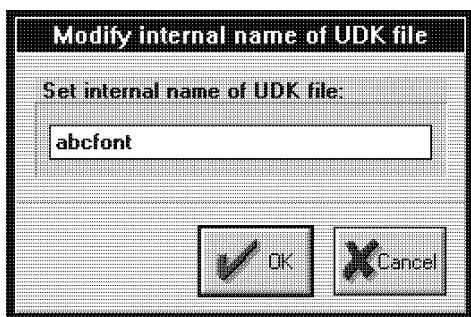


Figure 8-9. Modify internal name of UDK file dialog box

Enter the file name. The internal file name can contain up to 20 characters. See the description of the NameFNT utility in the “Stand-alone utilities” chapter for more information.

Transforming Xerox graphics

This section describes Xerox graphics file transformations. To transform a Xerox graphic, copy .LGO or .IMG (color or black-and-white) files from the Input or Output 9700LGO Pics, IMG Pics, ColorLGO Pics and ColorIMG Pics folders to the Transformer icon. Select [Strip] in the Graphic Transformer Options dialog box. The following dialog box displays.

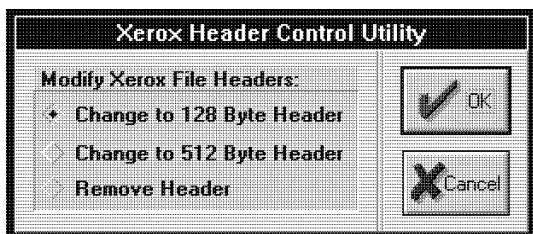


Figure 8-10. Xerox Header Control Utility dialog box

Change to 128 Byte Header

Adds a 128-byte Xerox header to the file (required if copying files to a tape device with a Qualstar controller).

Change to 512 Byte Header

Adds a 512-byte Xerox header to the file (required if transferring files to a mainframe computer or if copying files to a tape device without a Qualstar controller).

Remove Header

Removes Xerox headers from files.

Transforming Xerox documents

This section describes utilities you can access from the Transformer icon that allow you to modify Xerox document data streams. To modify a Xerox document, copy the appropriate file to the Transformer icon to display the Document Transformer options dialog box shown below.

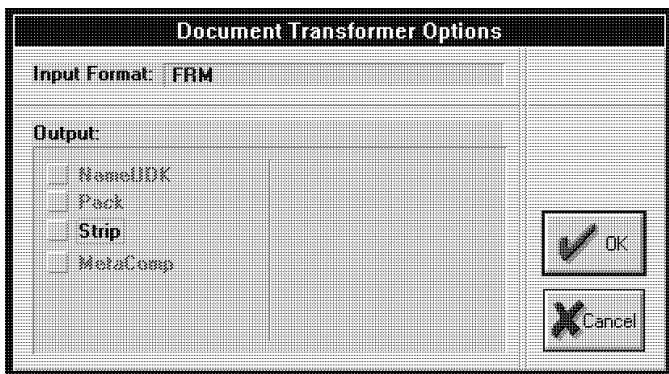


Figure 8-11. Document Transformer Options dialog box

Modifying FRM headers

To modify FRM file headers, copy files from the Output FRM Docs folders to the Transformer icon, and select [Strip] in the Document Transformer Options dialog box to display the Xerox Header Control Utility dialog box shown in the following figure.

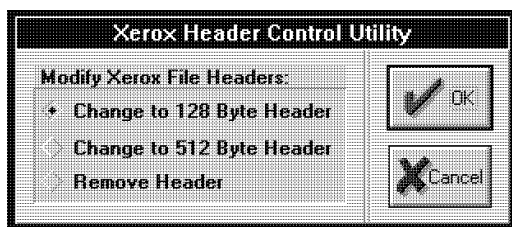


Figure 8-12. Xerox Header Control Utility dialog box

Change to 128 Byte Header

Adds a 128-byte Xerox header to the file (required if copying files to a tape device with a Qualstar controller).

Change to 512 Byte Header

Adds a 512-byte Xerox header to the file (required if transferring files to a mainframe computer or if copying files to a tape device without a Qualstar controller).

Remove Header

Removes an existing Xerox header from the file.

Modifying FSL headers

To modify FSL file headers, copy files from the Output FSL Docs folder to the Transformer icon and select [Strip] in the Document Transformer Options dialog box to display Xerox Header Control Utility dialog box. See the “Modifying FRM headers” section for more information.

Converting FSL records

To convert FSL records, copy files from the Output FSL Docs folder to the Transformer icon. Select [Pack] in the Document Transformer Options dialog box to display the Xerox File Packing Utility dialog box shown in the following figure.

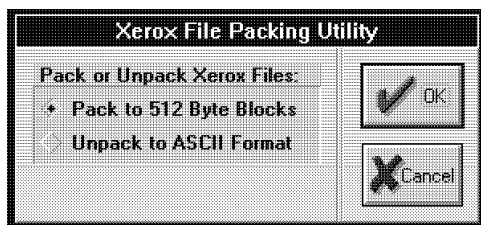


Figure 8-13. Xerox File Packing Utility dialog box

Pack to 512 Byte Blocks

Converts an 80-byte record format (ASCII) file to Xerox, 512-byte, standard label format.

Unpack to ASCII Format

Converts a Xerox, 512-byte, standard label format file to 80-byte record ASCII format.

Inserting UDK escape codes

The NameUDK utility allows you to insert escape code commands and file name in the print file to store the print file to disk.

Copy any output XES print file to the Transformer icon to display the Document Transformer Options dialog box. Select [NameUDK] to run the NameUDK utility.

Compressing metacode

PageHandler cannot process compressed graphics files. To use PageHandler, use the uncompressed graphics files, then use the procedure below to compress the resultant output files.

To compress metacode files:

- copy .MET metacode files from the Output Documents/Metacode Docs folder, or
- copy .MIP (PageHandler output) metacode files from the Output Mip Docs folders, to the Transformer icon. Select [MetaComp] to display the Metacode Compression Utility dialog box shown in the following figure.

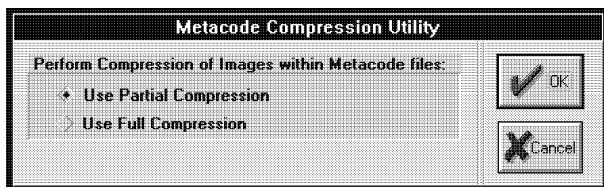


Figure 8-14. Metacode Compression Utility dialog box

[Use Partial Compression] works marginally faster but does not compress the files as much. [Use Full Compression] is marginally slower but compresses files more. Use [Use Full Compression] unless processing time is a major concern.

9. Accessing DOS files and applications

The ElixSys Desktop includes a number of tools that enable you to access DOS files and applications as follows:



The User Tools icon allows you to establish an icon for any DOS application or batch file, so that double-clicking on the icon executes (or starts) the application.



The User Files icon allows you to access all DOS files and directories as icons.



The User Files icon also includes a Tool Link utility that allows you to link a file with an application. Once linked, double-clicking on the file starts the application and loads the file.

The Dispatcher icon allows you to store up to 12 DOS commands with optional replaceable parameters. When you copy a file to the Dispatcher icon and select a command, the name of the file substitutes for the replaceable parameter.

The DOS pull-down menu (accessed from the menu bar) allows you to enter and execute any DOS command.

This section assumes you are familiar with DOS directory structure and batch files.

Creating an application icon



The User Tools icon allows you create icons for applications and batch files on your PC.

During installation, the ELXWDATA, ELXWWW, and PE User Tools are installed.

The ELXWDATA User Tool starts a batch file that generates a text file called ELXWDATA.TXT on the A: drive diskette. The file contains the contents of your AUTOEXEC.BAT, CONFIG.SYS and INSTALL.LOG files and other information such as existing .APP and .EXE files and system memory.

The ELXWWW User Tool launches a browser and loads the Elixir Web site.

The PE User Tool starts the Elixir Palette Editor. The Palette Editor allows you to create or modify PC palettes (.PLF and .PAL files) located in the *drive:\ELIXIR\DESKTOP\SYSTEMPALETTES* directory. For more information, see the "Palette Editor" appendix.

If you performed a custom installation, right-click on the User Tools icon and change the [Working Directory] and [Command to Execute] options to the directory in which you installed Elixir Program files; otherwise the Palette Editor will not run.

Creating an icon

To create an application icon, open the User Tools icon to display the User Tools window.

The User Tools window is similar to other Elixir windows and includes an additional **Tools** menu title in the window header.

From the **Tools** menu, select the [New Tool] option to display the User Application Setup dialog box shown in the following figure.

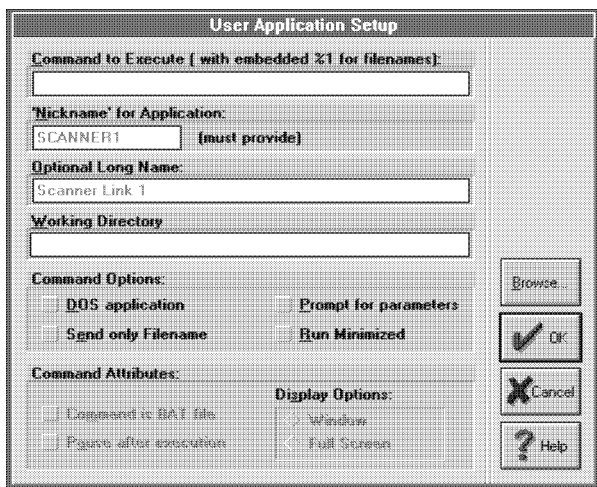


Figure 9-1. User Application Setup dialog box

The User Application Setup dialog box contains the following options:

Command to Execute

The command that executes the application you want associated with the icon. For example, to create a WordPerfect icon, you would specify WP.

If you want to link the application to files in the same directory as the application (see the “Linking files to an already-defined User Tool” section), you can also type in the DOS command with an embedded %1 parameter. The embedded %1 parameter specifies the location in the command at which you want the file name to display. See also the [Prompt for parameters] option.

Nickname for application

A nickname (up to 8 characters) for the application you want to run. For example, you may specify VENT as a nickname for Xerox Ventura Publisher. After creating an icon, the User Tools window displays the icon with the nickname under it.

Optional Long Name

A descriptive name for the application (up to 29 characters). For example, for Xerox Ventura Publisher, you can enter Ventura Publisher. The long name is informational only; it identifies the application in the dialog box.

Working Directory

The DOS path for the executable. Use this field if the application you are running does not reside in the *drive:\ELIXIR* directory and if you have not specified a *DOS PATH=* statement for the directory in which the application executable resides.

DOS Application

Select if running a DOS application (enables the [Command Attributes] options).

Send Only Filename

Uses only the stem name of the file for command execution.

Prompt for parameters

Select if you want the program to prompt you to enter an argument that appends to the command in [Command to execute].

Select to display a dialog box allowing you to enter an argument when you run the application.

Leave unselected (the default) to run the application without prompting for an argument.

Run Minimized

Executes the command in a minimized window.

Command is .BAT file

If the command you specify is a DOS batch file:

Select to redisplay the Desktop when you exit the application. Leave unselected to return you to the directory specified in the batch file. If the application is a batch file that calls another batch file, the Desktop does not redisplay when you exit the application (see the "Starting batch files" section in this chapter for more information).

Pause after execution

Select to pause after exiting the application and to request "press any key to continue" before returning to the Desktop.

Leave unselected to return to the Desktop after exiting the application.

Display Options

[Window] displays command execution in a window.
[Full Screen] displays command execution in a full screen environment.

[Browse] button

Click on to display the contents of a DOS directory (that you can change) from which you can select a file.

After you specify the required fields in the User Application Setup dialog box and click on [OK], the User Tools window displays an icon labeled with the nickname you specified in the dialog box and an .XAP extension to identify it as a User Tool icon (the .XAP file writes to the *drive:\ELIXIR\DESKTOP\SYSTEM \USER\ERTOOL* directory).

Double-clicking on the icon now runs the specified application as described in the following section.

Starting the application

To start an application for which you have defined an icon, open the User Tools window and double-click on the icon.

If you did not select the [Prompt for Parameters] option, the Desktop clears and the application starts. If you selected the above option, a dialog box displays requesting that you enter an argument. Enter the required argument and click on [OK] to run the application.

If you selected the [Pause after execution] option, the program prompts you to "press any key to continue" after exiting the application. Press any key to return to the Desktop.

Displaying icon properties

To check or edit the properties of a previously specified application in the User Tools folder, select the application icon and do one of the following:

- Select [Properties] from the **File** menu.
- Select [Tool Props] from the **Tools** menu on the User Tools window header.
- Press <F2>.
- Click the right mouse button.

The User Application Setup dialog box displays, showing the information previously specified for the application. You can edit your entries if necessary.

User Tools examples

The following User Tools examples describe how to create icons that run Ventura Publisher from the Desktop, and launch Elixir's Web site.

Creating an icon for Ventura Publisher

To create an icon for Ventura Publisher:



1. **Open the User Tools icon.**

The User Tools window displays.

2. **Select [New Tool] from the Tools menu.**

The User Application Setup dialog box displays.

3. **Type VP in the [Command to Execute:] option.**
4. **Type VENT in the [Nickname for application:] option.**
5. **Type Ventura Publisher in the [Optional Long Name:] field.**

6. **Select the [DOS application] command option.**
7. **Select the [Command is .BAT file] field (Ventura Publisher runs from VP.BAT, a batch file).**
8. **Do not select [Prompt for parameters]**

This starts Ventura Publisher without requiring you to enter a parameter.
9. **Do not select [Pause after execution].**
10. **If you have not specified the Ventura directory in your AUTOEXEC.BAT file PATH= statement, enter the directory path in [Working Directory] to specify the location of your Ventura Publisher executable files.**

For example, if the Ventura Publisher batch (.BAT) file is on the C: (root) drive; enter C:\.

11. **Click on [OK].**

The User Tools window shows a User Tools icon with a VENT.XAP label.

Checking Ventura Publisher icon properties

To check (or modify) Ventura Publisher icon specifications, follow these steps:

1. **Select the VP icon by clicking on it.**
2. **Select [Tool Props] from the Tools menu.**

The User Application dialog box for Ventura Publisher displays. Check the information you entered and make changes if necessary.

3. **Click on [OK].**

Starting and exiting Ventura Publisher

To start and exit Ventura Publisher, follow these steps:

- 1. To start Ventura Publisher, open the VENT icon in the User Tools window.**

The Ventura Publisher main screen displays.

- 2. Exit Ventura Publisher.**

The Desktop redisplay.

Creating an icon for Elixir's Web site

To create an icon that automatically connects you to Elixir's Web site:

- 1. Open the User Tools icon and select ELXWWW.XAP.**
- 2. Select [Tool Props] from the Tools menu.**

The User Application Setup dialog box displays.

- 3. In the [Command to Execute] option, enter the path to your Internet browser, then click on [OK].**

You can change the default browser path that displays.

Accessing DOS directories



To access directories and files, open the User Files icon to display the User Files Directory Paths & Tool Links dialog box. The following figure shows an example.

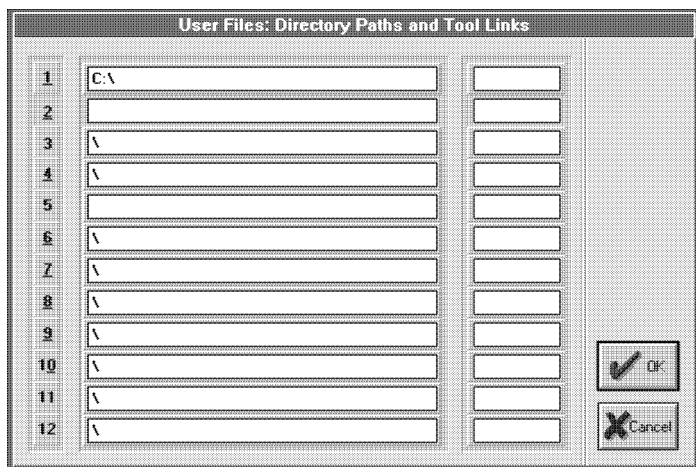


Figure 9-2. User Files Directory Paths & Tool Links

The User Files Directory Paths & Tool Links dialog box contains 12 lines on which you can specify up to 12 DOS directory paths. Select any line and click on [OK] to display a window showing the contents of the directory specified on the line. The following figure shows a window example. You can also use wildcard characters to display a filtered list of files in a directory.

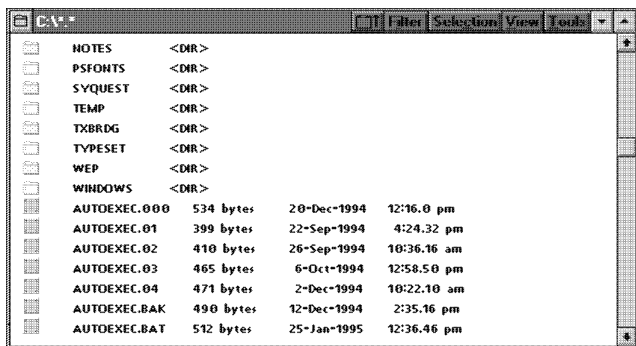
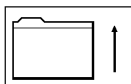


Figure 9-3. Window example

If you enter a directory that does not exist, a dialog box displays to confirm creating a new directory.

Changing directories



The window header contains a backup button similar to the button described in the “Elixir folders” chapter. Click on backup the button to display the contents of the directory one level closer to the root directory. Repeatedly clicking on the backup button eventually displays a window showing the active drives on your PC.

For example, if the C:\TYPESET\LETTERS window is active and you repeatedly click on the backup button, the following windows display after each click:

C:\TYPESET

C:\ (the root directory)

Active drive letters (C:, A:, etc.)

To change directories further from the root, open any folder icon to display the contents of the folder (directory).

Copying files between subdirectories

To copy one or more files to another subdirectory, follow these steps:

1. **Select and drag the file(s) to the User Files icon.**

The User Files Directory Paths and Tool Links dialog box displays with the path for your specified file(s) selected.

2. **In the dialog box, enter the full path for the directory to which you want to copy the file(s), or select the path if it already displays.**
3. **Click on [OK].**

The file(s) you selected copy to the directory you specified.

Linking files to applications

When you establish a link between an application and a file, double-clicking on the file icon starts the application and loads the file as a parameter to the application command (you can link only one application to one or more files in a directory).

The **Tools** menu (accessed from the header of any open window displayed through the User Files icon) allows you to establish links between files in a window and an application (executable or batch file).

For example, if you link files created by a word processing program to the word processing application, double-clicking on any of the file icons starts the word processing program and loads the selected file in the program.

You can link files to an application that has a User Tool defined, or create a User Tool for an application and link files to it.

Linking files to an already-defined User Tool

If you created a User Tool icon for an application, you link files in a directory to the application as follows:

Select [Tool Link] from the **Tools** menu to display the Tool Linkage dialog box shown in the following figure.

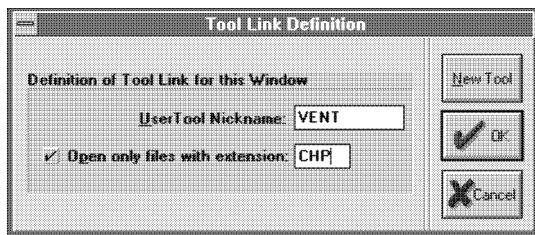


Figure 9-4. Tool Linkage dialog box

The Tool Linkage dialog box contains the following options:

User Tool Nickname

Enter the nickname you specified when creating the User Tool. Using the User Tools example in the previous section, you would enter VENT for Ventura Publisher.

Open only files with extension

Select to only link files with the extension you specify. Leave unselected (the default) to not use an extension filter. Files with all extensions in the directory link to the application.

Linking files to a new application

If you have not established an application as a User Tool icon, you can do so by selecting [New Tool] in the Tool Link Definition dialog box header to display the User Application Setup dialog box.

See the “Creating an application icon” section in this chapter for more information about fields in this dialog box.

Checking tool properties

After you establish tool links, you can check or modify entries for the Tool Properties from the **Tools** menu. Selecting this option displays the User Application Setup dialog box for editing.

Opening linked files

When files in a directory become linked to an application, double-clicking on a linked file starts the application and loads the file in the application.

If you selected [Prompt for Parameters] in the User Application Setup dialog box, the Arguments to this Program dialog box shown in the following figure displays.

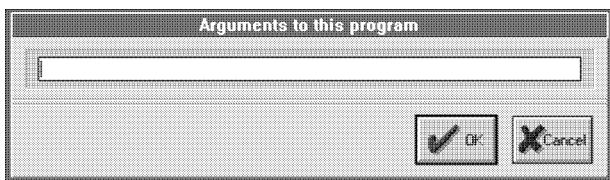


Figure 9-5. Arguments to this Program dialog box

The parameter (file name) shown in the dialog box is the file name last entered. (The example has no previously entered file name.)

Starting DOS executables

Double-clicking on a .EXE, .COM, or .BAT file starts the executable and may prompt you for an argument (file name) for the executable. If required, enter an argument, or just click on [OK] to start the executable.

Starting batch files

When you start a DOS batch file (.BAT) using the User Tools icon, the Elixir Desktop loads an additional COMMAND.COM program in system memory to enable returning to the Desktop. The size of the program file is about 11 KB.

If the batch file you want to start from the Desktop requires a major portion of available memory, the additional COMMAND.COM file may not leave enough memory to run your batch file (for example, a Ventura Publisher chapter that contains many fonts and paragraph tags consumes large amounts of memory).

To utilize the maximum amount of system memory, start batch files in one of the following ways:

- If possible, start the application directly without using a batch file.
- Do not select the [Command is .BAT File] option in the User Application Setup dialog box and use an ASCII editor to add the following lines to the end of the batch file:

```
drive:  
CD \ELIXIR  
ELIXIR
```

drive: is the drive on which you installed the Desktop.

- Use a commercially available memory management program to remove unwanted memory-resident programs from memory. Add the command(s) required to remove the additional COMMAND.COM program to the first line of your application batch file. Select the [Command is .BAT File] option in the User Application Setup dialog box.

Using the Dispatcher icon



The Dispatcher icon allows you to specify up to 12 DOS commands with optional embedded replaceable parameters. Copying a file to the Dispatcher icon substitutes the name of the file for the replaceable parameter and invokes the command.

The Dispatcher icon provides a convenient way to store commonly used DOS commands, that you start using simple mouse operations.

Some examples of functions you can store and run using the Dispatcher icon are:

- DOS batch files
- Elixir utilities or batch files
- Quick DOS operations (such as the disk optimizer).

You can use the Dispatcher icon in the following ways:

- Copy one or more files to the Dispatcher icon and in the displayed dialog box select the batch command you want to run with the selected file(s) as replaceable parameter(s).
- Open the Dispatcher icon, enter a batch command, and enter the name of the file you want to run as a parameter to the batch command.

Setting up Dispatcher commands



To set up Dispatcher commands, open the Dispatcher icon to display the Dispatcher Commands dialog box shown in the following figure.

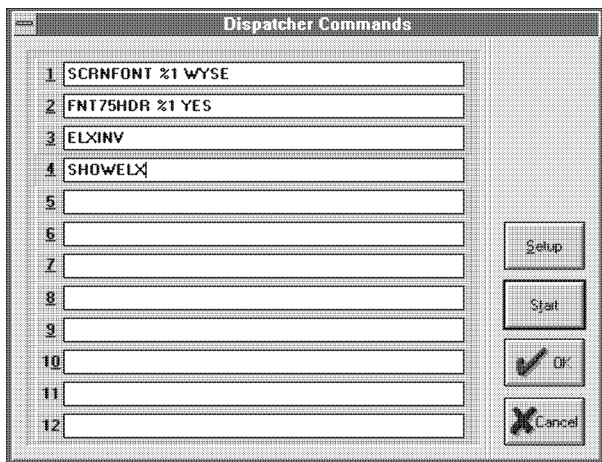


Figure 9-6. Dispatcher Commands dialog box example

The dialog box allows you to enter and display up to 12 DOS commands.

To enter a command, click on a line to select it, then type the command.

You can use a %1 replaceable parameter in the command line. When you copy a file to the Dispatcher icon and select the command line, the file name substitutes for the replaceable parameter.

If you want a prompt to enter a parameter each time you run the Dispatcher command, select the [Prompt for parameters] option in the User Application Setup dialog box. The parameter you specify adds after the Dispatcher command.

Use the <Backspace>, , and horizontal arrow keys to edit a selected line.

If you frequently run more than 12 Dispatcher executables, you may want to store eleven of your most frequently used commands and leave one line open to enter other commands as required.

After entering a command, select [Setup] in the dialog box header to display the User Application Setup dialog box shown in the following figure.

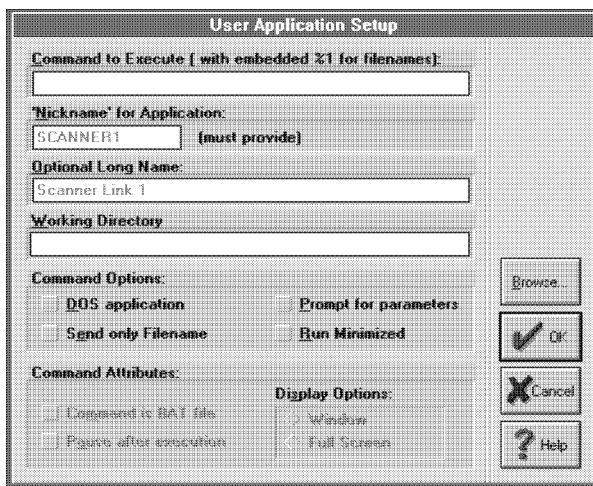


Figure 9-7. User Application Setup dialog box

The User Application Setup dialog box shows the command you entered in the [Command to Execute] option (you can edit the command, if required).

The User Application Setup dialog box contains the following options:

Command to Execute

The command you want to execute through the Dispatcher. You can use the [Browse] button to locate the directory and command name.

Nickname/Optional Long Name

Not applicable when setting up Dispatcher executables.

Working Directory

Optional - allows you to enter the path of the directory containing the executable (useful if the executable you are running does not reside in *drive:\ELIXIR* and you did not specify a DOS PATH= statement).

DOS application

Select if you want to specify a DOS application (enables the [Command Attributes] options).

Send Only Filename

Command execution uses only the stem name of the file.

Prompt for parameters

Select to prompt for an argument when executing the command (see the description for the Dispatcher Commands dialog box). This allows you to run commands directly from the Dispatcher icon without requiring you to copy files to the Dispatcher icon.

Run Minimized

Executes the command in a minimized window.

Command is .BAT file

For a batch (.BAT) file, select to return you to the Desktop after executing the command. Leave unselected (the default) to return you to DOS after executing the command. If the executable is a batch file that calls another batch file, the program returns you to the second batch file.

Pause after execution

Select to pause after command execution and to prompt for any keystroke to continue (redisplays the Desktop). Otherwise redisplays the Desktop immediately after command execution.

Display Options

[Window] displays command execution in a window.
[Full Screen] displays command execution in a full screen environment.

After specifying options, click on [OK] to redisplay the Dispatcher Commands dialog box. Click on:

- [Start] to execute the highlighted command
- [OK] to update information in the dialog box without executing any commands
- [Cancel] to cancel any changes to the Dispatcher Command dialog box.

Executing Dispatcher commands

You can run DOS command files using the Dispatcher in two ways:

- by copying selected files to the Dispatcher icon
- by opening the Dispatcher icon and executing commands.

Copying files to the Dispatcher

To execute Dispatcher commands by copying one or more files to the Dispatcher icon, follow these steps:

1. **Select one or more files.**
2. **Copy the selected files to the Dispatcher icon using any copy procedure, or press <Ctrl> + <I>, or select [Dispatch] from the File menu.**



The Dispatcher Commands dialog box displays.

3. **Select the command line for the command you want to execute, or enter or modify a command on any line.**
4. **Click on [Start].**

The Desktop clears, and the command executes multiple times, each time with one file as an argument to the command.

Executing commands from the Dispatcher Commands dialog box

To execute a command and specify a parameter to the command directly from the Dispatcher icon, follow these steps:



1. **Open the Dispatcher icon (double-click on it, select it and press <Enter>, or just press <Ctrl> + <I>).**

The Dispatcher Commands dialog box displays.

2. **Select the command you want to execute.**
3. **Click on [Setup].**

The User Application Setup dialog box displays.

4. **Select [Prompt for Parameters].**
5. **Click on [OK].**

The Dispatcher dialog box redisplay.

6. **Click on [Start].**

The Arguments to this Program dialog box displays.

7. **Enter any parameter(s) required to execute the command .**
8. **Click on [OK].**

The command executes with the parameter you specified.

Dispatcher example

The following example shows how you can use the Dispatcher icon to issue a DOS TYPE command to view the contents of an ASCII file. This example assumes that your AUTOEXEC.BAT file is on your C: drive.



1. **Open the Dispatcher icon.**

The Dispatcher Commands dialog box displays.

2. **On a blank line, enter TYPE %1 | MORE and click on [Setup].**

This DOS command lists the contents of an ASCII file one screen at a time and then pauses and prompts you to enter any key to continue.

3. **In the displayed User Application Setup dialog box select the following options:**

[DOS application]
[Pause after execution]
[Full Screen].

Click on [OK] twice to exit the Setup and Dispatcher Commands dialog boxes.



4. **Open the User Files icon.**
5. **On the displayed User Files Directory Paths & Tool Links dialog box, enter C:*.* on a blank line and click on [OK].**

A window displays the contents of the C: drive on your PC.

6. **In the window header, select [By Name] from the View menu.**

The contents of your C: drive displays in alphabetical order.

7. **Select the AUTOEXEC.BAT file and copy it to the Dispatcher icon.**

8. In the displayed Dispatcher Commands dialog box, select the TYPE %1 | MORE line and click on [START].

The screen clears and the contents of your AUTOEXEC.BAT file displays followed by a "Press any key to continue" message. Press any key to redisplay the Desktop.

After specifying the DOS TYPE command in the Dispatcher Commands menu, you can use the procedure above to list the contents of any ASCII file from the Desktop.

Using the Dispatcher to run Elixir utilities

You can run DOS-based Elixir utilities from the Desktop in several ways (for example, by using the DOS pull-down menu). However, the Dispatcher allows you to conveniently run the utilities by copying files to the Dispatcher icon and specifying the commands required to run the utilities in the Dispatcher Commands dialog box. The following figure shows an example of a dialog box with commands for some Elixir utilities.

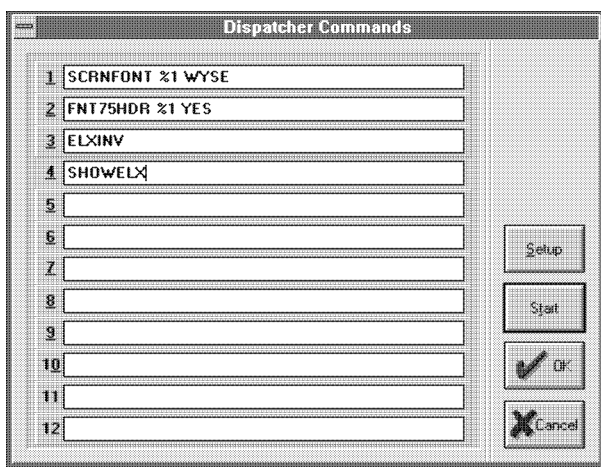


Figure 9-8. Dispatcher Commands dialog box example

You must install Elixir utilities in the *drive:\ELIXIR* directory. Unless you include *drive:\ELIXIR* in a DOS PATH= statement, either precede each command shown in the example with *drive:\ELIXIR* or specify *drive:\ELIXIR* for [Full path to executable for optional lookup] in the User Application Setup dialog box.

Some Elixir utilities require that you specify the stem name (file name without the extension) of the file as a parameter. To use the Dispatcher for such utilities, select the [Usage Switches] option from the **System** menu and from the displayed dialog box and select the [Send Only Filename on Dispatches] option.

DOS menu

The **DOS** menu allows you to enter any DOS command from the Desktop.

From the **DOS** menu, select [DOS Command], the only option.

Alternatively, enter <Ctrl> + <D> at the keyboard.

The DOS Commands dialog box shown in the following figure displays.

Enter any DOS command and click on [OK] to execute the command.

The DOS command you enter executes from the directory corresponding to the top window on the Desktop. If no windows are open, the command executes from the root directory (for example, C:\).

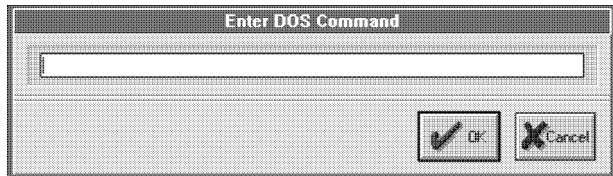


Figure 9-9. Enter DOS Command dialog box

10. PC-host-printer file transfer

Files for printing on channel-attached Xerox production or distributed printers can compile and reside on a host computer.

This chapter describes how to use several popular file transfer packages to transfer files between your PC and a host computer running the IBM MVS operating system.

FRM, FSL, logo, image, and font files are also referred to as Xerox-labeled files, because the files contain 128-byte Xerox headers (or labels).

In an offline environment, tape and Xerox-format diskettes are used to move files. PC/host file transfer packages move files in an on-line environment. Supported file transfer packages include IBM 3270, IRMA FT/3270, and IRMA FT/TSO.

Moving online Xerox-labeled files

This section describes procedures for transferring Xerox-labeled files from a PC (through an IBM host running MVS) to a production printer.

To upload FSL files, first run the PACK utility on the files to convert them to Xerox 128-byte format (see the "Stand-alone utilities" chapter for information on the PACK utility).

- 1. Configure one of the supported file transfer utilities.**

2. **Upload the files to the MVS host.**
3. **Download all files from the host computer to your production printer using one of the following methods:**

the HOSTCOPY utility

the DJDE FILE command in the job JSL

Following sections describe these steps.

Configuring the file transfer package

To upload Xerox-labeled files from your PC to an MVS host, we recommend one of the following file transfer packages: IBM 3270, IRMA FT/3270, or IRMA FT/TSO.

Make sure the card for the appropriate file transfer package resides on your PC, and that you installed the corresponding file transfer software on your PC and on the MVS host.

Uploading files to the host

The following sections describes how to upload Xerox-labeled files and text files from your PC to an MVS host using IBM 3270, IRMA FT/3270, and IRMA FT/TSO.

Uploading Xerox-labeled files with IBM 3270 or IRMA FT/3270

The IBM 3270 and IRMA FT/3270 file transfer packages are similar. Both require that you first prepare the host for receiving Xerox-labeled files by allocating a data set with the following DCB specifications:

DCB=(LRECL=128,BLKSIZE=128,RECFM=FB)

This specifies a Xerox-labeled file with a record length of 128 bytes, block length of 128 bytes, and fixed-block (FB) record format.

Upload a Xerox-labeled file by typing the following command at the DOS prompt:

```
SEND      [path]pcfilename      'hostfilename'  
<Enter>
```

path

is the optional DOS pathname

pcfilename

is the name of the Xerox-labeled file on your PC, including extension.

hostfilename

is the host dataset receiving the file (you must enclose hostfilename in single quotes).

'hostfilename' can refer to either a physical sequential or a partitioned dataset.

For example, if transferring to a physical sequential dataset, 'hostfilename' may be as follows:

```
'CM.EIO.DATA.UPLOAD'
```

If transferring to a partitioned dataset, 'hostfilename' can include the stem name of the files being transferred, enclosed in parentheses, as part of the dataset name as follows:

```
'CM.EIO.DATA.UPLOAD(filename)'
```

Uploading text files with IBM 3270 or IRMA FT/3270

To upload a text file, first allocate a dataset on your host with the following DCB parameters:

```
DCB=(LRECL=255,BLKSIZE=3000,RECFM=VB)
```

Add the ASCII and EBCDIC statements to the end of SEND and RECEIVE commands, respectively, for .FSL files only.

To send a text file to an MVS host, type the following command from the DOS prompt by using the Dispatcher icon or the DOS menu, both described in the "Accessing DOS files and applications" chapter.

SEND *[path]pcfilename 'hostfilename'* ASCII
<Enter>

This command uploads the Xerox-labeled file *pcfilename* to the host dataset *hostfilename*. A DOS directory path before *pcfilename* is optional. The ASCII parameter at the end of the command string translates the file from ASCII to EBCDIC.

Note that to download a text file from the host, you type the following command:

RECEIVE *[path]pcfilename 'hostfilename'*
EBCDIC <Enter>

This command downloads the Xerox-labeled file *hostfilename* to the PC file *pcfilename*. A DOS directory path before *pcfilename* is optional. The EBCDIC parameter at the end of the command string translates the file from EBCDIC to ASCII.

Uploading Xerox-labeled files with IRMA FT/TSO

Use the following procedure to upload a Xerox-labeled file with IRMA FT/TSO:

Type **FT/TSO** <Enter> at the DOS prompt to start the FT/TSO software and display the IRMA FT/TSO screen shown in the figure below.

IRMAlink FT/TSO Ver. 1.10 Copyright 1984 Digital Communications Associates											
PC filename:											
Data set name:											
Transfer type: XEROX											
Function Keys <table border="1"> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>2 Help</td> </tr> <tr> <td>3</td> <td>4 Ees Imp</td> </tr> <tr> <td>5 Save Type</td> <td>6 Ees EOF</td> </tr> <tr> <td>7 Restart</td> <td>8 Nxt Val</td> </tr> <tr> <td>9 Exit</td> <td>0 Reset</td> </tr> </table>	1	2 Help	3	4 Ees Imp	5 Save Type	6 Ees EOF	7 Restart	8 Nxt Val	9 Exit	0 Reset	Transfer Parameters Block size: 128 Transfer mode: BINARY Record size: 128 Expands TABs: NO Record format: FIXED Truncate spaces: NO U/L case: ASIS Line numbers - Volume serial: Position: 0 Space Units: TRKS Length: 0 Primary qty: 1 Secondary qty: 2 Code table: STD Directory blocks: 0
1	2 Help										
3	4 Ees Imp										
5 Save Type	6 Ees EOF										
7 Restart	8 Nxt Val										
9 Exit	0 Reset										

Figure 10-1. FT/TSO transfer parameters

Change the file transfer parameters as follows:

1. Use the <Tab> key to move the cursor into the data entry field following [Transfer type:].
2. Type a name under which you want to save Xerox-labeled file transfer parameters (described in step 4). The example in the above figure shows XEROX.
3. Press <F5>.

The **Transfer Parameters** menu displays in the bottom right corner of the screen.

4. Use the <Tab> key to move between transfer parameter fields and enter the following values:

Block size	128
Record size	128
Record format:	FB
Line numbers:	Position:0 Length:0
Code table:	STD
Transfer mode:	BINARY
Expand TABs:	NO
Truncate spaces:	NO
U/L case:	ASIS
Space Units:	TRKS
Primary qty:	1
Secondary qty:	2

The values above are for transferring Xerox-labeled files. To transfer text files, you must use different values for some parameters. Since you can store text files on host computers in datasets with different DCB parameters, you must tailor the transfer parameters to match the text file DCB parameters used at your site. Listed below are some typical values used for transferring text files:

Block size:	3000	
Record size:	255	
Record format:	VB	
Line numbers:	Position:0	Length:0
Code table:	STD	
Transfer mode:	TEXT	
Expand tabs:	NO	
Truncate spaces:	NO	
U/L case:	ASIS	
Space units	TRKS	
Primary QTY	1	
Secondary QTY	2	

To upload files with IRMA FT/TSO, use the following procedure:

1. **Enter the name of the PC file you want to upload and press <Tab>.**

Optionally, precede the file name with a DOS directory path.

2. **Enter the name of the host dataset to which you want to upload the file and press <Tab>.**
3. **Enter the appropriate transfer type for sending Xerox-labeled files (binary).**
4. **Press <F1> to upload the file.**

Downloading files from the host to the printer

Download files from the host computer to the production printer using one of the following methods:

- the HOSTCOPY utility
- the DJDE FILE command

The following sections describe the two downloading methods and also compare the differences between them.

HOSTCOPY and FILE comparison

Using the HOSTCOPY utility involves the following steps:

- 1. Make sure that all the files used in the job are resident on the printer.**
- 2. Reboot the printer.**
- 3. Download the files using HOSTCOPY.**
- 4. Reboot the printer.**
- 5. Start the print job.**

Using the FILE command requires that you add the FILE command to the JSL that will dynamically download all files at print time.

The advantages of using the FILE command rather than HOSTCOPY to download files are:

- Using the FILE command frees up disk space on the printer.
- You can maintain an additional level of security since files do not have to be resident on the printer.
- Using the FILE command does not require switching the printer from production mode to HOSTCOPY mode and saves valuable printer time.

- As files download during print time, the current and correct versions of the files download (when using HOSTCOPY, it is important to check that all files resident on the printer and used for the job are the correct versions).

Using the HOSTCOPY utility

To use the HOSTCOPY utility, use the following procedure:

1. **Upload ENDFILE.END.**
2. **Prepare the appropriate JCL.**
3. **Place the printer in HOSTCOPY mode.**
4. **Download the files.**

Uploading ENDFILE.END

After uploading Xerox-labeled PC files, upload the ENDFILE.END file (copied to the *drive:\ELIXIR* directory during installation) to the host. Use the procedure described in the "Uploading with IBM 3270 or IRMA FT/3270" section of this chapter.

Preparing JCL

After uploading Xerox-labeled files and the ENDFILE.END files to the host, use the IBM IEBGENER utility to build a JCL dataset for sending the files to a channel-attached 9700 series printer.

Below is an example of a JCL dataset. You must modify the JCL to include the names of the files you want to send to the printer.

```
-----  
-  
//00D42DA      JOB      (8200,Z200-Z20001),'LARACEY  
7-1994',CLASS=A  
//MSGCLASS=J,NOTIFY=00D42D,USER=00D42D,PRTY=4  
/*JOBPARM L=9999  
/*  
/* JCL to send a Xerox-labeled file to a 9700 series printer  
/*  
//XR9700 OUTPUT DEST=R269  
/*  
/* This step copies the file UN110E.FNT  
/* to the Xerox printer's output destination  
/* class  
/*  
//STEP1 EXEC PGM=IEBGENER  
//SYSPRINT D SYSOUT=*  
//SYSUT1 DD UNIT=DISK,DISP=OLD,  
//DSN=00D42D.0Z200.UN110E.FNT.DATA,  
//DCB=(LRECL=128,BLKSIZE=128,RECFM=FB)  
//SYSUT2 DD SYSOUT=O  
/*  
/* This step copies the ENDFILE.END file  
/* to the Xerox printer's output destination  
/* class to terminate the HOSTCOPY procedure  
/*  
//STEP2 EXEC PGM=IEBGENER  
//SYSPRINT D SYSOUT=*  
//SYSUT1 DD UNIT=DISK,DISP=OLD,  
//DSN=00D42D.0Z200.ENDFILE.END.DATA,  
//DCB=(LRECL=128,BLKSIZE=128,RECFM=FB)  
//SYSUT2 DD SYSOUT=O  
//OUTPUT=*.XR9700  
//SYSIN DD DUMMY  
/*  
-----  
-
```

Placing the printer in HOSTCOPY mode

To place a channel-attached, production printer in HOSTCOPY mode, follow these steps:

1. Switch the printer to OFF-LINE.

The printer status displays OFF-LINE IDLE at the printer console.

2. Press the printer BOOT switch.

The printer console displays a command menu with the following system prompt:

ENTER COMMAND

3. Enter the following command:

HOSTCOPY <Enter>

The following message displays:

SYSGEN RUNNING FOR HOSTCOPY ONLY
THIS IS A FILE COPYING PROCEDURE, NOT A
SYSGEN CONTINUE OR ABORT? ENTER 'C'
OR 'A'

4. Enter:

C <Enter>

The printer displays the following message:

WAITING TO READ FILES FROM HOST

The printer is now in HOSTCOPY mode and ready to accept files from the host.

Copying Xerox-labeled files to the printer

After placing the printer in HOSTCOPY mode, run the JCL job to send the Xerox-labeled and ENDFILE.END files to your printer.

Note that ENDFILE.END must be the last file you send to the printer.

The following message displays at the printer console, indicating that files are being received:

CREATING FILE xxxxxx.yyy

When the printer detects the ENDFILE.END file, the following message displays:

END OF TAPE FOUND
IS ANOTHER TAPE TO BE SENT? Y OR N

If you want to send more files, type Y <Enter>.

When you finish transferring files, press N <Enter> to display:

VARY OFFLINE AT HOST, THEN ENTER C

Enter C to stop the copy-to-printer operation.

Reboot the printer.

The Xerox-labeled files now reside on the production printer.

Using the FILE command

This requires that you embed the DJDE FILE command in the job JSL. With the FILE command, files dynamically download to the printer at print time. The command syntax is as follows:

FILE=*filename*, *filetype* [, [*f*][, [*s*][, [*n*]]]]

filename

is a one- to six-character file name.

filetype

is a three character file symbol for the appropriate file; LGO, IMG, FSL, FNT, or FRM.

f

is C (for card-image format) or L (for tape format, the default).

s

is D (to delete files after printing) or P (to keep the files after printing, the default).

n

is the maximum number of card-images (default = 120).

After adding the FILE command to your JSL statements, compile the JSL and START the compiled JDL at the printer console to run the print job.

See your Xerox Laser Printing System Reference Manual for more information.

Uploading metacode files to the host

To upload metacode files from your PC to an MVS host, use file transfer packages such as IBM 3270, IRMA FT/3270, or IRMA FT/TSO.

Make sure the card for the appropriate file transfer package resides on your PC, and that the corresponding file transfer software resides on your PC and the MVS host.

Uploading with IBM 3270 or IRMA FT/3270

The IBM 3270 and IRMA FT/3270 file transfer packages require that you first prepare the host for receiving metacode files by allocating a data set with the following DCB specifications:

DCB=(LRECL=540,BLKSIZE=540,RECFM=FB)

This specifies a file with a record length of 540 bytes, block length of 540 bytes, and fixed-block (FB) record format.

You then upload a metacode file by typing the following command at the DOS prompt:

```
SEND      [path]pcfilename      'hostfilename'  
<Enter>
```

path

is the optional DOS path

pcfilename

is the name of the metacode file on your PC, including extension.

hostfilename

is the host dataset receiving the file (you must enclose hostfilename in single quotes).

'hostfilename' can refer to either a physical sequential or a partitioned dataset.

For example, if transferring to a physical sequential dataset, 'hostfilename' may be as follows:

```
'CM.EIO.DATA.UPLOAD'
```

If transferring to a partitioned dataset, 'hostfilename' can include the stem name of the files being transferred, enclosed in parentheses, as part of the dataset name as follows:

```
'CM.EIO.DATA.UPLOAD(filename)'
```

Uploading with IRMA FT/TSO

Use the following procedure to upload a Xerox-format file with IRMA FT/TSO:

Type **FT/TSO <Enter>** at the DOS prompt to start the FT/TSO file transfer software and display the IRMA FT/TSO screen shown in the previous figure.

Change the file transfer parameters as follows:

1. Use the <Tab> key to move the cursor into the data entry field following [Transfer type:].
2. Type a name under which you want to save Xerox-labeled file transfer parameters (described in step 4). The example in the previous figure shows XEROX.
3. Press <F5>.

The **Transfer Parameters** menu displays in the bottom right corner of the screen.

4. Use the <Tab> key to move the cursor between transfer parameter fields and enter the following values:

Block size:	540
Record size:	540
Record format:	FB
Line numbers:	Position:0 Length:0
Code table:	STD
Transfer mode:	BINARY
Expand TABs:	NO
Truncate spaces:	NO
U/L case:	ASIS
Space units:	TRKS
Primary qty:	1
Secondary qty:	2

To upload files with IRMA FT/TSO:

1. Enter the name of the PC file you want to upload and press <Tab>.

Optionally, precede the file name with a DOS directory path.
2. Enter the name of the host dataset to which you want to upload and press <Tab>.
3. Enter the appropriate transfer type for sending Xerox-labeled files (binary).
4. Press <F1> to upload the file.

Uploading with 871

Use the following procedure to upload a Xerox-format file with an 871 device. The MET2871 utility reformats metacode files for correct processing through an 871 device that connects a Xerox mainframe computer and printer.

MET2871 filename <Enter>

filename

is the full path name of the file you want to upload including the extension.

Issue the command from the directory in which MET2871 resides (*drive:\ELIXIR*).

DataWare card PC to printer interface

The DataWare PC interface card connects a PC directly to a Xerox production printer using bus and tag connectors.

The DataWare PC interface card allows you to send online metacode files and Xerox files with 128-byte header records generated by Elixir software to your Xerox printer.

DataWare CONFIG.SYS device drivers

To use the DataWare card, add the following device driver in your PC CONFIG.SYS file.

DEVICE=CHANNEL.SYS *unit address*

unit

is the DataWare I/O port you are using (0 - 3), normally 0.

address

is the hexadecimal value of the address of the printer on the I/O channel (between 0 and FE), normally 0F.

Make sure you specify the full DOS pathname for CHANNEL.SYS in your CONFIG.SYS file (for example, C:\DATAWARE\CHANNEL.SYS 0 0F).

For proper DataWare card operation, the CONFIG.SYS file may require other parameters. For details, see your DataWare documentation.

Copying files to the printer

To copy files to the printer through the DataWare card, type:

COPY /B [*path*] *filename* CHAN <Enter>

filename

can be any Elixir-generated online metacode file or a Xerox file with a 128-byte header record.

path

is the optional fully qualified DOS directory search path for *filename*.

Copying online metacode files to the printer

If you copy online metacode files to the printer, make sure you code your default and ELIXIR.JSL files properly. The printer should be online and waiting to receive data before you begin the copy operation. For details on configuring your printer in an online environment, see your Xerox production printer reference manual.

Copying Xerox 128-byte header files to the printer

If you copy a 128-byte header file to the printer, make sure the printer is in HOSTCOPY mode before you begin the copy operation. For further details on the HOSTCOPY mode, see your Xerox production printer reference manual.

SPUR

The Spur device connects a PC to a Xerox production printer using bus and tag connectors.

You can send online metacode files and Xerox files with 128-byte headers to a Xerox printer through the Spur device by using the Elixir SPUR utility.

SPUR utility

The SPUR utility prepares online metacode files or Xerox standard labeled files for transmission through the SPUR PC interface device to a Xerox production printer. This utility inserts control codes in files enabling file transfer via the Spur interface device.

SPUR *filename* [*header*] [*sequence*]
<Enter>

filename

is any DOS filename including file extension. Wild-cards are not permissible.

header

is the Xerox header format:

specify PRN to send *filename* through your PC parallel port to the Spur interface device, or DISK to write *filename* to disk (in the same directory as *filename*) and name it SPUR.OUT.

sequence

inserts escape sequences in the SPUR interface device output data stream: USA or PPC. Specify the correct parameter, depending on your type of SPUR device (SPUR PPC or SPUR USA).

See the "Stand-alone utilities" chapter for more information.

11. Stand-alone utilities

This chapter describes the Elixir stand-alone batch utilities provided with the ElixSys Desktop. These utilities copy to the *drive*:\ELIXIR directory during installation (*drive*: is the drive on which you install Elixir software).

Each time you install or reinstall Elixir software, you overwrite existing utilities with new ones. If you want to keep older versions of the utilities, back up the .EXE and .COM files in your *drive*:\ELIXIR directory before installation.

The examples in this chapter assume that you have installed Elixir program and data files in the *drive*:\ELIXIR subdirectory.

If you installed these files in a custom subdirectory, substitute the name of that directory for *drive*:\ELIXIR in all cases.

Using the utilities

The parameters required to run each utility display on your screen when you enter only the utility name from the *drive*:\ELIXIR directory.

Most of the utilities accept DOS wildcard characters (see your DOS documentation for instructions on the proper use of wildcards). When using wildcards, specify only the desired file or files.

For optional utility parameters enclosed in square brackets [], enter the appropriate parameters for the option as described in the Usage section of the utility, or leave them blank if you want to use the default (the default lists first in the list following the parameter).

When specifying utilities, either do not specify parameters (to use the default for each parameter) or specify *all* the parameters. You cannot skip parameters.

Dialog boxes tie all utilities into Desktop operations (although not all utility options are available from the Desktop dialog boxes). You must run application-specific utilities on the command line using the **DOS** menu or the Dispatcher icon. See the "Accessing DOS files and applications" chapter for more information.

Add *drive:\ELIXIR* to the DOS PATH= statement in your AUTOEXEC.BAT file to ensure that DOS searches the *drive:\ELIXIR* directory for the batch utility. For details on setting up the PATH= statement, see your DOS manual.

Elixidisk

Elixir supports the following standard transfer options:

- host upload/download
- tape transfer
- direct PC-to-printer connection via a channel card or SPUR device

For users with compatible PCs, the Elixidisk utilities provide an additional option. If your PC does not support the Elixidisk utilities (see the conditions listed on the next page), use one of the standard transfer options listed above.

Elixidisk consists of the XCPY, XDEL, XDIR, and XFORMAT utilities. These utilities perform the following:

- display directory information about Xerox-format diskettes
- format diskettes for use on a production printer
- copy files between Xerox-format diskettes and the hard drive on your PC
- delete files from Xerox-format diskettes.

You can format only low-density 5.25 inch diskettes to Xerox-format. (All production printer floppy formats except for the 4075 printer format are supported. No decentralized printer floppy formats are supported.)

Elixidisk runs on most IBM and compatible PCs with the following conditions:

- Elixidisk utilities that read and write floppy diskettes carry data to and from the 9700 printers function on most compatible PCs. Elixidisk is not compatible with the ROM BIOS on some PCs (for example, the Compaq DeskPro), and may not operate correctly if the ROM BIOS on your PC is dated 1987 or earlier. Use a PC utility program (such as Norton Utilities) to check your BIOS date.
- The Elixidisk utilities operate with any Xerox standard format file, that is, one divided into 512-byte blocks with or without tape headers.
- External disk drives are not supported.
- Elixidisk utilities may not be supported by the IBM PS/2. PS/2 users can copy files to the host using a supported PC-to-mainframe communications package.
- Because the DOS window in Windows 95 differs in functionality from native DOS, the XFORMAT utility is not supported in Windows 95.
- When accessing or copying files to or from Xerox 9700 format diskettes from within the System

Diskette dialog box, the Elixidisk utilities must access the diskette at a hardware level that Windows may not allow (the utilities must directly access the real (BIOS) memory area, while Windows makes only virtual memory available for these utilities).

Due to these restrictions, Elixir cannot guarantee the results of Xerox 9700 diskette operations from the Desktop. If you experience problems accessing or copying files to or from a Xerox 9700 format diskette, you should use the stand-alone Elixidisk utilities from the DOS command line.

CAUTION: Elixidisk utilities are provided as originally packaged and may not run with all PCs or configurations due to manufacturer changes in initial hardware or software. Elixir continues to provide support for Elixidisk utilities but cannot guarantee their operation with all systems and configurations.

XDIR

XDIR displays a directory of files for Xerox 4XXX, 87XX, or 97XX diskettes.

Usage XDIR *drive*: [filename]

drive

is the diskette drive specification (A: or B:)

filename

is any six-character file name with a three-character extension. Wildcards are allowed.

Directory information

Run XDIR from the *drive*:\ELIXIR directory if you have not specified *drive*:\ELIXIR in a DOS PATH= statement.

Example 1 To display a list of all files with .FNT extensions on a Xerox-format diskette, type the following commands from *drive*:

1. CD \ELIXIR <Enter>

The current directory changes to *drive*:\ELIXIR.

2. XDIR A: *.FNT <Enter>

XDIR displays all files on your Xerox-format diskette with .FNT extensions.

Example 2 To display a list of all files on a Xerox-format diskette, from *drive*:, type:

1. CD \ELIXIR <Enter>

The current directory changes to *drive*:\ELIXIR.

2. XDIR A: <Enter>

XDIR displays a list of all the files on your Xerox-format diskette.

XFORMAT

XFORMAT formats any low-density DOS diskette into Xerox XXX, 87XX, or 97XX format.

Usage XFORMAT *drive*: <Enter>

drive: is the drive specification (a: or b:).

**Directory
information**

Run XFORMAT from the *drive*:\ELIXIR directory if you have not specified *drive*:\ELIXIR in your DOS PATH= statement.

Example To format a low-density diskette in drive A: into Xerox format, type:

XFORMAT A: <Enter>

XCPY

The XCPY command allows you to:

- copy Xerox standard format files from your PC hard disk to a Xerox format diskette
- copy Xerox standard format files from Xerox format diskettes to your PC hard disk.

Copying from hard disk to Xerox-format diskette

To use XCPY to copy Xerox standard format files from a PC hard disk to a Xerox-format diskette, type:

Usage *XCPY [drive1:] [path1] filename drive2: [path2] [STRIP] <Enter>*

drive1:

is the source drive. If not specified, the DOS drive from which you run XCPY is the default source drive and *i* the drive on which XCPY searches for files.

path1:

is the optional DOS directory path that indicates the location on *drive1:* in which files specified by *filename* reside.

When writing files from your hard disk to a Xerox-format diskette, XCPY searches the Elixir default directories for a file if you did not specify *path1*. The following are Elixir default directories for the resource types indicated:

- Fonts (FNT) *drive:\ELIXIR\FONTS\X97OUT*
- Forms (FRM) *drive:\ELIXIR\FORMS\FRMOUT*
- Forms (FSL) *drive:\ELIXIR\FORMS\FSLOUT*
- Logos (LGO) *drive:\ELIXIR\PICS\LGOOUT*
- Images (IMG) *drive:\ELIXIR\PICS\IMGOUT*

To write 5Word format fonts to a Xerox-format diskette, you must specify the full path to the output directory: *drive:\ELIXIR\FONTS\FN6OUT*.

XCPY searches for all other Xerox file types (such as .MSC) in the directory and drive from which you invoke XCPY.

filename

is any six-character file name and three-character extension recognized by production printers such as .FNT, .LGO, .FSL, .FRM, .CMD (command files), .MSC. ("miscellaneous" text files called by .CMD files), .JSL, and .TMP (metacode). Wildcards are allowed, except in file name extensions.

drive2

is the destination drive, and must be specified.

path2

is the optional destination path, if *drive1* is a floppy diskette.

STRIP

strips trailing spaces and line numbers from text files.

drive1: can be any drive specification between A: and Z:; *drive2*: must be either A: or B:.

Note that multiple volume copies are now supported. When a disk is full, you are prompted for another disk.

**Directory
information**

Run XCPY from the *drive:\ELIXIR* directory if you have not specified *drive:\ELIXIR* in a DOS PATH= statement.

Example 1 To copy all files with .FNT extensions from the *drive:\ELIXIR\FONTS* directory to a Xerox-format diskette in the B: drive, from *drive*:, type:

```
XCPY \ELIXIR\FONTS\X97OUT\*.FNT B:
<Enter>
```

XCPY copies all files with .FNT extensions in the *drive:\ELIXIR\FONTS* directory to the Xerox-format diskette in the B: drive.

Example 2 To copy FORM1.FRM from your PC to a Xerox-format diskette in the A: drive, type:

```
XCPY FORM1.FRM A: <Enter>
```

XCPY searches the default directory for .FRM format files, and the *drive:* \ELIXIR\FORMS\FRMOUT directory for the FORM1.FRM file. It then copies the file to the Xerox-format diskette in the A: drive.

Copying from Xerox-format diskette to hard disk

Usage XCPY [*drive1:*] *filename* *drive2:* [*path2*]
<Enter>

drive1

is the source diskette drive.

filename

is any six-character file name and three-character extension production printers recognize, such as .FNT, .LGO, .FSL, .FRM, and .MSC. Wildcards are allowed, except in file extensions.

drive2

is the destination drive, and must be specified.

drive2 can be any drive specification between A: and Z:; *drive1* must be either A: or B:.

path2

you can specify this path when copying files from a Xerox-format diskette to your hard drive. If you do not specify *path2*, the program uses the following Elixir default directories for each indicated file type:

- Fonts (FNT) *drive:*\ELIXIR\FONTS\X97IN
- Forms (FRM) *drive:*\ELIXIR\FORMS\FRMIN
- Forms (FSL) *drive:*\ELIXIR\FORMS\FSLIN
- Logos (LGO) *drive:*\ELIXIR\PICS\LGOIN
- Images (IMG) *drive:*\ELIXIR\PICS\IMGIN

To copy 5Word format fonts to your PC, you must specify the full path to the input directory: *drive:*\ELIXIR\FONTS\FN6IN.

All other Xerox file types (such .MSC) are placed in the directory and drive from which you invoke XCPY.

**Directory
information**

Run XCPY from the *drive:\ELIXIR* directory if you have not specified *drive:\ELIXIR* in your DOS PATH= statement.

Example 1 To copy all files with .FNT extensions from a Xerox-format diskette in the B: drive to the \FONTS\PRODFONT directory on your D: drive, type:

```
XCPY B:*.FNT D:\FONTS\PRODFONT  
<Enter>
```

Example 2 To copy FORM1.FRM from a Xerox format diskette in the A: drive to the .FRM format input forms directory on your C: drive, type:

```
XCPY A: FORM1.FRM C:<Enter>
```

XCPY copies FORM1.FRM from the Xerox-format diskette in the A: drive to the default .FRM forms input directory (C:\ELIXIR\FORMS\FRMIN).

XDEL

The XDEL command deletes files on a Xerox 4XXX, 87XX, or 97XX diskette.

Usage XDEL *drive:filename* <Enter>

drive

is the diskette drive specification (A: or B:).

filename

is any six-character file name and three character extension. Wild cards are allowed.

**Directory
information**

Run XDEL from the *drive:\ELIXIR* directory if you have not specified *drive:\ELIXIR* in your DOS PATH= statement.

Example To delete all files with .LGO extensions on a Xerox-format diskette in drive A:, type:

```
XDEL A: *.LGO <Enter>
```

XDEL deletes all files with .LGO extensions on the Xerox format diskette in the A: drive.

CLR2BW

The CLR2BW utility converts Elixir-format .LP3 graphics files between one-plane (black-and-white), two-plane (highlight color), and four-plane (full-color) formats.

Usage CLR2BW [*inputname*] [*outputname*][*planes*]
 [*color*]<Enter>

inputname

is any .LP3 file stem name. No extensions or wildcards are allowed.

outputname

is the optional output stem name for the converted file. No extensions or wildcards are allowed. If not specified, you overwrite the existing file.

planes

specify 1 for one-plane (black-and-white) output, 2 for two-plane (highlight color) output, or 3 for full-color output.

color

specify RED, BLUE, or GREEN. When converting full-color to highlight color, converts any color with the component you specify to the pure highlight color. For example, if you specify RED, converts yellows (that include red) in a full-color graphics to red. Other colors convert to black.

Directory information

Run CLR2BW from the directory in which the files to be converted reside. If you have not specified *drive*:\ELIXIR in a DOS PATH= statement, precede the CLR2BW command with *drive*:\ELIXIR.

When converting full-color or highlight color graphics to one-plane black-and-white, all colors convert to black.

When converting full color to highlight color or black-and-white, or highlight color to black-and-white, color information is permanently lost and you cannot restore.

DISP

The DISP utility displays the contents of a file on your screen in hexadecimal, ASCII, and screen character format, and allows you to scroll through and edit the file. This utility can be used for debugging files.

Usage *DISP filename [count][pausing][format]*
 <Enter>

filename

is any file name, including path and extension.

count

is the number of characters displayed per line. The default is 15.

pausing

specify whether or not to pause after displaying a screen of data: PAUSE or NOPAUSE.

format

specify the screen character format: BOTH, ASCII, EBCDIC or HEX.

Directory information

Run DISP from the drive:\ELIXIR directory, if you have not specified drive:\ELIXIR in your DOS PATH= statement.

Example

To display the contents of the file NEW.FNT in the drive:\ELIXIR\FONTS\X97OUT directory, type:

1. CD \ELIXIR <Enter>

The current directory changes to \ELIXIR.

**2. DISP drive:\ELIXIR\FONTS\X97OUT\NEW.FNT
 <Enter>**

The contents of NEW.FNT displays.

DSK2TAP

DSK2TAP copies files from the PC hard disk or diskette drive to an attached tape drive unit. Elixir supports tape drive units that use the Overland tape controller. We recommend the Qualstar 9 track 1600 or 6250 bpi models. Make sure the appropriate hardware and software resides on your PC.

DSK2TAP always creates files with 128-byte headers, except metacode files, that do not have headers.

Note: Copying from diskette to tape is not supported.

Usage **DSK2TAP** *filename* <Enter>

filename

is any DOS file name including the file extension. Wildcards are allowed.

**Directory
information**

Run DSK2TAP from the directory in which you want to copy files, and precede the DSK2TAP command with *drive:\ELIXIR*. (The full command is *drive:\ELIXIR\DSK2TAP filename* if you have not specified *drive:\ELIXIR* in your DOS PATH= statement).

Example 1

To copy all files named FORM1 located in the *drive:\ELIXIR\FORMS\FRMOUT* directory of the hard disk to the tape drive, type:

1. **CD \ELIXIR\FORMS\FRMOUT**
 <Enter>

The current directory changes to *drive:\ELIXIR\FORMS\FRMOUT*.

2. ***drive:\ELIXIR\DSK2TAP FORM1.****
 <Enter>

DSK2TAP copies all files with the stem name FORM1 to tape.

Example 2

To copy all fonts from the *drive:\ELIXIR\FONTS\X97OUT* directory to the tape drive, type:

1. `CD \ELIXIR\FONTS\X97OUT`
`<Enter>`

The current directory changes to `drive:\ELIXIR\FONTS\X97OUT`.

2. `drive:\ELIXIR\DSK2TAP *.FNT`
`<Enter>`

This copies all .FNT files from the current directory to the tape drive.

El (ElixImposer)

ElixImposer is an application that imposes two Elixir forms on one page. When used with Xerox distributed printers that support large page sizes, ElixImposer has the effect of imposing multiple pages on a single printed sheet.

ElixImposer can run transparently through the Desktop Converter or Printers icon or as a stand-alone package.

See the 4235 tabbed section for information about ElixImposer.

ELX2MET

The ELX2MET utility converts .ELX files in the Elixir forms directory to metacode files.

Usage `ELX2MET filename [metaformat] [sides] [compression] [outputdevice] [colorconversion] [djde] [-ignorekern] [-optimize] [-R:###] [-jde:jdename] [-jdl:jdlname] [feed] [-sendfonts] [-sendimages] [-sendforms] [-otext:otextstring] [-logoasfont] [-callform] [-imagecallouts] <Enter>`

filename

is any DOS file name including extensions, without the directory path. No wildcards are allowed.

metaformat

specify an OFFLINE or ONLINE metacode output file.

sides

specify DUPLEX (two-sided) or SIMPLEX (one-sided) output.

compression

specify whether or not to compress graphics files: COMPRESS or NOCOMPRESS.

outputdevice

specify output to hard disk or to tape: DISK or TAPE.

colorconversion

specify a color or black-and-white .ELX file to meta-code conversion: COLOR or BW.

djde

is the DJDE prefix string used on the printer. You must enclose DJDE in quotes and include any leading and trailing spaces.

-ignorekern

specify to ignore kerning and output whole text lines.

-optimize

specify to optimize metacode output.

-R:###

specify maximum record length parameter.

-jde:jdename

specify JDE name

-jdl:jdlname

specify JDL name

feed

specify to force short/long edge feed: -SHORTEDGE or -LONGEDGE.

-sendfonts

specify to include fonts in metacode.

-sendimages

specify to include IMGs in metacode.

-sendforms

specify to include FRMs in metacode.

-otext:otextstring

specify OTEXT string.

-logoasfont

specify to do LP3 files as fonts.

-callform

specify called form name.

-imagecallouts

specify to call out images.

Directory information

Run ELX2MET from the directory in which input Elixir form files reside. If you have not specified *drive:\ELIXIR* in your DOS PATH= statement, precede the ELX2MET command with *drive:\ELIXIR*.

Example

To convert the black-and-white Elixir form ABC.ELX in *drive:\ELIXIR\FORMS\ELIXIR* to an online metacode in *drive:\ELIXIR\DOCS\METAOUT* directory, type:

1. **CD \ELIXIR\FORMS\ELIXIR <Enter>**

The current directory changes to *drive:\ELIXIR\FORMS\ELIXIR*, in which ABC.ELX resides.

2. **ELIXIR\ELX2MET ABC.ELX BW <Enter>**

This produces an online black-and-white metacode file in *drive:\ELIXIR\DOCS\METAOUT*.

ELX2XES

ELX2XES converts Elixir forms to Xerox XES and HP PCL formats.

See the 4235 tabbed section for more information.

ELXINV

The ELXINV utility converts portrait or landscape forms to inverse portrait or inverse landscape forms.

For correct form conversion, the ELXINV utility must have access to an ASCII file containing the following information:

- the names of the regular orientation (portrait or landscape) fonts and graphics the form uses.
- the names of the inverse (portrait or landscape) fonts and rotated graphics (in ElixGraphics) to be used when building the inverse version of the form.

You must rotate graphics 180-degrees (using ElixGraphics), and they cannot be inverse version graphics.

See the *ElixFont Edition User Guide* for information on rotating fonts and changing headers to create inverse fonts.

Use any text editor to create an ASCII file named INVFONTS.LST and specify the above information in the file as follows:

- 1. On the first line, type the stem name of the regular orientation font or graphics file, a space, and the name of the inverse orientation version of the same font or graphic.**

2. Press <Enter>.

Repeat this process until you specify the regular and inverse orientation names for all fonts and graphics the form uses.

3. Save the file as an ASCII file named INVFONT.S.LST.

4. Place the file in the \ELIXIR directory on the drive on which your Elixir software resides.

Usage ELXINV *filename1* [*filename2*] <Enter>

filename1

is any DOS .ELX file name, including the extension. Wildcards are allowed, but ensure that the forms specified have the same orientation and page size.

filename2

is the output file name (optional).

If you did not specify an output file name, ELXINV creates a file named FILENAME1.INV. Note that to print or edit the output file, you must first rename it to a file with an .ELX extension.

If you run ELXINV and the fonts or graphics in the portrait or landscape form are not in the INVFONT.S.LST file list, substitutions do not generate for fonts or graphics.

Directory information

Run ELXINV from the directory in which the files to be converted reside. If you have not specified *drive:\ELIXIR* in a DOS PATH= statement, precede the ELXINV command with *drive:\ELIXIR*.

Example To convert a form file, type:

1. CD \ELIXIR\FORMS\ELIXIR <Enter>

The current directory changes to *drive:\ELIXIR\FORMS\ELIXIR*, that contains output form files.

2. *drive:\ELIXIR\ELXINV TEST.ELX*
OPFILE.ELX <Enter>

ELXINV converts TEST.ELX in the *drive:\ELIXIR\FORMS\ELIXIR* directory to inverse orientation and writes it to the OPFILE.ELX file.

ELXOPT

The ELXOPT utility decreases the number of bytes per record in the output (.NOR) file and increases the throughput from host to printer.

Note: Once you use ELXOPT to convert the Elixir format file, you cannot convert it back to Elixir format for editing.

Usage ELXOPT *filename* [-SAVE]
 [-INTERWORD | -INTERCHAR]
 [-IGNOREKERN] <Enter>

filename

is any DOS file name including extensions, without the directory path.

[-SAVE]

Save the original .ELX file as .OLD.

[-INTERWORD | -INTERCHAR]

Use interword or intercharacter spacing.

[-IGNOREKERN]

Ignore kerning of characters.

Directory information

Run ELXOPT from the directory in which input Elixir form files reside. If you have not specified *drive:\ELIXIR* in your DOS PATH= statement, precede the ELXOPT command with *drive:\ELIXIR*.

ELXWDATA

ELXWDATA generates a text file called ELXWDATA.TXT on the floppy diskette in the A: drive. The file contains configuration information about your PC and Elixir installation and is useful for debugging. If you have problems running Elixir, customer support staff may instruct you to run this utility and forward the diskette containing ELXWDATA.TXT to your local Xerox customer support center.

Usage ELXWDATA <Enter>

Directory information Run ELXWDATA from the *drive:\ELIXIR* directory.

FIXLP3

FIXLP3 converts Elixir-format graphics files (.LP3) and graphics screen version files (.LW8) created with previous versions of ElixGraphics to a format compatible with version 2.3 or higher.

To use graphics (.LP3) or screen version (.LW8) files created with previous versions of ElixGraphics with version 2.3 or higher, you must run the FIXLP3 utility on the files.

During installation, the program prompts you to update your graphics and screen version files. If you elected to update your files, there is no need to run the FIXLP3 utility on files present at the time of installation. However, you must use the FIXLP3 utility to update files previous to version 2.3 that you load after the installation. After converting the graphics files, use the Desktop Converter icon to create new screen versions of the files.

Usage FIXLP3 *stemname* <Enter>

stemname

is the file name (without extension) of the Elixir graphics file (.LP3).

Example To convert all Elixir-format graphics files created with previous versions of ElixGraphics to the 2.3 version, type:

1. CD \ELIXIR <Enter>

The current directory (on the current drive) changes to \ELIXIR.

2. FIXLP3 * <Enter>

FNT75HDR

The FNT75HDR utility adds a tape label to or removes a tape label from a 4075-format font file header. You need a tape label in the file header if you want to copy a 4075-format font to tape.

Usage FNT75HDR *filename* [*label*] <Enter>

filename

is the 4075-format font including extension. Wildcards are allowed.

label

is either the default YES (to add a tape label) or NO (to remove a tape label).

**Directory
information**

Run FNT75HDR from the directory in which the files you want to convert reside. If you have not specified *drive*:\ELIXIR in your DOS PATH= statement, precede the FNT75HDR command with *drive*:\ELIXIR.

FONTCHG

The FONTCHG utility does the following:

- Strips the two left characters from Elixir-format form file names (for compatibility between eight character DOS and six-character Xerox file names) when you enter a *filename* only.

- Substitutes fonts and graphics in an Elixir form with fonts and graphics you specify in a font list when you enter a file name and use the fontlist parameter.
- Lists information about fonts and graphics in an Elixir-format form when you enter a file name and use the -LIST parameter.

Usage FONTCHG *filename* [*fontlist*][-LIST]<Enter>

filename

is the Elixir-format form file name, with or without the .ELX extension. Wildcards are allowed.

fontlist

is the full name and path of an ASCII font list file with a .LST extension. Wildcards are not allowed. Each line of the font list file contains a pair of Elixir fonts or graphics separated by a space. When running the utility, fonts or graphics in the first column are substituted with the corresponding font or graphic from the second column.

-LIST

displays a list of .ELX files specified by *filename*, and for each .ELX file, lists the fonts and graphics used in the form. A list of all fonts and graphics used in multiple forms (when using wildcards for *filename*) also displays.

Directory information

Run FONTCHG from the directory in which the files to be converted reside. If you have not specified *drive:\ELIXIR* in your DOS PATH= statement, precede the FONTCHG command with *drive:\ELIXIR*.

Example To substitute fonts or graphics in the Elixir form TEST.ELX with the fonts or graphics in the FIRST.LST ASCII font list file, type:

1. CD \ELIXIR\FORMS\ELIXIR <Enter>

The current directory (on the current drive) changes to \ELIXIR\FORMS\ELIXIR.

2. FONTCHG TEST.ELX FIRST.LST <Enter>

This command substitutes the fonts and graphics in the Elixir form TEST.ELX with the fonts and graphics specified in the ASCII font list file FIRST.LST in the \ELIXIR\FORMS\ELIXIR directory of the current drive.

The file FIRST.LST contains two columns of font or graphics names; the fonts and graphics used in the form TEST.ELX are in the first column, and each one is replaced by its corresponding font or graphic from the second column.

FontCVT

The FontCVT utility converts font files between Xerox 9700, 2700, 3700, 4075, Xerox 9700 LGO and color LGO, HP PCL, and Elixir formats, and also creates screen versions of fonts.

Usage FontCVT *stemname* [*inputformat*]
[*output format*] [*vertical*][*monitor*][*id*][*confirm*]
[*outputdevice*] [*color*] [*hpcmd*] [*tablename*]
[-shift] [-nullspaces] <Enter>

stemname

is the stem name of the font file(s) for conversion. Extensions and paths are not allowed. Wildcards are allowed.

inputformat

is the format of the file for conversion and is one of the following: 9700, 4045, 2700, 3700, 4235, 4075, HP, 9700LGO, COLORLGO, 5WORD, or ELIXIR.

outputformat

is the format of the converted files and is one of the following: SCREEN, ELIXIR, 9700, 4045, 2700, 3700, 4235, 4075, HP, 5WORD, 9700LGO, or COLORLGO.

vertical

sets the vertical proofing as YES or NO. YES creates fonts that support proof printing of vertical text on both portrait and landscape pages on Xerox 2700/4045 and PCL 4 printers. Specify YES when proofing text on a Xerox 4045, 2700, or PCL 4 printer. YES creates a font file with the same stem name and with extension .R45 (for Xerox 4045), .R27 (for Xerox 2700) or .RLJ (for PCL 4 printers) in drive:\ELIXIR\FONTS\PRINTER.

monitor

specify the monitor type as VGA, SIGMA, WYSE, SUPERVGA, or NONE.

id

is the HP PCL printer font ID number. If not specified, FONTCVT assigns an internal font identifier used when calling fonts to the printer. This option allows you to assign your own identifier (used for downloading fonts to the printer).

confirm

specify orientation confirmation as NO or YES. If you specify YES, the program prompts you to identify the orientation as PORTRAIT, LANDSCAPE, or INVERSE. If you specify INVERSE, the program prompts you to select INVERSE PORTRAIT or INVERSE LANDSCAPE.

outputdevice

specify output to hard disk or to tape: DISK or TAPE.

color

specify the color: RED, GREEN, BLUE, or NONE

hpcmd

the HP cartridge command string, used for creating screen fonts for HP cartridge fonts. The command string is the escape sequence on the font test sheet. Substitute the backslash character (\) for each <Esc> character in the escape sequence and ignore the last <Esc> and the characters following it.

For example, when using a cartridge font with the following escape sequence on the test sheet:

<Esc>(8U<Esc>(s1p14.0v0s3b4T<Esc>&10o

enter the following for *hpcmd*:

\(8U\ (s1p14.0v0s3b4T

tablename

specify the language table.

-shift

shifts the font by the amount of kerning.

-nullspaces

includes null spacing characters.

Directory information

Run FONTCVT from the directory in which the files to be converted reside. If you have not specified *drive:\ELIXIR* in a DOS PATH= statement, precede the FONTCVT command with *drive:\ELIXIR*.

Example

To convert the Elixir font SYMB1 in the *drive:\ELIXIR\FONTS\ELIXIR* directory to 9700 format and place it in the *drive:\ELIXIR\FONTS\X97OUT* (output 9700 font) directory, type:

1. CD \ELIXIR\FONTS\ELIXIR <Enter>

The current directory changes to *drive:\ELIXIR\FONTS\ELIXIR* in which Elixir fonts reside.

2. FONTCVT SYMB1 ELIXIR 9700
<Enter>

This command converts the Elixir font to 9700 format and writes it to the *drive:\ELIXIR\FONTS\X97OUT* directory.

FONTMAP

The FONTMAP utility is a transformer that automatically remaps font characters based upon the hexadecimal position mapping specified in a .GMP file. The .GMP file has A1=ED type entries where A1 is the source font character position, and ED is the new character position in the target font.

The Efont Factory uses FONTMAP to remap the fonts for ISO XB and FULL mapping. You can edit existing ISO_XB.GMP or FULL.GMP files so they generate customized fonts with national characters in different positions.

You can also use FONTMAP to remap or prune fonts by omitting entries in the .GMP file so that no character maps to the new font. FONTMAP functions with Elixir-format fonts, so you can remap fonts for any printer format.

FONTMAP replaces the MAPPING.MAP facility, and is useful for automatically remapping characters in a large number of fonts, or for splitting fonts in two.

Usage **FONTMAP** *sourcefont file targetfont file fontmapfile*

sourcefontfile

is the name of the Elixir font file in the *drive:\ELIXIR\FONTS\ELIXIR* directory from which to extract the character bitmaps for remapping.

targetfontfile

is the name of the target Elixir font file in the *drive:\ELIXIR\FONTS\ELIXIR* directory to which the character bitmaps from the source font file are remapped.

fontmapfile

is the name of the .GMP font map file in the *drive:\ELIXIR\FONTS\MAPS* directory that contains a hexadecimal position remapping for the source and target font files.

**Directory
information**

Run FONTMAP from the directory in which the files to be transformed reside. If you have not specified *drive:\ELIXIR* in a DOS PATH= statement, precede the FONTMAP command with *drive:\ELIXIR*.

Example

To remap the characters from the HE11BP.HDR font file in the *drive:\ELIXIR\FONTS\ELIXIR* directory to the PL11OE.HDR font file in the *drive:\ELIXIR\FONTS\ELIXIR* directory using the CP_852CD.GMP file (included with the software) in the *drive:\ELIXIR\FONTS\MAPS* directory, type:

1. CD \ELIXIR\FONTS\ELIXIR <Enter>

The current directory changes to the directory in which Elixir font files reside.

2. FONTMAP HE11BP.HDR
PL11OE.HDR CP_852CD.GMP
<Enter>

This command remaps the character bitmaps in the HE11BP.HDR file to the PL11OE.HDR file using the hexadecimal position remapping information found in the CP_852CD.GMP file.

FONTTBL

The FONTTBL updates or create a font substitution table based on HP fonts (including PCL5).

Usage FONTTBL *filename* [*tablefile*] <Enter>

filename

is the font file, or font files if a wild card is used, including extension.

tablefile

is the name of the font escape sequence table you want to create, including extension.

**Directory
information**

Run FONTTBL from the *drive:*\ELIXIR directory using the desktop dispatcher or at the DOS prompt.

Example To create a font substitution table named escape.tab for the font HE07BP, type the following:

```
C:\ELIXIR>FONTTBL
\ELIXIR\FONTS\PRINTER\HE07BP.FLJ
\ELIXIR\FONTS\MAPS\HPESCSEQ\ESCAPE.TAB
```

FONTTRAN

The FONTTRAN utility transforms an ASCII decentralized printer (XES) font to EBCDIC. You need this transformation when you want to upload an ASCII XES font to a decentralized printer connected to an EBCDIC host.

Usage FONTTRAN *filename* <Enter>

filename

is the XES font file name including extension. Wildcards are allowed.

**Directory
information**

Run FONTTRAN from the directory in which the files to be transformed reside. If you have not specified *drive:*\ELIXIR in a DOS PATH= statement, precede the FONTTRAN command with *drive:*\ELIXIR.

FORMCVT

The FORMCVT utility converts form and XES files between 4075FRM, 4075FSL, 9700FRM, 9700FSL, COLORFRM, COLORFSL, XES, Elixir, 4050FRM, and 4050FSL formats. Note that the utility strips out any text with tags or variable graphics when making FSL and FRM files

Usage FORMCVT *stemname* [*inputformat*]
[*output format*] [*papersize*] [*fonts*]
[*confirm*] [*output device*] [*palette*] [*monitor*]
[*-ignorekern*] [*-port*] [*-noexpand*] [*feed*]
<Enter>

stemname

is the stem name of the files for conversion. Extensions and paths are not allowed. Wildcards are allowed.

inputformat

is the format of the files for conversion and is one of the following: COLORFRM, COLORFSL, 9700FRM, 9700FSL, 4075FRM, 4075FSL, UDK, XES, or ELIXIR.

outputformat

is the format of the converted files and is one of the following: ELIXIR, COLORFRM, COLORFSL, 4050FSL, 4050FRM, 9700FRM, 9700FSL, 4075FRM, 4075FSL

pagesize

is the paper size: LETTER , LEGAL, XLARGE (11 x 17), A3, or A4.

font

specify whether to send all fonts in the font list to the printer or just fonts used on the form: USEDFFONTS or ALLFFONTS.

confirm

specify overwrite confirmation: NO to not confirm or YES to confirm.

outputdevice

specify output to hard disk or to tape: DISK or TAPE.

palette

is the printer palette name to use for highlight color printing.

monitor

is one of the following the monitor types (used to set screen resolution only when converting XES files with embedded graphics):

-M:VGA	(VGA, the default)
-M:SIGMA	(Sigma L-View)
-M:WYSE	(Wyse)
-M:SUPERVGA	(Super VGA)
-M:NONE	(None)

-ignorekern

specify to ignore kerning and output whole text lines.

-port

specify to force output page to portrait orientation.

-noexpand

specify to not change X0 fonts to X1 - X4.

-feed

specify to force short or long edge feed: -SHORT-EDGE or LONGEDGE.

Directory information

Run FORMCVT from the directory in which the files to be converted reside. If you have not specified *drive:\ELIXIR* in a DOS PATH= statement, precede the FORMCVT command with *drive:\ELIXIR*.

Example

To convert the A4-size Elixir form KEN.ELX in the *drive:\ELIXIR\FORMS\ELIXIR* directory to FSL format and place it in the *drive:\ELIXIR\FORMS\FSLOUT* (output FSL form) directory, type:

1. CD \ELIXIR\FORMS\ELIXIR <Enter>

The current directory changes to the directory in which Elixir form files reside.

2. FORMCVT KEN ELX FSL A4 <Enter>

This command converts the form file and writes the output FSL file to drive: \\ELIXIR\FORMS\FSLOUT.

FORMPRN

The FORMPRN utility prints Elixir format forms in batch mode using MS-DOS commands.

Usage FORMPRN [*path*]*filename* [*HP*]
[*printer/disk*] [*copies*] [*ASCII*] [*macronumber*]
[*traynumber*] [*LPT1/LPT2/LPT3*]
[*print/store/storeprint/constant*]
[*interword/interchar*] [*once/never*]
[*Xshift/Yshift*] [*-port*] [*-no expand*] [*-dotags*]
[*-dotagname*] [*-XESonly*] [*-fix4235*]
[*-hpesc:tablename*] [*-printdirection*]
<Enter>

path

is the optional DOS pathname

filename

is any DOS file name, including the file extension. Wildcards are allowed.

HP

is the attached proof printer. The output files have .PRN extensions.

printer/disk

is the destination of the output file, to a printer (default) or to a hard disk or diskette: PRINTER or DISK.

copies

is the number of copies you want to print. The default is 1. Note that font files accompany every copy.

ASCII

for locally attached proof printers.

macro number

is the macro number used for HP printers. 0 = None.

tray number

is the output tray number for printers supporting this feature. The default tray is 0.

LPT1/LPT2/LPT3

is the printer number to use (default is LPT1).

print/store/storeprint/constant

are the printer options (default is print).

- [Print] to send your form to the printer
- [Store] to store your form on the printer hard disk
- [StorePrint] to both print your form and store it on the printer
- [Constant] to store your form (one page only) in the printer's memory until the printer is either re-set or turned off

interword/interchar

is interword (default) or intercharacter spacing.

once/always/never

for downloading fonts once (default), always or never.

Xshift

is the horizontal amount to shift the page.

Yshift

is the vertical amount to shift the page.

-port

(optional) forces the page to be portrait.

-no expand

(optional) to not expand X0 fonts to X1 - 4 fonts.

-dotags

(optional) prints tags as replacement characters

-dotagname

(optional) prints the tag names.

-XESonly

(optional) does not send JOB control parameters.

-fix4235

(optional) changes the order of fonts for 4235 problem.

-hpesc:tablename

(optional) specifies an ESCAPE table.

-printdirection

(optional) uses the print direction command when out-putting to HP PCL printers.

Directory information

Run FORMPRN from the *drive:\ELIXIR* directory. FORMPRN searches the default forms directory (usually *drive:\ELIXIR\FORMS\ELIXIR\DEMO*) as specified in the Elixiform configuration file.

FORMPRN support of long XES font names

FORMPRN supports internal cartridge font names for Xerox 4045 proof printers. To specify internal font names equivalent to cartridge names, create an XESFONTS.LST ASCII file that contains a table as follows:

- 1. Type the short name of the font, a space, and the long name of the font.**
- 2. Press <Enter> and repeat this process for all font names.**
- 3. Save the file as an ASCII file.**
- 4. Place the file in the *drive:\ELIXIR* directory on the drive where your Elixir software resides.**

When you use FORMPRN to print Elixir format forms, FORMPRN reads the XESFONTS.LST file and substitutes the long name in the font's internal name field before making the font a part of the .L27 or .L45 font file.

Example To print three copies of an Elixir-format file (TAX.ELX as an example) to an attached HP LJ proof printer, while in the directory where the file resides, type:

```
\ELIXIR\FORMPRN TAX.ELX HP PRINTER
3 <Enter>
```

FSIMG

The FSIMG utility converts .IMG, .LP3, .PCX, and .TIF format graphics files to .LP3, .IMG, .PCX, screen, or .TIF format files.

Note: To convert TIF CCITT 4 images, use the IC utility.

Usage *FSIMG stemname [infileformat]*
[outfileformat] [outputdevice]
[rotategraphics] [compressvalue] [dpi]
[monitor] [tempdir] [conversiontype]
[color] [planes] <Enter>

stemname

is any DOS stem name. No file extensions or wild-cards are allowed.

infileformat

Valid values for the input format parameter are I , L , P , T, and C as follows:

I	represents .IMG format files. The .IMG file for conversion must be in the <i>drive</i> : \ELIXIR\PICS\IMGIN directory.
L	represents Elixir (.LP3) format graphics files. To convert an Elixir graphics file, it must be in the <i>drive</i> :\ELIXIR\PICS\PRINTER directory.
P	represents color or non-color .PCX format files. To convert a .PCX file, it must be in the <i>drive</i> :\ELIXIR\PICS\PCXIN directory.
T	represents color or non-color TIFF (.TIF) format files. To convert a TIFF format file, the file must be in the <i>drive</i> :\ELIXIR\PICS\TIFFIN directory.
C	Specifies that the .IMG file for conversion includes color components.

outfileformat

Valid values for the output format parameter are L, I, P, 8, T, and C as follows:

L	creates an output graphics in Elixir (.LP3) graphics format. The output .LP3 file is written to the <i>drive:\ELIXIR\PICS\PRINTER</i> directory. A screen version (.LW8) of the file is also created in the <i>drive:\ELIXIR\PICS\SCREEN</i>
I	creates a Xerox .IMG graphics format file with extension .IMG in the <i>drive:\ELIXIR\PICS\IMGOUT</i> directory.
P	creates a .PCX format graphics file in the <i>drive:\ELIXIR\PICS\PCXOUT</i> directory.
8	creates Elixir screen format (.LW8) versions of a graphics file that work with the graphics in Elixiform. The output file is created in the <i>drive:\ELIXIR\PICS\SCREEN</i> directory.
T	creates TIFF (.TIF) format files in the <i>drive:\ELIXIR\PICS\TIFFOUT</i> directory.
C	Specifies that the output .IMG file should include color components.

outputdevice

applies only to .IMG (I) input or output format files: DISK or TAPE. TAPE reads the .IMG file from tape and creates a disk file in the selected format.

If you select I and TAPE, FSIMG writes the output .IMG file to tape.

rotategraphics

Rotate graphics 90 degrees: NO or YES. Applies only to .IMG format files. All Elixiform Elixir screen format graphics are in portrait orientation. If they are on a landscape form and printed to a PC-attached proof printer, Elixiform automatically rotates them for proof printing.

If you specify YES to rotate a landscape orientation .IMG input format file, FSIMG creates the output file in portrait orientation.

If you specify YES to rotate an output .IMG format, the output rotates by 90 degrees.

compressvalue

This parameter applies only if I (for .IMG) is the output file format. Valid graphics compression values are P, F, and N.

P	partially compresses the .IMG files; it compresses both duplicate lines and blank (null) lines within the file.
F	optimizes for white space within lines in an .IMG file. FULL takes the longest time to process and produces the smallest .IMG file. If your documents contain graphics larger than half a page and you are printing on a Xerox 8700 or 9700 series printer, select FULL.
N	NONE does not compress .IMG files.

dpi

specifies the resolution (300 or 240) of .IMG files (in dpi) before FSIMG processing.

monitor

allows you to specify your monitor as one of the following: VGA, SIGMA, WYSE, SUPERVGA, or NONE.

tempdir

is the directory in which temporary read/write operations take place. You may want to specify a RAM drive for faster file conversion.

conversiontype

is the conversion type, when converting .PCX or .TIF files. PR (used most frequently) specifies Presentation conversion, used for graphics, line art, and graphics without gray scales. PI signifies Pictorial conversion, used when converting high-grade graphics such as scanned photographs or graphics with gray scales.

color

is the output color: RED, GREEN, BLUE, or FULL.

planes

specify 1 for black-and-white graphics, 2 for two-plane highlight color graphics, or 3 for full color graphics (when converting to and from Elixir-format (.LP3) graphics).

**Directory
information**

The current directory changes to *drive*:\ELIXIR to run FSIMG unless you have included *drive*:\ELIXIR in a DOS PATH= statement.

Example To convert a color 300 dpi .TIF file named PIC1.TIF to a color .IMG (and to create a screen version for a VGA monitor), type:

1. C: <Enter>
2. CD \ELIXIR <Enter>
3. FSIMG PIC1 T C P VGA PI<Enter>

The output color PIC1.IMG writes to the *drive*:\ELIXIR\PICS\IMGOUT directory.

HPEDIT

The HPEDIT utility allows editing of PCL font files.

Usage HPEDIT *filename* [SYMBOL=]
[POINT] [STYLE] [WEIGHT] [TYPEFACE]
<Enter>

filename

is the file name or filepath of the source font. Wild cards are allowed.

symbol=

where symbol set

1 = ROMAN-8, 2 = PC-8,

3 = PC-8 (D/N), 4 = ISO.

point=

is the point size in tenths.

style=

where style 1 = UPRIGHT, 2 = ITALIC

weight

is the strokeweight between -7 and 7.

typeface

where typeface is one of the following letters:

- A) Presentations
- B) Cooper Black
- C) Courier
- D) Palantino
- E) Elixir
- F) Black Bondini Condensed
- G) Letter Gothic
- H) Helvetica
- I) ITC Garamond
- J) Gothic
- K) Micrographics
- L) Line Printer
- M) Swiss Condensed
- N) Coronet Bold
- O) Optima
- P) Prestige
- Q) Zaph Dingbats
- R) Broadway
- S) Century Schoolbook
- T) Time Roman
- U) University Roman
- V) Avante Garde
- W) Futura
- Z) Zorich Roman

Directory information

Run HPEDIT from the *drive:/ELIXIR* directory using the desktop dispatcher or at the DOS prompt.

IC

The IC utility converts graphic formats.

Usage *IC sourcefile [in format]
[out format] [-options] <Enter>*

sourcefile

is the file name or filepath of the source image. Wild cards are allowed.

in format

is the name of the source image format (Elixir, Pseg, PCX, TIF).

out format

is the name of the target image format (Elixir, Pseg, GOCAPSEG, PCX, TIF, Screen).

-Caaa

is the name of color or color id.

1=Blue, 2=Red, 3=Pink, 4=Green, 5=Cyan, 6=Yellow

Default: 0=Presentation process default

-Dnnn

is the output resolution in dpi (240 or 300).

-Faaa

is the record format for output options(VBM, AS400, IRMA, OS2, MODCA)

-Wa

is the selection for removing white space.

N=white space not removed

Y=white space removed

-Rnnn

is the selection to rotate pages in degrees.

-Xnnn

is the horizontal offset in pels.

-Ynnn

is the vertical offset in pels.

-Saaa

is the selection for monitor type (VGA, SuperVGA, Sigma, WYSE).

**Directory
information**

Run IC from the *drive:*/ELIXIR directory using the desktop dispatcher or at the DOS prompt.

LGO2LP3

LGO2LP3, in conjunction with FSIMG, converts logo (.LGO) files of up to 128 Kbytes to Elixir graphics format (.LP3) and to Elixir screen graphics format (.LW8).

Usage LGO2LP3 *filename*.LGO <Enter>

filename

is any DOS file name including the .LGO file extension. Wildcards are allowed.

**Directory
information**

Run LGO2LP3 from the directory containing the .LGO file.

Example

To convert the logo ATTRV.LGO to an Elixir screen format graphic, type:

1. CD \ELIXIR\PICS\LGOIN <Enter>

The current directory changes to *drive:*\ELIXIR\PICS\LGOIN in which the .LGO file resides.

2. \ELIXIR\LGO2LP3 ATTRV.LGO
<Enter>

LGO2LP3 converts the logo file to an Elixir-format graphics file in the \ELIXIR\PICS\PRINTER directory.

You can now use FSIMG to convert the logo from Elixir graphics format to Elixir screen graphics format.

3. FSIMG ATTRV L 8 <Enter>

For details on FSIMG operation, see the FSIMG section of this chapter.

LP32ELX

The LP32ELX utility converts Elixir-format graphics (.LP3) files to Elixir format font (.HDR) files.

Usage LP32ELX *filename*.LP3 [*retile*] [*orientation*] [*color*] <Enter>

filename.LP3

is the Elixir-format graphics file for conversion, including the .LP3 extension. Wildcards are allowed.

retile

specify whether the .TXT file associated with the .LP3 file is to be retiled: YES (the default) or NO.

orientation

specify the orientation of the font you want to create as portrait, landscape, inverse portrait, or inverse landscape: PORT, LAND, INVPOTRAIT, or INVLANDSCAPE.

color

specify to output one-plane black and white or two-plane color: BW or COLOR.

Directory information

Run LP32ELX from the *drive*:\ELIXIR\PICS\PRINTER directory. The output file writes to the *drive*:\ELIXIR\FONTS\ELIXIR directory.

Example To convert PICT.LP3 in the *drive:* \ELIXIR\PICS\PRINTER directory to an Elixir font file in *drive:* \ELIXIR\FONTS\ELIXIR and to retile the .TXT file, type:

1. CD \ELIXIR\PICS\PRINTER <Enter>
2. LP32ELX PICT.LP3 YES <Enter>

MET2871

The MET2871 utility reformats metacode files for correct processing through an 871 device that connects a mainframe computer and printer.

Usage MET2871 *filename.ext* <Enter>

filename

is the full pathname of the file for conversion.

.ext

is the file extension.

**Directory
information**

Issue the command from the directory in which MET2871 resides (*drive:* \ELIXIR).

MET2ELX

The MET2ELX utility converts a metacode file to .ELX (Elixir) format. One .ELX file generates for every page in the metacode file. You can use MET2ELX with on-line or offline metacode, and DocuMerge-normalized metacode.

Usage MET2ELX *filename.MET* [*orientation*]
[*pagesize*][*monitor*] [*blockformat/length*]
[*extension*] [*fontlist*] [*DJDElength*] [*-fontin-*
dex] <Enter>

filename.MET

is the DOS file name including the .MET extension. Wildcards are allowed.

orientation

is a portrait or landscape metacode document, or specify AUTO for MET2ELX to determine the orientation automatically: AUTO, PORT, or LAND.

pagesize

is the page size: LETTER, A4, or 14 (8.5 x 14).

monitor

is the monitor type: NONE, SIGMA, WYSE, VGA, or SUPERVGA. The monitor type you specify determines the resolution of the screen graphics MET2ELX builds if the metacode has any graphics. NONE does not create a screen graphic.

blockformat/length

Variable (V####) or Fixed (F####) block format and optional block length. Use the V setting (and optional block length) if you downloaded normalized metacode from the Image Sciences DocuMerge product and plan to convert it to .ELX format using MET2ELX. When you specify V, MET2ELX assumes the file contains RDW (record descriptor word) and BDW (block descriptor word) fields:

- An RDW is four bytes long and describes the length of an individual record. There is one RDW for each record.
- A BDW is four bytes long and describes the length of a block of records. The BDW value should match the block size of the host VB dataset used to store the metacode file on your host computer.

extension

specify whether to use or not use file extensions: NOEXT, EXT, or FRM. FRM converts to FRM files.

fontlist

external PDE font list (stem name only).

DJDElength

is the length of the DJDE string or the offset.

-fontindex

specify to use a font index.

For further details on downloading normalized meta-code to your PC and converting it to .ELX format using MET2ELX, see the *DocuTag User Guide*.

Specify F (and an optional field length) for fixed-length, 150-byte (if not specified) metacode records. If the metacode records are not all exactly 150 bytes long, pad them with low values (hex 00) or spaces (hex 20).

**Directory
information**

Run MET2ELX from the directory in which input files reside (for example, *drive:* \ELIXIR \DOCS \METAOUT).

MET2ELX creates a form list file for the converted document in the *drive:*\ELIXIR\DOCS\DOCLIST directory.

.ELX files created by MET2ELX write to the default forms directory, as specified in the Elixiform [Set Defaults] option of the **Options** menu. MET2ELX uses the following naming conventions when converting multi-page documents:

- The name for the first page of a converted file retains the first eight characters of the source file name. If the source file name has less than eight characters, it retains all characters.
- For pages 2 through 9, digits 2 through 9 replace the right character of the output file name. For pages 10 through 99, digits 10 through 99 replace the two right characters of the output file name. A similar naming convention applies to pages 100 through 999. MET2ELX supports only documents up to 999 pages long.

If the metacode contains graphics, Elixir-format (.LP3) graphics files generate in the *drive:\ELIXIR\PICS\PRINTER* directory. The stem names of the Elixir format files come from the internal names stored in each graphic.

Example To convert a three-page metacode file, MARKET.MET in the *drive:\ELIXIR\DOCS\METAOUT* directory to Elixir-format (.ELX) files, type:

CD \ELIXIR\DOCS\METAOUT <Enter>

The current directory changes to *drive:\ELIXIR\DOCS\METAOUT* in which the metacode file resides.

Then type:

ELIXIR\MET2ELX MARKET.MET
PORT LETTER VGA VB <Enter>

If the metacode file included .IMG format graphics, the resulting graphics files are named after the name stored in each .IMG graphics and placed in the *drive:\ELIXIR\PICS\PRINTER* directory.

The form list conversion produces a file named MARKET.DAT and places it in the *drive:\ELIXIR\DOCS\DOCLIST* directory.

The Elixir-format forms generate in the default forms directory specified in Elixiform.

NAMEFNT

The maximum allowable length for XES font internal names is 20 characters, which is larger than the six-character limit for Xerox production printer font names. The NAMEFNT utility changes the internal name of an XES font to the external DOS file name.

NAMEFNT also allows you to specify a unique internal name, up to 20 characters, by using the optional INTERNAL NAME parameter.

Usage NAMEFNT *filename* [*internalname*] <Enter>

filename

is any DOS file name, including the file extension. Wildcards are allowed.

internalname

is an optional user-specified internal name. Specify a name of up to 20 characters. If you specify this parameter, NAMEFNT uses it to create the internal name in the XES font.

The internal name you specify can contain upper and lower case characters.

Directory information

Run NAMEFNT from the directory in which the output files reside. If you have not specified *drive:\ELIXIR* in your DOS PATH= statement, precede the NAMEFNT command with *drive:\ELIXIR*.

Example

To change the internal names of all the XES fonts in the *drive:\ELIXIR\FONTS\PRINTER* directory to match their DOS names, change the current directory to *drive:*, then type:

1. CD \ELIXIR\FONTS\PRINTER<Enter>

The current directory changes to *drive:\ELIXIR\FONTS\PRINTER*, in which the target fonts reside.

2. *drive:\ELIXIR\NAMEFNT *.F45*<Enter>

The DOS wildcard "*" before the file extension .F45 indicates that NAMEFNT processes all .F45 files in the directory.

NAMEUDK

The NAMEUDK utility allows you to prepare and store an XES print file on a Xerox distributed printer hard disk for printing at a later time.

NAMEUDK inserts an XES escape code command into XES print files. Distributed printers use this escape code to store print files to disk.

Usage NAMEUDK filename <Enter>

filename

is any DOS file name, including the file extension. Wildcards are allowed.

**Directory
information**

Run NAMEUDK from the directory in which the input files reside. If you have not specified *drive:\ELIXIR* in a DOS PATH= statement, precede the NAMEUDK command with *drive:\ELIXIR*.

Example To print forms to disk using Elixiform when you set the printer to Xerox 4045 format, change the current directory to *drive:*, then type:

1. CD \ELIXIR\PRINTS\X45PRINT <Enter>

The current directory changes to *drive:\ELIXIR\PRINTS\X45PRINT*.

2. \ELIXIR\NAMEUDK *.PRN <Enter>

NAMEUDK places the "store to disk" XES escape code on all files with .PRN extensions in the *drive:\ELIXIR\PRINTS\X45PRINT* directory.

PACK

The PACK utility converts .JSL, .FSL, and other ASCII format files to standard-labeled Xerox-format files. PACK places a standard Xerox header on the ASCII file, strips off text beyond column 80, and packs data into 512-byte blocks. PACK also converts Xerox-format files to 80-byte record length ASCII format.

Usage `PACK filename.ext [convert] <Enter>`

filename.ext

is the 80-byte record format file name that must include the extension. Wildcards are allowed.

convert

BLOCK (the default) converts 80-byte record length ASCII format files to Xerox-format files (128-byte header followed by 512-byte blocks of data). UNBLOCK converts Xerox-format files from 512-byte blocks to ASCII.

Directory information

Run PACK from the directory in which files you want to convert reside, using the full command, for example `C:\ELIXIR\PACK filename.ext BLOCK`. If you have specified a `PATH=drive:\ELIXIR` statement, you do not need to specify *drive:\ELIXIR* in the command.

PALFIX

If you used Elixiform versions prior to version 2.10e to create forms with highlight color, you must run the PALFIX utility on the forms before viewing, editing, or converting the forms using versions 2.10e and later.

The PALFIX utility performs the following:

- converts the PC palettes used to create forms in all Elixiform versions prior to 2.10e to PC palettes compatible with versions 2.10e and later.

To create highlight color forms in versions 2.10e and later, you must specify the pure highlight color as the fifth color in the PC palette. In older versions, you could specify the pure highlight color in any position except positions 1 through 4 (see the 4850 tabbed section in the *ElixirForm User Guide* for more information about palettes).

For a form file created with Elixiform versions prior to version 2.10e, PALFIX converts the palette by moving the pure highlight color to the fifth position and adjusts the form accordingly. If you do not run the PALFIX utility on older highlight color form files, they will not display correctly with software versions 2.10e and later.

```
Usage  PALFIX  filename  [palname]  [hcname]
        <Enter>
```

filename

is the Elixir-format form file name with or without the .ELX extension. Specify the full path name. If you do not specify the path, the program uses the default form directory specified in *ElixirForm for HighLight Color*. Wildcards are allowed.

palname

is the stem name of the PC palette used to create the form.

hcname

is the name of the pure highlight color used in *palname*.

Either specify *palname* and *hcname* together or omit them both. Specifying neither will prompt you for *palname* and *hcname* for each form.

Directory information

Run PALFIX from *drive:\ELIXIR*.

Example To convert the form SUMMER.ELX in the default forms directory (*drive:\ELIXIR\FORMS\ELIXIR\DEMO* after installation) and to correct the PC palette RED.PAL so it is compatible with version 2.3, change the current directory to *drive:\ELIXIR* and type:

PALFIX SUMMER RED R100 <Enter>

R100 is the pure highlight color in RED.PAL.

To correct all forms in the default forms directory with names starting with SS and to correct the PC palette for each form to be compatible with version 2.3, change the current directory to *drive:\ELIXIR* and type:

PALFIX SS* <Enter>

For each form starting with SS, the program prompts you with the name of the PC palette and the pure highlight color in the PC palette.

PROOF45

The PROOF45 utility allows you to proof print XES format fonts on a PC-attached Xerox 4045 printer.

Usage PROOF45 *filename* [*orientation*]
[*charactermap*] <Enter>

filename

is the name of the 4045 font you want to print on the 4045 printer without a file extension.

orientation

is portrait or landscape orientation (required): P or L.

charactermap

allows on-screen display of character mapping in hexadecimal or decimal.

H	shows the hexadecimal positions and their corresponding font characters.
D	displays decimal positions and their corresponding font characters.
N	suppresses displaying character mapping information.

Directory information

Run PROOF45 from the directory in *which* the output files reside. If you have not specified *drive:\ELIXIR* in your DOS PATH= statement, precede the PROOF45 command with *drive:\ELIXIR*.

Example To proof print a landscape XES format font file with decimal character mapping display, change the current directory to drive: then type:

1. CD \ELIXIR\FONTS\PRINTER <Enter>

The current directory changes to *drive:\ELIXIR\FONTS\PRINTER*, in which the font to be proof printed resides.

2. \ELIXIR\PROOF45 EX211L L D <Enter>

This prints the landscape orientation XES font EX211L to a PC-attached Xerox 4045 printer. It also displays a list of the decimal characters and font characters mapped to each position.

SHOWBLOK

The SHOWBLOK utility displays information about any ElixKeys attached to your PC and the Elixir applications you have authorization to run.

Usage SHOWBLOK <Enter>

**Directory
information**

Run SHOWBLOK from the \ELIXIR directory. If you have not specified *drive:\ELIXIR* in your DOS PATH= statement, precede the SHOWBLOK command with *drive:\ELIXIR*.

Example

To use SHOWBLOK to determine the ElixKeys present on your PC, change the current directory to *drive:* then type:

1. CD \ELIXIR <Enter>

The current directory changes to *drive:\ELIXIR*.

2. SHOWBLOK <Enter>

If you installed the ElixFont and ElixGraphics applications and keys on your PC, a message similar to the following displays on your screen:

ELIXIFONT BLOCK PRESENT
ELIXIGRAPHICS BLOCK PRESENT

SHOWELX

The SHOWELX utility displays the contents of an Elixir form file and the elements comprising the form: the font list, boxes, lines, graphics, and text strings. The contents display on the screen and you can redirect the output to a file for printing.

Usage `SHOWELX filename <Enter>`

filename

is the DOS form file name including the .ELX extension. Wildcards are allowed.

Directory information

Run SHOWELX from the directory in which the file name resides. If you have not specified *drive:\ELIXIR* in a DOS PATH= statement, precede the SHOWELX command with *drive:\ELIXIR*.

Example To display the contents of a form named BBPLAY3.ELX in the *drive:\ELIXIR\FORMS\ELIXIR* directory, type:

1. `CD \ELIXIR\FORMS\ELIXIR <Enter>`

The current directory changes to *drive:\ELIXIR\FORMS\ELIXIR\DEMO*.

2. `\ELIXIR\SHOWELX BBPLAY`

3. `ELX <Enter>`

This displays the contents of and the elements comprising the BBPLAY3.ELX form. Press <Ctrl> + <S> to stop screen scrolling, or use the DOS MORE command to display one screen at a time as follows:

`SHOWELX filename | MORE <Enter>`

SP

Use this utility if you are generating 22 - 27 point Dingbat fonts using Efont Factory. (Bitstream is no longer providing support for the Speedo conversion routine.)

Usage: SP [*font*] [*ptsize*] [*resn*] [*range1-range2*] [*orient*] [*outfile*] [*check*] [*kern*] [*tune*] [*R*]

Note that all parameters must be given.

font

is the name and path of the input Bitstream Speedo font (.SPD) file.

ptsize

is the point size of the font to generate (2 to 99).

resn:

is the resolution (DPI) of the target printer: 240, 300, 480, or 600

range1- range2

range-1 is the character to start generating from and *range-2* is the character to stop generating at.

orient

is the orientation to make the font, one of the symbols: P (Portrait), L (Landscape), I (Inverse Portrait), J (Inverse Landscape).

outfile

is the output file (with no extension),

check

is a check of total font memory size, for example, a check of 64 means that the font will NOT be saved if the total size of the bitmaps exceeds 64k.

kern

specify LKERN to preserve the left kerning if the font is to be used with Elixir only, or specify NOLKERN for all left kerning to be added into the overall width of the character cell. NOLKERN supports centralized applications which cannot use left kerning in the fonts. Note that when NOLKERN is selected, then a table is built in the directory \ELIXIR\FONTS\TABLES\ with the name outfile.FTB which contains the left kerning, width and right kerning of the font.

This enables you to integrate the kerning of the font with your non-Elixir Centralized application.

tune

specify to embolden the font characters in a horizontal or vertical direction: HTUNE or VTUNE. This adds one dot to the characters so that single pixel features appear more clearly.

r

specify to flag font as RESTRICTED use.

Following is an example of generating a Dingbat font of 24 points:

```
SP \ELIXIR\FONTS\CONTOURS\BX133030.SPD 24  
300 32-255 P TEST 0 NOLKERN NOTUNE
```

This will produce a portrait Elixir font called TEST in \ELIXIR\FONTS\ELIXIR. The Elixir font can then be used by the ElixSys desktop to generate screen and printer versions.

SPUR

The Spur device connects a PC to a Xerox production printer using bus and tag connectors.

Online metacode files and Xerox files with 128-byte headers transfer to a Xerox printer through the Spur device by using the Elixir SPUR utility.

SPUR utility

The SPUR utility prepares online metacode files or Xerox standard labeled files for transmission through the SPUR device to a production printer. This utility inserts control codes in files enabling file transfer via the Spur device.

Usage **SPUR** *filename* [*header*] [*sequence*] <Enter>

filename

is any DOS file name including file extension. Wild-cards are not allowed.

header

is the Xerox header format:

Specify PRN to send *filename* through your PC parallel port to the Spur device, or DISK to write *filename* to disk (in the same directory as *filename*) and name it SPUR.OUT.

sequence

inserts escape sequences in the SPUR interface device output data stream: USA, PPC or AS400. Specify the correct parameter, depending on your type of SPUR device.

**Directory
information**

Run SPUR from the directory in which the input file resides. If you have not specified *drive*:\ELIXIR in a DOS PATH= statement, precede the SPUR command with *drive*:\ELIXIR.

Example To send the Xerox-128 byte header file XPAU10.FNT located in the *drive:\ELIXIR\FONTS\X97OUT* directory directly to the SPUR device, type:

1. `CD \ELIXIR\FONTS\X97OUT <Enter>`

The current directory changes to *drive:\ELIXIR\FONTS\X97OUT*

2. `\ELIXIR\SPUR XPAU10.FNT PRN <Enter>`

SPUR inserts control codes the SPUR device requires to send the file directly to your printer (which should be in HOSTCOPY mode).

Using SPUR for online metacode files

If you are copying online metacode files to the printer, make sure you correctly code your default and ELIXIR.JSL files. The printer should be online and waiting to receive data before you begin the copy operation. For details on configuring your printer in an online environment, see your production printer reference manual.

Using SPUR for Xerox 128-byte header files

If you are copying a Xerox 128-byte header file to the printer, make sure the printer is in HOSTCOPY mode before you begin the copy operation. For further details on the HOSTCOPY mode, see your production printer reference manual.

STRIP

The STRIP utility adds a Xerox header to files.

Usage **STRIP** *filename* [*headerformat*]
 [KEEPNAME][*-STRIP*][*-PAD*] <Enter>

filename

is any DOS file name including the file extension.
Wildcards are allowed.

headerformat

specify the Xerox header format: NONE, 128, or 512.

NONE does not add a Xerox header.

128 adds a 128-byte Xerox header.

512 adds a 512-byte Xerox header.

KEEPNAME

keeps the original file header name.

-STRIP

strips line numbers and trailing spaces from text files.

-PAD

pads line numbers and trailing spaces to text files.

Directory information

Run STRIP from the directory in which the input files reside. If you have not specified *drive:\ELIXIR* in a DOS PATH= statement, precede the STRIP command with *drive:\ELIXIR*.

Example

To place 512-byte headers on all .FRM files in the *drive:\ELIXIR\FORMS\FRMOUT* directory, type:

1. CD \ELIXIR\FORMS\FRMOUT
 <Enter>

The current directory changes to *drive:\ELIXIR\FORMS\FRMOUT*.

2. \ELIXIR\STRIP *.FRM 512 <Enter>

The STRIP utility places 512-byte header records on all files with .FRM extensions in the *drive:\ELIXIR\FORMS\FRMOUT* directory.

TAP2DSK

The TAP2DSK utility copies files from a tape drive unit to a PC hard disk. It also allows you to display a list of all tape files on your screen.

You cannot use TAP2DSK to copy Xerox metacode files.

Usage TAP2DSK [*filename*] DIR <Enter>

filename

is any DOS file name including the file extension. Wildcards are allowed.

DIR

used only when you want to display the tape directory.

TAP2DSK searches the directory for files with the specified extension. The following are the default directories TAP2DSK uses for different Xerox format files:

- Fonts (FNT) *drive:\ELIXIR\FONTS\X97IN*
- Forms (FRM) *drive:\ELIXIR\FORMS\FRMIN*
- Forms (Color FRM) *drive:\ELIXIR\FORMS\FRCIN*
- Forms (FSL) *drive:\ELIXIR\FORMS\FSLIN*
- Forms (Color FSL) *drive:\ELIXIR\FORMS\FSCIN*
- Logos (LGO) *drive:\ELIXIR\PICS\LGOIN*
- Logos (Color LGO) *drive:\ELIXIR\PICS\LGCIN*
- Images (IMG) *drive:\ELIXIR\PICS\IMGIN*
- Images (Color IMG) *drive:\ELIXIR\PICS\IMCIN*

To copy 5Word format files from a tape drive unit to your PC hard disk, you must specify the full path to the input directory: *drive:\ELIXIR\FONTS\FN6IN*.

All other Xerox files (such as .TMP and .MSC) are placed in the directory and drive from which you invoke the TAP2DSK utility.

**Directory
information**

Run TAP2DSK from the *drive:\ELIXIR* directory, unless you have specified *drive:\ELIXIR* in your DOS PATH= statement.

Example 1 For a listing of all files on a tape, type:

TAP2DSK *.* <Enter>

TAP2DSK displays a list of files on the tape.

Example 2 To copy all .FSL forms from a tape to your PC hard disk, type:

TAP2DSK *.FSL <Enter>

All files on the tape with .FSL extensions copy to the *drive:\ELIXIR\FORMS\FSLIN* directory.

Local printers



This section describes information required for printing form files on local and XES proof printers.

To print a file, copy it to the Printers icon on the Desktop, select [Print] from the **File** menu, or press <Ctrl> + <P>.

The ElixSys Desktop supports local printing as follows:

- You can print Elixir forms on any HP PCL or PostScript printer connected to your PC and configured in Windows.
- You can print using an Elixir driver, or the standard Windows driver.
- When printing non-Elixir, non-ASCII forms you can either specify a binary copy operation to the printer port or specify a user-defined print driver.
- You can print ASCII text files or formatted data streams if the proof printer connected to your PC can correctly interpret the files or data streams.

See the "Desktop configuration" chapter for information about HP PCL and PostScript print driver support.

Printing Elixir forms

You can add, change, or delete printer drivers (for printing Elixir forms) from the Windows Control Panel.

You can also change the current printer's setup by displaying the Printers icon properties.

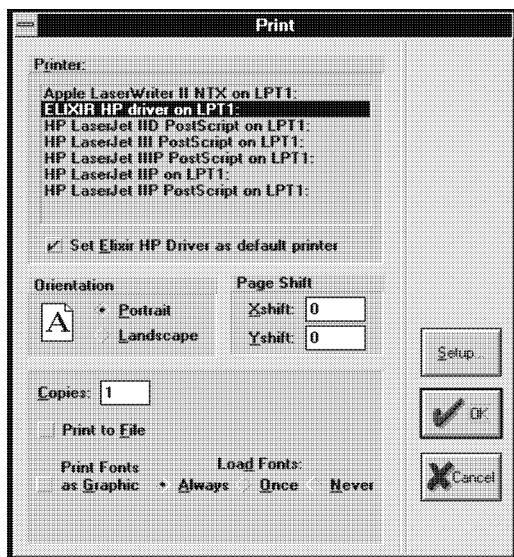


Figure LOCAL-1. Print dialog box

Printer

The Print dialog box shows the current default printer.

Set Elixir HP driver as default printer

Sets the Elixir HP printer driver as your default printer. See the "Using the Elixir HP print driver" section for more information.

Orientation

The orientation of the printed page. [Landscape] or [Portrait].

Page Shift

The number of dots you want the printed page shifted to the right ([Xshift]) or down ([Yshift]). Negative values are permissible.

Copies

The number of copies of the printed page.

Print to File

Creates an HP PCL print file (.PRN) that writes to the *drive:\ELIXIR\PRINTS\HPPRINT* directory.

Autogen output name

Displays when you select [Print to File]. Automatically outputs a .PRN file with the same stem name as the Elixir input file.

Print Fonts as Graphic

When selected, rasterizes fonts as graphics. This option also requires less printer memory and may speed up printing time

Load Fonts

Displays when you select the Elixir HP Driver. Select [Always] to download fonts each time you print. Select [Once] to download fonts to the printer only once, as they are encountered. Fonts stay resident on the printer until it is reset. Select [Never] to use only the fonts resident on the printer. No fonts are downloaded.

Message

Displays the Message Options Dialog box: See the "Desktop configuration" chapter for more information.

Setup

Allows you to specify (Windows) setup parameters for your printer.

Using the Elixir HP print driver

You can use the Elixir HP Driver for optimal proof printing of Elixir forms. The benefits of using this driver are:

- increased proof-printing speed
- ability to print light, medium and dark shaded boxes using HP printer shading calls
- support of storing a form as a macro
- ability to call printer resident fonts
- produces files requiring substantially less disk space.

To use the Elixir HP print driver:

- 1. Select and drag the file to the Printers icon.**

The Print dialog box displays.

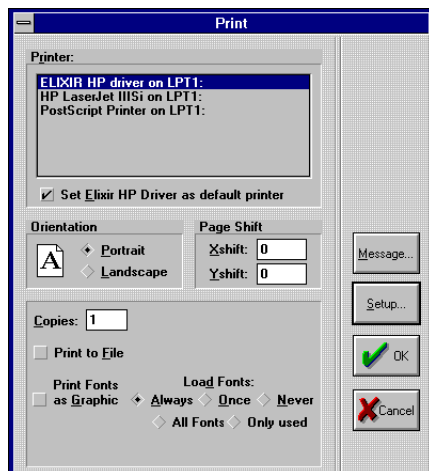


Figure LOCAL-2. Print dialog box

- 2. Select [Elixir HP Driver] and click on [Setup].**

The Elixir HP Driver dialog box displays.

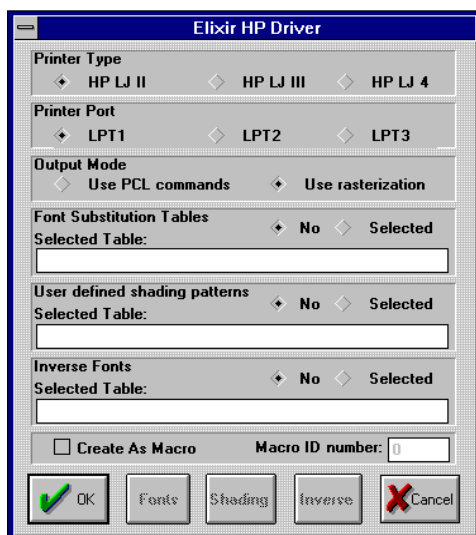


Figure LOCAL-3. Elixir HP Driver dialog box

The Elixir HP Driver dialog box contains the following options.

Printer Type

Select the type of HP LaserJet printer (II, III, or 4).

Printer Port

Select [LPT1], [LPT2], or [LPT3].

Output Mode

Select [Use PCL commands] or [Use rasterization]. The rasterization option allows you to print some embedded objects (such as circles and paths) that HP PCL may ignore, or print other objects in their place.

Font Substitution Tables

Select [No] to use printer-resident fonts, or [Selected] to enable the [Fonts] button and select a font table file from the Select Font Table dialog box. The font table name displays in the [Selected Table] option.

User defined shading patterns

Select [No] to use standard shading patterns, or [Selected] to enable the [Shading] button and select a pattern file from the Select Shading Table dialog box. The shading table name displays in the [Selected Table] option.

Inverse Fonts

Select [No] to use standard fonts, or [Selected] to enable the [Inverse] button and select an inverse font table file from the Select Inversion Table dialog box. The inverse font table name displays in the [Selected Table] option.

Create as Macro/Macro ID number

Select, then enter a value in [Macro ID number] to store your form on the printer for future use.

3. After you select your options, click on [OK].
4. To print the file, click on [OK] in the Print dialog box.

Printing non-Elixir forms

When printing non-Elixir forms from the Output or Input Forms folders, the Printer Setup dialog box displays.

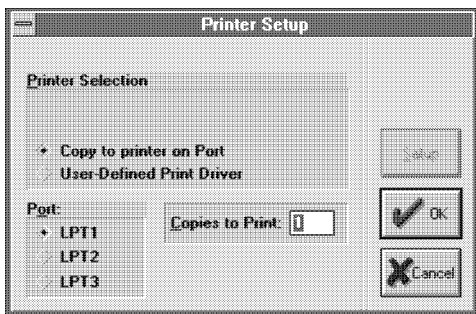


Figure LOCAL-4. Printer Setup dialog box

Copy to printer on Port

Performs a binary copy operation to the selected [Port].

User-Defined Print Driver

Allows you to specify a user-defined print driver. Click on [Setup] for specifying the driver.

Port

Allows you to specify the port as [LPT1], [LPT2], or [LPT3].

Copies to Print

The number of copies you want printed.

Setup

Displays the User Application Setup dialog box for setting up a print application. For more information on creating an application, see the "Accessing DOS files and applications" chapter.

Printing PostScript

You can print PostScript using either the Elixir PostScript converter or a Windows PostScript driver.

Printing PostScript using the Elixir converter

To print PostScript using the Elixir converter:

1. **Select [Converter Properties] from the System menu.**

The Converter Properties dialog box displays. For more information on the Converter Properties dialog box, see the "Desktop configuration" chapter.

2. **Click on the [Converter Properties] button.**

The Converter Properties Dialog box displays.

3. **Select [Use Elixir HP PCL and PostScript converters], then click on [OK] until all dialog boxes close.**

All PostScript printing will use Elixir's PostScript converter.

Printing PostScript using a Windows driver

To print PostScript using a Windows PostScript driver:

1. **Select [Converter Properties] from the System menu.**

The Converter Properties dialog box displays. For more information on the Converter Properties dialog box, see the "Desktop configuration" chapter.

2. **Click on the [Converter Properties] button.**

The Converter Properties Dialog box displays.

3. **Deselect [Use Elixir HP PCL and PostScript converters], then click on [OK] until all dialog boxes close.**

All PostScript printing will use the default Windows PostScript driver.

Printing to an XES printer

The Print Special dialog box allows you to print to an XES proof printer without using a Windows driver.

To proof print a form on an XES proof printer:

1. **Select and drag the file to the Printers icon.**

The Print Select dialog box displays.

2. Click on [Print Special].

The Print Special dialog box displays.

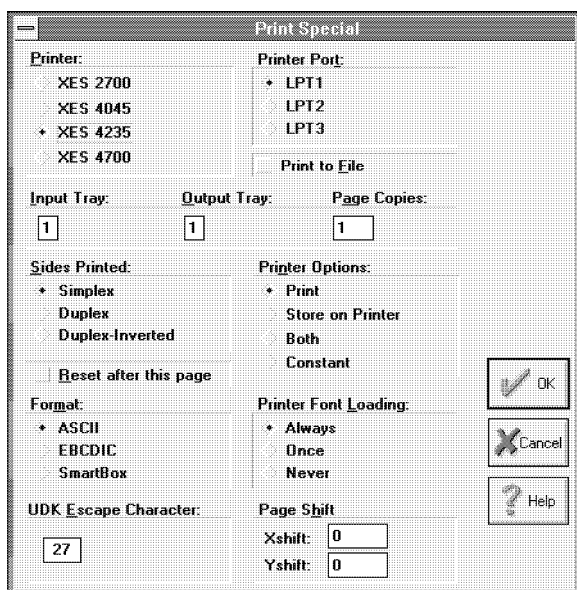


Figure LOCAL-5. Print Special dialog box

The Print Special dialog box contains the following options. Options that do not apply to your printer are grayed.

Printer

Select your XES output printer.

Printer Port

Select a printer port.

Print to File?

Creates a print file with a .PRN extension. The stem name of the file is *formname*.PRN where *formname* is the name of the currently loaded form.

The output .PRN files are written to the following directories:

<u>Printer</u>	<u>Output directory</u>
XES 2700	\\ELIXIR\PRINTS\X27PRINT
XES 4045	\\ELIXIR\PRINTS\X45PRINT
XES 4235	\\ELIXIR\PRINTS\X42PRINT
XES 4700	\\ELIXIR\PRINTS\X47PRINT

Input Tray

Enter the number of the input tray.

Output Tray

Enter the number of the output tray.

Page Copies

Enter the number of copies

Sides Printed

Select the sides for printing:

- Select [Simplex] for one-sided printing.
- Select [Duplex] for two-sided printing with the second page turned over sideways.
- Select [Duplex-Inverted] for two-sided printing with the page turned over top to bottom.

Printer Options

Select the printer options. Depending on the output printer selected, some options may be grayed out.

- [Print] sends your file to the printer.
- [Store on printer] stores your file on the printer hard disk for future use.
- [Both] prints your form and then stores it on the printer.
- [Constant] stores the form in the printer's memory until the printer is turned off. Only one page can be stored in this way.

Format

Select the format:

- [ASCII] produces ASCII output for writing to disk.
- [EBCDIC] produces EBCDIC output for Xerox printers connected to your PC via coaxial cable and a protocol converter.
- Select [SmartBox] if your PC is connected to the printer through a SmartBox or Agile protocol converter.

Printer Font Loading

When you proof print your file, all proof printer versions of the fonts used in the form must be resident on the proof printer. Select one of the following options to load fonts:

- [Always] downloads fonts every time you print a form.
- [Once] downloads fonts as soft fonts on the printer.
- [Never] uses the soft fonts previously downloaded to your printer.

Font (.FNT) files are independent of print (.PRN) files and are written to the following directories:

Printer	Output directory
XES 2700	\ELIXIR\PRINTS\X27PRINT
XES 4045	\ELIXIR\PRINTS\X45PRINT
XES 4235	\ELIXIR\PRINTS\X42PRINT
XES 4700	\ELIXIR\PRINTS\X47PRINT

UDK Escape Character

The ASCII representation of the UDK escape character used in your XES file if printing on a Xerox 4045 or 2700 printer. The default is decimal 27.

Page Shift

Shifts your proof printer output horizontally or vertically by the number of dots specified. [Xshift] moves your form horizontally, and [Yshift] moves your form vertically.

Use a negative shift value to shift the print output left or down and a positive value to shift your form up or right.

Supported printers

The following table shows the local printers you can use with Xerox Elixir Edition products. These printers allow printing Xerox, HP PCL, or PostScript resources by copying them to the Printers icon.

See the tabbed 4235 and 4700 Printers sections for information on printing to attached or remote Xerox 4235 and 4700 printers respectively.

<i>Product</i>	<i>Local Printers</i>
ElixirSys Converter for Xerox Distributed Printers	HP, PostScript, Xerox 2700, 4045, 4235, 4700
ElixirSys	HP, PostScript, Xerox 2700, 4045, 4700
HighLight Option	HP, PostScript, Xerox 2700, 4045, 4235, 4700
HighLight Plus	HP, PostScript, Xerox 2700, 4045, 4235, 4700

HighLight color printers

This section describes additional ElixSys Desktop information for Xerox HighLight Color Laser (HLC) printer users.

Supported products

The following Elixir Suite for Xerox products can utilize highlight color capabilities:

<i>Product</i>	<i>Capability</i>
HighLight Option	Adds color file conversion capability to the black-and-white ElixSys Desktop.
HighLight Plus	Includes color and black-and-white file conversion capabilities.

Converting forms

This section describes additional form conversion capabilities of HighLight Option and Plus products.

HighLight Option and Highlight Plus

The HighLight Option and HighLight Plus products allow form file conversions to and from the following formats:

Converting forms

This section describes additional form conversion capabilities of HighLight Option and Plus products.

- Elixir
- HP PCL
- PostScript
- PDF
- VIPP
- 4045 XES
- 2700 XES
- metacode
- black-and-white .FSL
- color .FSL
- black-and-white .FRM
- color .FRM
- 4075 .FSL and .FRM
- 4235 XES and 4700 XES.

Converting color forms

When converting forms to color FRM or color FSL formats, the Xerox Form Converter Options dialog box (described in the "File conversions" chapter) displays an additional [Color] button at the right of the dialog box. Clicking on the [Color] button displays the Color Form Converter Options dialog box.

The Desktop supports 32 highlight colors per form for conversions. This includes black, light-, medium-, dark, and solid highlight color, or 27 separate highlight patterns per conversion.

The following dialog box displays when converting forms with color components:

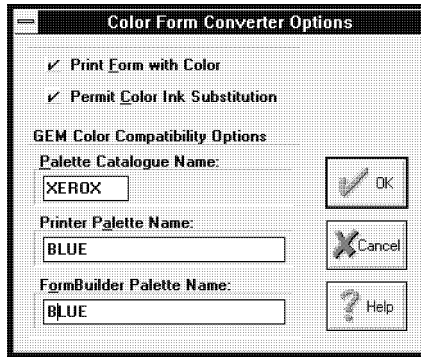


Figure HLC-1. Color Form Converter Options dialog box

Print Form with Color

When converting color forms, specifies whether you want color components printed on Xerox HighLight Color printers. When unselected, prints the form and substitutes black ink for any color components.

When printing forms with highlight color to an HP printer, you can print gray shades instead of black by selecting the [Use Elixir HP PCL and PostScript converters] option in the Converter Properties Dialog dialog box and printing using the Converter icon.

Permit Color Ink Substitution

When printing the converted form on Xerox HighLight Color printers, prints the color components of a form with the color ink available on the printer. When unselected, Xerox color forms convert with the No Substitution (NOS) command active.

Default Color Options

Displays options used only when converting an Elixir format highlight color form created with version 2.3. The Desktop uses this information to create an internal palette in the .ELX file. If a form already contains an internal palette, it ignores these options.

Palette Catalogue Name

A maximum six-character Xerox HighLight Color printer catalog name. Each catalog on the printer contains a list of palettes you can use for color printing. The 4850 and 4890 printers support the XEROX catalog; the 4890 also supports the XEROX1 catalog.

Printer Palette Name

A maximum 20-character palette name for a palette in the catalog named in the [Palette Catalog Name] option. The specified palette is used for printing. 4850 and 4890 printers support only RED, BLUE, and GREEN.

FormBuilder Palette Name

The stem name of the PC palette used to create the form.

Note that Xerox 4850 and 4890 printers support up to 64 inks. When converting forms to color FSL/FRM formats, if the number of inks exceeds 64, an error message generates and file conversion stops.

Converting fonts

This section describes additional fonts conversion capabilities of HighLight Option and Plus products, in addition to those described in the front section of this guide.

HighLight Option and Plus

HighLight Option and HighLight Plus products allow font conversions between the following formats:

- Elixir
- screen
- Windows
- HP PCL
- Xerox 4045, 2700, 3700, 9700, and 4075
- 5Word

Converting graphics

This section describes additional graphics file conversion capabilities of HighLight Option and Plus products, in addition to those described in the front section of this guide.

HighLight Option and Plus

The HighLight Option and HighLight Plus products allow graphics file conversions between the following formats:

- Elixir
- screen
- BMP
- black-and-white and color .PCX
- TIFF (.TIF)
- black-and-white and color .LGO
- black-and-white and color .IMG file formats.
- conversions to tiles in an Elixir font are also supported (see the *ElixirFont User Guide* for more information)

Elixir supports conversion of both single- and two-plane highlight images.

When you convert graphics files to Color IMG or Color LGO format, Xerox Graphic Converter Options and Extra Converter Options dialog boxes similar to those shown in the following figures also display.

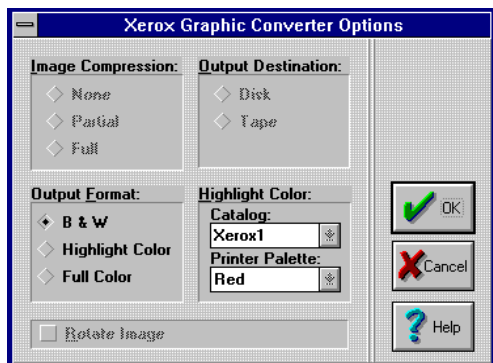


Figure HLC-2. Xerox Graphic Converter Options dialog box

The Xerox Graphic Converter Options dialog box contains the following options:

Image Compression

For conversions to [Color IMG] format only: [Partial] compresses duplicate lines and blank (null) lines, [Full] compresses duplicate lines, blank lines, and optimizes for white space. [None] does not compress files.

Output Destination

Select [Disk] or [Tape] as your output medium. If you select [Tape] and your PC does not have a tape unit connected, the converted file writes to hard disk without issuing an error message.

Highlight Color

Select [Catalog] to view a collection of available printer palettes or [Printer Palette] to view actual output color (e.g., Red) to be used for the image.

Rotate Image

For conversions to IMG formats: All Elixiform screen graphics are in portrait orientation. If any graphics are on a landscape form, Elixiform automatically rotates the graphics by 90 degrees when proof printing. Similarly, selecting this option rotates graphics by 90 degrees to allow correct printing of a landscape graphic on a portrait form.

Grayed/dimmed options do not apply to the conversion.

The Extra Converter Options dialog box displays after you click on <OK>.

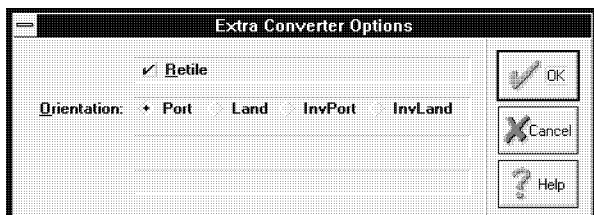


Figure HLC-3. Extra Converter Options dialog box

The Extra Converter Options dialog box contains the following options:

Orientation

Select [Port] for portrait, [Land] for landscape, [InvPort] for inverse portrait, or [InvLand] for inverse landscape format fonts.

Retile

Select to retile the input file (required if you modified or converted the graphic for the first time). This creates a .TXT file which tells the Converter whether the output is either .IMG or .LGO.

Paper sizes

Xerox 4850 and 4890 HighLight Color printers support printing on 8.5 x 11 inches, 8.5 x 14 inches, and A4 (8.27 x 11.69 inches) paper.

Restrictions and limitations

When converting an Elixir-format form that includes adjacent boxes filled with the same ink to an FRM format, the border area between boxes may show an extra line. For correct conversion, first convert the Elixir form to FSL format, then compile it on a Xerox 4850 or 4890 printer to produce an FRM.

4135 printers

This tabbed section describes additional ElixSys Desktop information for Xerox 4135 Laser Printing System printer users.

Supported products

You can use the Xerox 4135 printer with the following Elixir Suite for Xerox products:

- ElixSys Desktop
- HighLight Plus/Option.

Supported functions

You can use the following functions, provided with your Desktop product, when using Xerox 4135 printers:

- large paper sizes (A3 and 11x17 inches)
- multiple impositions

Printing 11 x 17 inch and A3 pages

Xerox 4135 printers support printing on paper sizes 8 x 10 inches to 11 x 17 inches, including A3 (11.69 x 16.54 inches) and A4 (8.27 x 11.69 inches) paper.

Printing 2-up on large paper sizes

If you are using Elixiform to create 11 x 17 inch or A3 forms for printing on 4135 printers, select portrait orientation when creating a portrait form, or landscape orientation when creating a landscape form (Elixiform automatically compensates for the printer rotation).

When printing 2-up on 11 x 17 inch or A3 landscape orientation pages, you must perform additional steps before using ElixImposer to submit print jobs. See the tabbed "4235 printers" section for information on using ElixImposer.

Short edge feed for large paper sizes

When creating forms with one dimension greater than 14.33 inches, paper feed for a 4135 (or 4635) printer is short edge first. When no dimension exceeds 14.33 inches, you can feed paper either edge first. When using continuous feed printers, you must feed paper long edge first.

You must have all orientations of each resource (fonts and images) available before converting. You can create the different orientations using ElixGraphics or the Desktop Converter.

To generate different orientation using ElixGraphics, rotate the graphic in ElixGraphics and save it with a name which uses the sixth letter to indicate orientation. Convert these .LP3 files to .LGO or .IMG format before form conversion.

To generate different orientations of .IMG graphics using the Desktop Converter, convert the graphic to .IMG format with the [Rotate Image] option selected, then locate the output file in the *drive:\ELIXIR\PICS\IMGOUT* directory and rename the output .IMG file to indicate its orientation.

To generate different orientations of .LGO graphics using the Desktop converters, convert the graphic to .LGO format with the [Orientation] option selected, then locate the output file in the *drive:\ELIXIR\PICS\LGOUT* directory and rename the output .LGO file to indicate its orientation.

If you plan to use the new graphics orientations in Elixiform, you must reconvert the .IMG or .LGO files back to Elixir format.

Portrait/landscape font mapping tables

You can use the P2LFORMATS.LST and INVFORMATS.LST mapping tables in your *drive:\ELIXIR* directory to maintain corresponding portrait to landscape/landscape to portrait (P2LFORMATS.LST) and portrait or landscape resources to inverse portrait or inverse landscape resources (INVFORMATS.LST).

However, if all resources used in forms to be fed short edge have six-letter filenames with the sixth letter as the orientation indicator (P, L, I or J), then P2LFORMATS.LST does not need to contain these resources; the conversion process will automatically map the six-letter filename with orientation indicator to a six-letter filename with the opposite orientation.

Following is an example of P2LFORMATS.LST and developing a portrait 11X17 inch form using resources Font1, Font3, Font5, HE10BP and Graph1:

```
Font1  Font2
Font3  Font4
Font5  Font6
Graph1 Graph2
```

Font1 (portrait) maps to Font2 (landscape)
Font3 (portrait) maps to Font4 (landscape)
Font5 (portrait) maps to Font6 (landscape)
Graph1 (portrait) maps to Graph2 (landscape)

Note that no entry is required for HE10BP because it conforms to standard naming convention (last letter is the orientation indicator); the Converter will automatically map HE10BP to HE10BL.

Inverse font mapping table

If your print job includes printing in tumble mode, edit the INVFONT.S.LST file (an ASCII file that you create in the *drive:\ELIXIR* directory).

INVFONTS.LST contains pairs of Landscape to Inverse-Landscape and Portrait to Inverse-Portrait stem names for each font on the Elixir-format form you want to print. Each line consists of the stem name of the landscape (or portrait) font, a space, and the stem name of the same font in inverse landscape (or inverse portrait) orientation. For example:

HE07NL	HE07NJ
HE08OL	HE08OJ
HE12NP	HE12NI
HE12BP	HE12BI

The suffix "P" represents portrait, "L" represents landscape, "I" represents inverse portrait, and "J" represents inverse landscape font names.

Font conversions

Before sending your print job to a Xerox 4135 printer, use the Desktop to convert the Elixir-format fonts used in your forms to Xerox 9700 fonts (used by Xerox distributed printers).

4235 printers

This section describes additional Desktop information for Xerox 4235 Laser Printing System distributed printer users.

Supported products

You can use the following Xerox Elixir Edition products to create multiple-page and multiple-imposition documents for printing on the Xerox 4235:

- ElixirSys Converter for Xerox Distributed Printers
- ElixirSys Desktop for HighLight Color
- ElixirForm/ElixirSys.

The ElixirSys Desktop supports the creation of multiple Elixir form print files called *jobs*. A job includes formatting information for the print run and for multiple individual pages. After defining a job, you can send it to a Xerox distributed printer (such as the Xerox 4235).

Jobs folders

The Jobs folder corresponds to the *drive:\ELIXIR\JOBS* directory and contains the subordinate folders shown in the following figure.

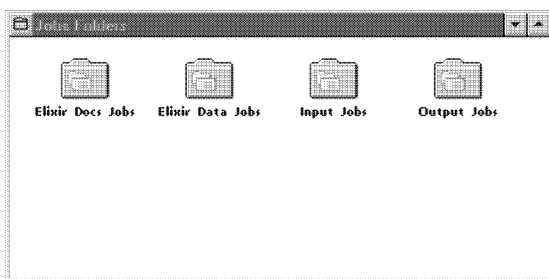


Figure 4235-1. Jobs folders window

Elixir Docs Jobs folder

The Elixir Docs Jobs folder corresponds to the *drive:\ELIXIR\DOCS\DOCLIST* directory. Opening the Elixir Docs Jobs folder displays the Elixir Document Jobs window shown in the following figure.

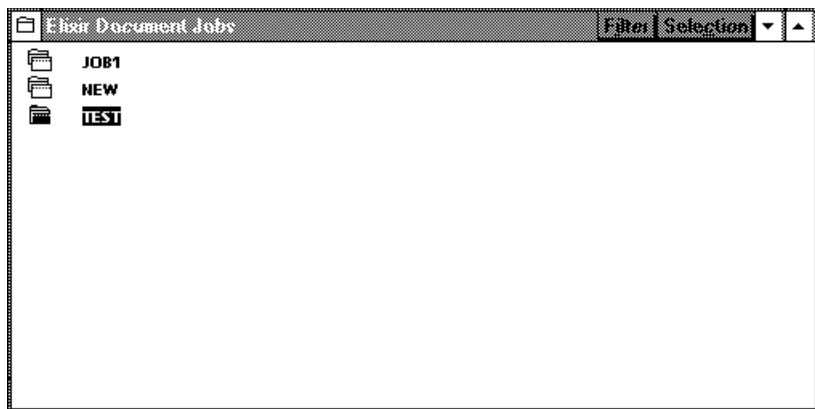


Figure 4235-2. Elixir Document Jobs window

The Elixir Documents Jobs window displays a list of Elixir job (.DAT) files. An Elixir job file is an ASCII file that contains a list of Elixir form files and print ticket information for the individual form files.

To convert a .DAT file to a new application format, copy the file to the Converter icon. The Application Converter Options dialog box shown in the following figure displays. Select an available Output application, then click on [OK].

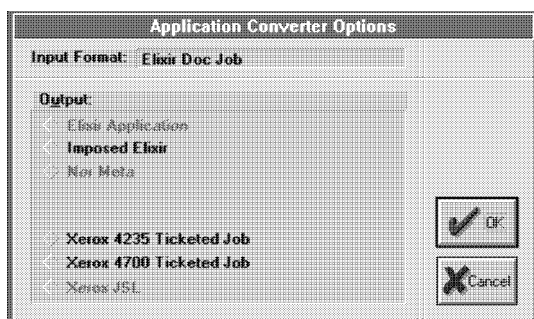


Figure 4235-3. Application Converter Options dialog box

Open an Elixir job icon to display the Job window, shown in the following figure. This window displays a Job Print Ticket icon and a number of Elixir form icons.

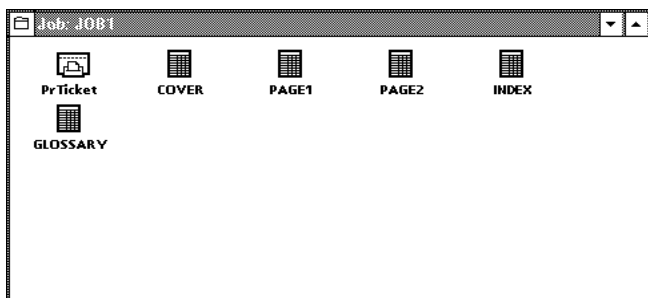


Figure 4235-4. Job window

You can use the mouse to move form icons to change their order in the window. The left-to-right order of the forms is the order of the print run.

Job print ticket



Open the print ticket icon, (PrTicket), in the Job: window to display the Page Imposition Options dialog box, shown in the following figure. Options in this dialog box control page formatting for the job.

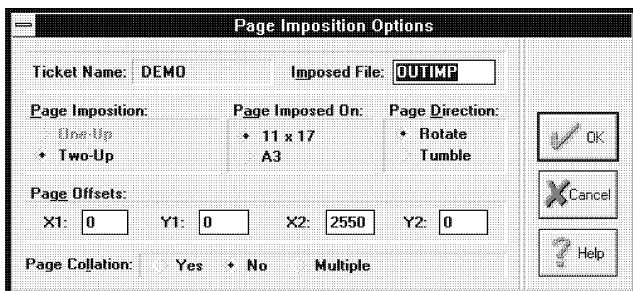


Figure 4235-5. Page Imposition Options dialog box

The Page Imposition Options dialog box contains the following options:

Ticket Name

The stem name of the document (.DAT) file (display only).

Imposed File

For [2-up] **Page Imposition**, a new .ELX file for each double-imposed page generates in the default Elixir forms directory. This option specifies the stem name (up to 8-characters) of the first imposed page (the default stem name is OUTIMP.ELX). For subsequent double-imposed pages in a job, the program uses the following naming convention:

The name for the first page of a converted file retains the first 8-characters specified for **Imposed File**. For pages 2 through 9, digits 2 through 9 replace the right character of the output file name. For pages 10 through 99, digits 10 through 99 replace the two right characters of the output file name. A similar naming convention applies to pages 100 through 999.

Page Offsets

Specifies the page offset values (in dots) for each of the two imposed pages measured in dots from the top left corner of the output page. Specify the [X] (horizontal) offset and the [Y] (vertical) offset for both pages.

For example, to impose two portrait 8.5 x 11 inch forms on a landscape 11 x 17 inch page, you would specify the following offsets:

Page 1: X offset = 0 , Y offset = 0

Page 2: X offset = 2550, Y offset = 0

Note: 8.5 inches x 300 dpi = 2550

Page Imposed On

Specifies the page size [11 x 17] or [A3], if you selected [2-up] **Page Imposition**. For [1-up] **Page Imposition**, this option is disabled.

Page Direction

Specifies the rotation of the page when printing in Duplex mode and [2-up] **Page Imposition**. [Rotate] prints the reverse side of a page by turning the paper left-to-right, like pages in a book. [Tumble] prints the reverse side of a page by turning the paper vertically, like a top-bound notebook.

Page Collation

For [2-up] **Page Imposition** and [Duplex] **Sides Printed**, [Yes] prints page 1 on the right side of the output sheet with page 2 on the reverse, and page 4 on the left of the output sheet with page 3 on the reverse. Folding each output sheet down the center results in a four-page booklet. [No] (the default setting) imposes two forms on the front side and two forms on the back side of the page. [Multiple] allows you to cut the output print stack to create multiple versions of the same form.

After you click on [OK] in the Page Imposition Option dialog box, the Job Print Ticket dialog box shown in

the following figure displays. Options in this dialog box control the overall printing parameters for the job.

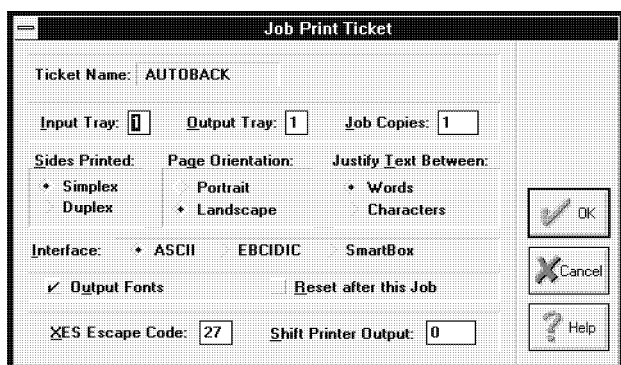


Figure 4235-6. Job Print Ticket dialog box

The Job Print Ticket dialog box contains the following options:

Ticket Name

Specifies the stem name of the document (.DAT) file (display only).

Copies of Job

Specifies the number of copies to print.

Input Tray Number

Specifies the input tray number of the printer (default is 1). Use tray 3 on the Xerox 4235 printer for 11 x 17 inch paper.

Output Tray Number

Specifies the output tray number of the printer (display only).

Sides Printed

[Simplex] specifies one-sided printing of all pages, [Duplex] specifies two-sided printing of all pages. See [Sides Printed] in the Page Print Ticket dialog box.

Page Orientation

Specifies the orientation of the output page as [Portrait] or [Landscape]. For [2-up] **Page Imposition** on an [11 x 17] page, specify [Landscape] to print two portrait forms side-by-side.

Justify Between

Specifies the type of text justification. [Words] (the default) justifies text by adding spaces between words. [Characters] justifies text by adding spaces between characters. This option produces more readable text but takes longer to convert.

Interface

Select [ASCII] (the default), [EBCDIC], or [Smart Box]. Select [ASCII] to produce ASCII output for writing to disk. Select [EBCDIC] to produce EBCDIC output for Xerox printers connected to your PC via coaxial cable and a protocol converter. Select [Smart Box] if your PC connects to the printer through a Smartbox or Agile protocol converter.

Output fonts

Selected (the default) or unselected. Select to convert fonts and include them in the converted data stream. Leaving unselected does not convert fonts. Leave unselected if you previously converted the fonts in your Elixir forms and downloaded to your printer. Leaving this option unselected saves considerable time when converting large documents.

Reset after Job

Sends a printer reset command to the printer after a job.

XES Escape Code

Displays a window showing the current XES escape code in decimal notation and allows you to specify anew escape code from 0 - 255. Normally the XES escape code value is decimal 27.

Shift Printer Output

Displays a window showing the current shift value and allows you to specify a new shift value. A positive value shifts print output to the right, and a negative value shifts print output to the left by the number of dots specified. The default is 0.

Page print ticket

Open any form icon in the Job: window (shown previously) to display the Page Print Ticket dialog box, shown in the following figure, for each form.

A page print ticket specifies some of the parameters that control the printing of a single form (page), such as number of copies, duplex or simplex, and input tray number.

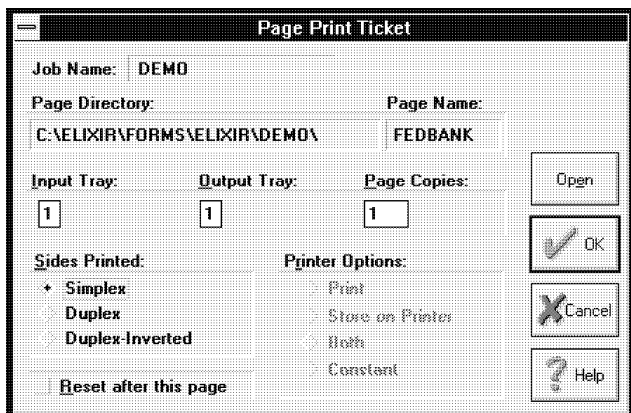


Figure 4235-7. Page Print Ticket dialog box

The Page Print Ticket dialog box contains the following options:

Job Name

Specifies the job (.DAT) file name (display only).

Page Directory

Specifies the path of the Elixir form file (display only).

Page Name

Specifies the page (Elixir form) name (display only).

Input Tray

Specifies the input tray number of the printer (default is 1). This option overrides the input tray number specified in the Job Print Ticket dialog box except when [2-up] imposition is specified.

Output Tray

Specifies the output tray number of the printer (default is 1).

Page Copies

Specifies the number of copies of the selected form (page). This option overrides the number of copies specified in the Job Print Ticket dialog box for the current page except when [2-up] imposition is specified.

Sides printed

[Simplex] specifies one-sided printing, [Duplex] specifies two-sided printing with the second side printed by turning the page sideways, [Duplex Invert] specifies two-sided printing with the second side printed by turning the page top-to-bottom. [Duplex Inverted] overrides the simplex or duplex setting specified in the Job Print Ticket dialog box for the current page.

Printer Options

[Print] sends your file to the printer, [Store on Printer] stores your file on the printer hard disk for future printing, and [Both] prints your form and then stores it on the printer hard disk, [Constant] stores a single form in memory (for use with 2700/4045 printers which do not have a hard disk and cannot store a form).

Reset after this Page

Sends a printer reset command to the printer after the current page.

Open

Starts Elixiform and loads the current form for viewing or editing.

Note that when adding a new form (page) to an existing job, the Input Tray, Output Tray and Sides Printed options default to the values specified in the job print ticket. You can open the page print ticket to change these options if desired.

Output Jobs folder

The Output Jobs folder corresponds to the *drive:\ELIXIR\DOCS* and *drive:\ELIXIR\JOBS* directories. Opening the Output Jobs folder from the Jobs window (shown previously) displays the Jobs Output Folders window shown in the following figure.

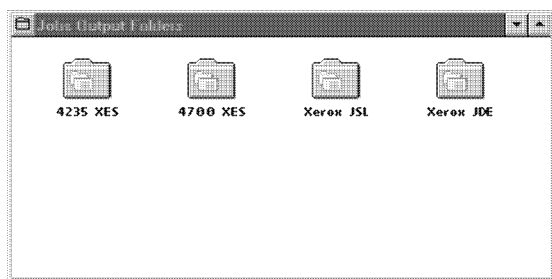


Figure 4235-8. Jobs Output Folders window

The Jobs Output Folders window displays the 4235 XES job folder and other output folders. The 4235 XES folder corresponds to the *drive:\ELIXIR\DOCS\UDK42OUT*.PRN* subdirectory.

The 4235 XES folder contains files which you can print on Xerox 4235 printers.

Creating a 4235 XES job

To specify and print one or more jobs on the 4235 XES printer, use the following general procedures. These procedures differ from those for print jobs on other printers because:

- the large page sizes 4235 printers support allow multiple forms to be imposed on an output page
- the large page sizes also require additional steps for creating rotated fonts
- multiple-page documents require more information than single-page forms

Creating an Elixir Job (.DAT) file

To create multiple-impositions (more than one form on a large output page), or multiple-page documents, you must first create a .DAT file (Elixir Docs job file). This file contains a list of individual form files and the printing parameters.

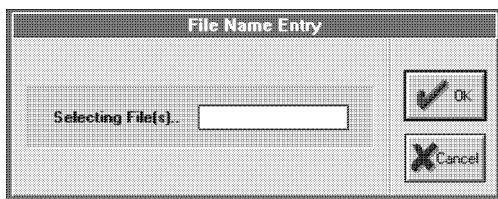


Figure 4235-9. File Name Entry dialog box

Open the Desktop Jobs folder, then the Elixir Docs Jobs folder, and in it create a new file by selecting [New] from the **File** menu. The Enter File Name dialog box shown in the following figure displays.

Enter a name for the new job file and click on [OK]. In the Elixir Documents Jobs window, open the new job file to display a Job: window which contains a Print Ticket icon. The following figure shows a new .DAT file.



Figure 4235-10. New .DAT file

To create a multi-page document, open the Elixir Forms folder, select and copy form files to the Jobs folder, then to the Elixir Docs Jobs folder, then to the desired .DAT file.

Use the mouse to arrange the forms in the order you want them to print.

To specify printing parameters for the entire job, open the Job Print Ticket icon and specify the appropriate parameters. (See the “Job print ticket” section in this chapter for information on the Page Imposition and Job Print Ticket dialog box options.)

To specify printing parameters for each page, open the form icons in the Job: window. (See the “Page print ticket” section in this chapter for information on the Page Print Ticket dialog box options). Note that if you add pages (forms) to the job, the Input Tray, Output Tray, and Sides Printed options assume the values specified in the job print ticket.

Paper sizes

Xerox 4235 printers support printing on 8.5 x 11 inches, 8.5 x 14 inches, 11 x 17 inches, A4 (8.27 x 11.69 inches) and A3 (11.69 x 16.54 inches) paper. If your print job includes 11 x 17 inch or A3 pages, follow the steps described in the next section to edit font mapping tables before printing your job.

Portrait/landscape font mapping tables

You can use the FONTS.LST and INV FONTS.LST mapping tables in your *drive:\ELIXIR* directory to maintain corresponding portrait to landscape/landscape to portrait (P2L FONTS.LST) and portrait or landscape resources to inverse portrait or inverse landscape resources (INV FONTS.LST).

However, if all resources used in forms to be fed short edge have six-letter filenames with the sixth letter as the orientation indicator (P, L, I or J), then P2L FONTS.LST does not need to contain these resources; the conversion process will automatically map the six letter filename with orientation indicator to a six letter filename with the opposite orientation.

Following is an example of P2LFORMATS.LST and developing a portrait 11X17 inch form using resources Font1, Font3, Font5, HE10BP and Graph1:

```
Font1  Font2
Font3  Font4
Font5  Font6
Graph1 Graph2
```

```
Font1  (portrait) maps to Font2 (landscape)
Font3  (portrait) maps to Font4 (landscape)
Font5  (portrait) maps to Font6 (landscape)
Graph1 (portrait) maps to Graph2 (landscape)
```

Note that no entry is required for HE10BP because it conforms to standard naming convention (last letter is the orientation indicator); the Converter will automatically map HE10BP to HE10BL.

Inverse font mapping table

If your print job includes printing in tumble mode, edit the INVFORMATS.LST file (INVFORMATS.LST is an ASCII file that you create in the *drive:\ELIXIR* directory).

INVFORMATS.LST contains pairs of Landscape to Inverse-Landscape and Portrait to Inverse-Portrait stem names for each font on the Elixir-format form you want to print. Each line consists of the stem name of the landscape (or portrait) font, a space, and the stem name of the same font in inverse landscape (or inverse portrait) orientation. For example:

```
HE07NL      HE07NJ
HE08OL      HE08OJ
HE12NP      HE12NI
HE12BP      HE12BI
```

The suffix "P" represents portrait, "L" represents landscape, "I" represents inverse portrait, and "J" represents inverse landscape font names.

Font conversions

Before sending your print job to a Xerox distributed printer, convert the Elixir-format fonts used in your forms to Xerox 2700 or 3700 fonts (the Xerox 4235 can use 2700 and 3700 fonts; you can load 3700 fonts on the printer only through the printer floppy drive).

Printing a job

To print an Elixir job (.DAT) file, convert it to a printer-ready (.PRN) file and print it on a remote 4235 printer, or print it directly on a 4235 printer connected to your PC. See the “Job print ticket” section in this chapter for information.

Printing on a local 4235 printer

To print a job to a locally attached Xerox 4235 distributed printer, select and copy the Elixir job (.DAT) file(s) to the Printers icon. The Printer Setup dialog box displays.

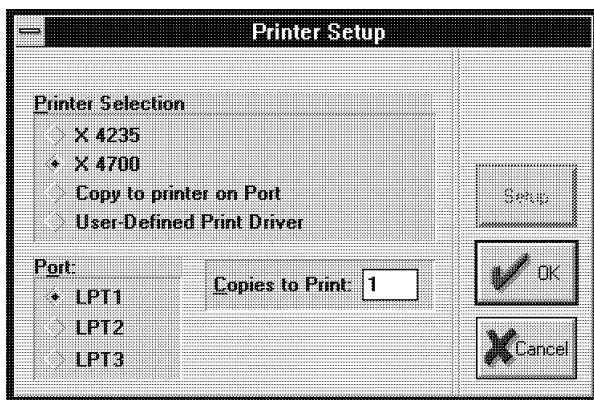


Figure 4235-11. Printer Setup dialog box

Select [X 4235] to proof print on a Xerox 4235 printer.

Select the port (LPT1, LPT2, or LPT3), and the number of copies of the job you want printed.

To print on a 4235, it must first be specified as a printer in the Windows Control Panel (see your Windows documentation for more information).

Examples - creating 4235 XES jobs

This section contains brief tutorials for creating and printing 4235 XES jobs.

Creating fonts

Create Elixir versions of the fonts you want to use on your form by converting existing fonts from an input folder such as Outline Fonts or creating new fonts using Elixifont.

To create and print 11 x 17 or A3 forms, both portrait and landscape versions of each font are required. See the "Portrait/landscape font mapping tables" section in this chapter for more information.

P2LFORMATS.LST file

If printing multiple-imposed files on 11 x 17 inch or A3 paper, edit the P2LFORMATS.LST file.

The P2LFORMATS.LST file contains pairs of Portrait to Landscape and Inverse-Portrait to Inverse-Landscape stem names of each font on the Elixir-format form.

INVFONTS.LST file

If printing in tumble mode, you must create the INVFONTS.LST file.

Edit the INVFONTS.LST file and add pairs of the Landscape to Inverse-Landscape and Portrait to Inverse-Portrait stem names for each font on the Elixir-format form you want to print.

Converting fonts

To use Elixir-format fonts to print forms on 4235 printers, convert them to Xerox 2700 (or Xerox 3700) and Screen font formats as follows:

- 1. Open the Elixir Fonts folder and select the font files you want to convert.**
- 2. Copy the font files to the Converter icon. In the displayed dialog box, select [2700] or [3700] and [Screen] output formats and convert the fonts.**

Creating forms

When the converted fonts, P2LFORMATS.LST, and INVFORMATS.LST files are ready, use Elixiform Editor to compose forms. See the *Elixiform User Guide* for information about creating forms.

Creating multiple impositions or multiple-page documents

The following procedures describe how to create a .DAT file, create a multiple-page document, and specify other appropriate information for single or multiple-imposed pages.

Creating a .DAT file

To create a .DAT file, follow these steps:

- 1. Open the Desktop Jobs folder, then the Elixir Docs Jobs folder.**
- 2. Create a new .DAT file by selecting [New] from the File menu.**
- 3. Specify a name for the new .DAT file in the displayed dialog box.**
- 4. Open the new Job file and delete the sample file named PAGE.**

5. Open the Elixir Forms folder (in the Desktop Forms folder icon) and select the forms you want in the multi-page document.
6. Copy the selected form(s) to the Jobs icon, then to the Elixir Docs Jobs folder, then to the new job you created.

Creating a multiple-page document

After you create a .DAT file, use the following steps to produce a multiple-page document.

1. Open the .DAT file icon in the Elixir Document Jobs folder and use the mouse to arrange the form icons in the order in which you want them to print.
2. Open any form icon to display the Page Print Ticket dialog box for the form and specify the formatting parameters.
3. Open the Job Print Ticket icon and specify in the Page Imposition Options dialog box the options you want for the job, then click on [OK]:

[Page Imposition:] 1-Up
 [Page Direction:] Rotate or Tumble (if
 using Duplex mode printing)
 [Page Collation:] No, Yes, or Multiple

4. Click on [OK] and in the Job Print Ticket dialog box, specify further options you want for the job:

[Job Copies] 1
 [Input Tray] 1
 [Output Tray] 2
 [Sides Printed] Simplex
 [Page Orientation] Landscape
 [Justify Text Between] Words
 [Interface] ASCII
 Select [Output Fonts]
 Leave [Reset after Job] unselected
 [XES Escape Code] 027
 [Shift Printer Output] 0

Creating multiple-impositions

After you create a .DAT file and define the pages, follow these steps to specify the Job Print Ticket information to create double-imposed pages (two portrait 8.5 x 11 inch forms side-by-side on one 11 x 17 inch page).

1. **Open the .DAT file icon in the Elixir Document Jobs folder and use the mouse to arrange the form icons in the order in which you want them to print.**
2. **Open the Job Print Ticket icon in an open Job: window to display the Page Imposition Options dialog box.**
3. **Select the following options for printing two 8.5 x 11 inch forms side-by-side on 11 x 17 inch paper:**

Page Imposition: 2-up
Page Offsets: X1=0, Y1=0, X2=2550, Y2=0
Page Imposed on: 11x17
Page Direction: Rotate or Tumble
Page Collation: No, Yes, or Multiple

4. **Click on [OK], and select the following options from the displayed Job Print Ticket dialog box:**

Input Tray Number: 3
Sides Printed: Simplex or Duplex
Page Orientation: Landscape

5. **Close the open Job: window (.DAT file).**

Printing on a local 4235 printer

To print a job on a local Xerox 4235 XES printer connected to your PC, follow these steps:

1. **Copy the .DAT file from the Elixir Document Jobs window to the Printers icon.**
2. **In the displayed Print dialog box, select [X 4235] as the printer selection**

If you print 2-up pages, a number of imposed .ELX files are created in the default forms directory (see the Job print ticket section in this chapter). To conserve disk space, you may want to delete these files after printing your job.

ElixImposer

This section describes ElixImposer, an application which combines (imposes) two Elixir forms on one page. When used with Xerox distributed printers that support large page sizes, ElixImposer has the effect of imposing multiple pages on a single print sheet.

You can run ElixImposer from the ElixSys Desktop by dragging selected multi-page documents in the Jobs Folder to the Converter icon.

This displays the ElixImposer main screen shown in the following figure.

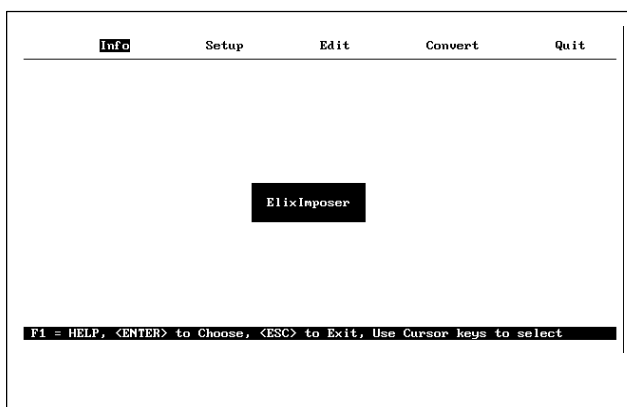


Figure 4235-12. ElixImposer main screen

Menu options

The menu options are **Info**, **Setup**, **Edit**, **Convert**, and **Quit**. Use the left and right arrow keys to move the highlight bar to the menu item you want and press <Enter> to select it. To exit a menu item press <Esc>.

Info

Displays a window with ElixImposer information, including the version number. Have the version number on hand if you contact your Xerox customer support representative.

Setup

Displays a pull-down menu with additional options, shown in the following figure. To select an option from the pull-down menu, use the up and down arrow keys to move the highlight bar to the option you want and press <Enter>.

Selecting some options in **Setup** displays a window in which you can enter new information, or just press <Enter> to retain previous information. Other **Setup** options are toggles, which you can switch by pressing <Enter>.

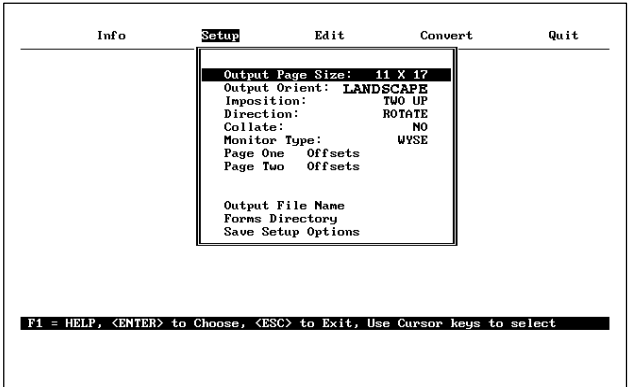


Figure 4235-13. Setup Menu

The Setup menu contains the following options:

Output Page Size

Allows you to select an [11 x 17] or [A3] output page size.

For 11 x 17 inch and A3 output page sizes, edit the P2LFFONTS.LST file in the *drive:\ELIXIR* directory, as described in the "Portrait/landscape font mapping table" section of this chapter.

Output Orientation

The output orientation for imposing is [Landscape] only.

Imposition

Select the number of forms you want imposed on each side of the output page: [One-up] or [Two-up].

Direction

For duplex printing (which you specify when creating a job ticket from the Desktop), [Rotate] prints the reverse side of a page by rotating the paper left to right, like pages in a book; [Tumble] prints the reverse side of a page by turning the paper vertically, like a top-bound notebook

Collate

For **Imposition** set to [Two-up], [Yes] prints page 1 on the right side of the output sheet with page 2 on the reverse, and page 4 on the left of the output sheet with page 3 on the reverse. Folding each output sheet down the center results in a four-page booklet. [No] (the default) imposes two forms on the front side and two forms on the back side of the page. [Multiple] allows you to cut the output print stack to create multiple versions of the same form.

Monitor Type

Allows you to select the following monitors: [Wyse] 15-inch, [VGA], [SuperVGA], and [Sigma] L-View.

Page Offsets

Sets page offset values (in dots) for each of the pages to be imposed (specified by [Imposition]). The offsets are measured in dpi from the top left corner of the output page.

The program prompts you to first specify the new X (horizontal) offset, then the new Y (vertical) offset for each page.

For example, to impose two portrait 8.5 x 11 forms on a landscape 11 x 17 page, you specify the following offsets:

Page 1: X offset = 0 , Y offset = 0

Page 2: X offset = 2550, Y offset = 0.

Note: 8.5 inches x 300 dpi = 2550

Output File Name

The stem name of the output form file which generates in the default Forms Directory with a .ELX extension. The default is IMP.ELX

Forms Directory

The directory in which files to be imposed and the output form file reside. The default is *drive:\ELIXIR\FORMS\ELIXIR\DEMO*.

Save Setup Options

Saves your **Setup** menu selections to disk.

Edit

Press <Enter> to display a window showing .DAT files in *drive:\ELIXIR\DOCS\DOCLIST*. The following figure shows example Form list .DAT files.

Use the cursor keys to move the highlight bar to any .DAT file and press <Enter> to edit the file, or select NEWFILE (the first entry) to create a new .DAT file.

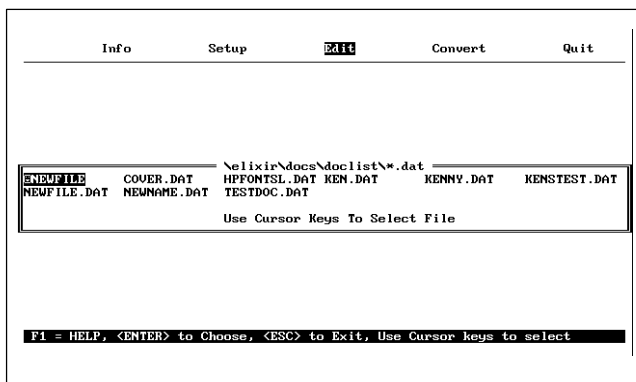


Figure 4235-14. Form list (.DAT) files

Editing an existing .DAT file

Select a displayed .DAT file and press <ENTER> to display the file contents. The following figure shows the contents of a .DAT file created in the ElixImposer.

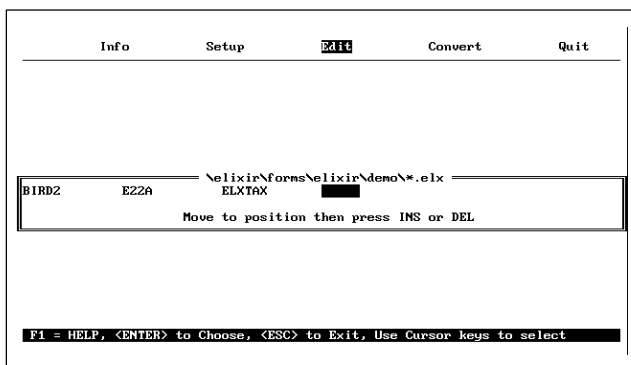


Figure 4235-15. Contents of a .DAT file

The order of the file contents is left to right on descending rows. Editing a .DAT file is limited to adding Elixir form file names.

Use the key to delete highlighted entries. Use the <INS> key to add Elixir form file names. A window showing the contents of the directory specified by **Form Directory** displays, from which you can make selections.

To create a new .DAT file, select Newfile in the form list file window and press <ENTER>. The program prompts you to specify a new file name (without the extension). ElixImposer creates the file (with a .DAT extension) and displays the contents (which is empty). You can now use the <INS> and keys to add and delete Elixir form list files to the file you created.

Convert

Combines the Elixir forms specified in the form list file you selected and creates a new form file(s) with the name specified by **Output File Name**. The new file(s) writes to the directory that contains the input form files.

Quit

Ends the ElixImposer session and returns to DOS.

ELX2XES

This section describes ELX2XES, an Elixir product that converts Elixir-format form files to Xerox Escape Sequence (XES) and HP PCL data streams.

After file conversion, you can send the converted data streams through your PC parallel port to an attached Xerox Distributed Printer such as the Xerox 2700, 4045, 4235, or to an HP printer; or written to your hard disk for subsequent processing.

ELX2XES also supports XES (and HP PCL) commands that control the format of the print output (such as duplex printing, multiple copies, and paper tray selection). By creating simple ASCII files and using ELX2XES, users with libraries of Elixir-format form files can easily create complex print jobs on a PC and convert and print the jobs in a single operation.

Starting ELX2XES

ELX2XES can run transparently through the Desktop Converter or Printers icon or as a stand-alone package.

To run ELX2XES stand-alone, access the DOS prompt from your Windows session, change your current directory to *drive:\ELIXIR*, and type:

ELX2XES <Enter>

The ELX2XES main screen displays as shown in the following figure.

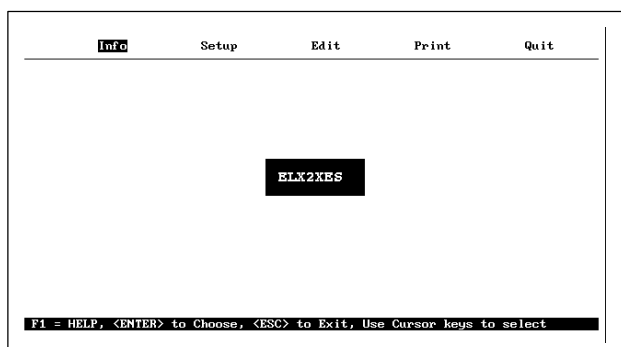


Figure 4235-16. ELX2XES main menu

Menu options

The menu options are **Info**, **Setup**, **Edit**, **Convert**, and **Quit**. Use the left and right arrow keys to move the highlight bar to the menu item you want and press <Enter> to select it.

Info

Displays a window with ELX2XES information, including the version number. Have the version number on hand if you contact your Xerox customer support representative.

Setup

Displays a pull-down menu with additional options, shown in the following figure. To select an option from the pull-down menu, use the up and down arrow keys to move the highlight bar to the option you want and press <Enter>.

Selecting some options in **Setup** displays a window, in which you can enter new information, or just press <Enter> to retain the previous information. Other **Setup** options are toggles, which you can switch by pressing <Enter>.

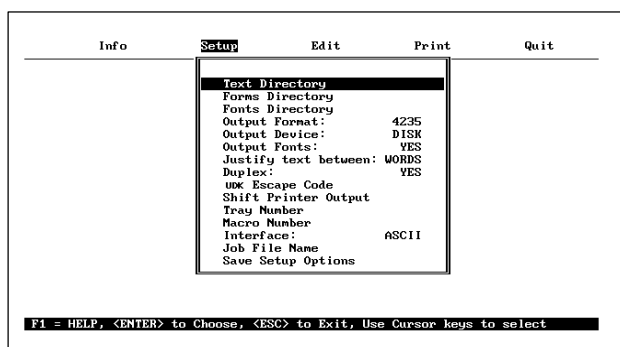


Figure 4235-17. Setup menu

The Setup menu contains the following options:

Text Directory

Displays a window showing the previous form list file directory, and allows you to specify a new form list file directory. The form list directory contains .DAT form list files and job files. The default form list file directory is: *drive:\ELIXIR\DOCS\DOCLIST*.

Forms Directory

Displays a window showing the previous directory containing Elixir .ELX form files, and allows you to specify a new forms directory. The default forms directory is: *drive:\ELIXIR\FORMS\ELIXIR\DEMO*.

Fonts Directory

Displays a window showing the previous directory containing Elixir screen (.FNT) and width (.WDT) font files, and allows you to specify a new fonts directory. The default screen fonts directory is: *drive:\ELIXIR\FONTS\SCREEN\DEMO*.

Output Format

Press <Enter> to select Xerox [4235], [4045], and [2700] printer output or [HP] for PCL printer output (see also [Output Device]).

Output Device

Specifies the output destination of converted files. Press <Enter> to select print output to the [LPT1], [LPT2], or [LPT3] ports on your PC, or [DISK] to write print output to your hard disk.

Output Fonts

Press <Enter> to toggle between [YES] and [NO]. [YES] converts fonts and includes them in the converted data stream. [NO] does not convert fonts. Use [NO] if you previously converted the fonts in your Elixir forms and downloaded to your printer. Selecting [NO] saves considerable time when converting large documents.

Please note that ELX2XES automatically detects repeated fonts and downloads them only once during a session (a session is the duration that ELX2XES is active and terminates when you exit ELX2XES and return to the DOS prompt).

Justify text between

Specifies the type of text justification. [WORDS] justifies text by adding spaces between words. [CHARS] justifies text by adding spaces between characters. This option produces more readable text but takes longer to convert.

Duplex

Press <Enter> to toggle between [YES] and [NO]. [YES] produces duplex (two-sided) output. [NO] produces simplex (one-sided) output.

UDK Escape Code

Displays a window showing the previous XES escape code in decimal format and allows you to specify a new escape code between 0 - 255. Normally the XES escape code value is decimal 027.

Shift Printer Output

Displays a window showing the previous shift value and allows you to specify a new shift value. A positive value shifts print output to the right, and a negative value shifts print output to the left by the number of dots specified.

Tray Number

Displays a window showing the previous input tray number, and allows you to specify a new tray number. The printer must support the tray number you specify. The default tray number is 0.

Macro Number

Displays a window showing the previous macro number and allows you to specify a new macro number. The macro number option is used for printing on HP printers, and allows you to specify a macro number recognized by HP printers.

Interface

Press <Enter> to select [ASCII], [EBCDIC], or [SMARTBOX]. Select [ASCII] to produce ASCII output for writing to disk. Select [EBCDIC] to produce EBCDIC output for Xerox printers connected to your PC via coaxial cable and a protocol converter. Select [SMARTBOX] if your PC connects to the printer through a Smartbox or Agile protocol converter.

Job File Name

Displays a window showing the previous job file name and allows you to specify a new job file name. A job file containing commands that control the overall print job must reside in the directory specified by [Text Directory] and you must construct it according to the guidelines (see the "Job Print Ticket file" section in this chapter).

Save Setup Options

Select this option to save your **Setup** menu selections to disk.

If you select [DISK] as the **Output Device**, the print output writes to one of the following directories, depending on your selection for **Output Format**:

<i>Output format</i>	<i>Output directory</i>
4235	\ELIXIR\DOCS\UDK42OUT
4045	\ELIXIR\DOCS\UDK45OUT
2700	\ELIXIR\DOCS\UDK27OUT
HP PCL	\ELIXIR\DOCS\HPOUT

Edit

Press <Enter> twice to display a window showing .DAT files in the form list file directory (specified by **Text Directory**) as shown in the following figure.

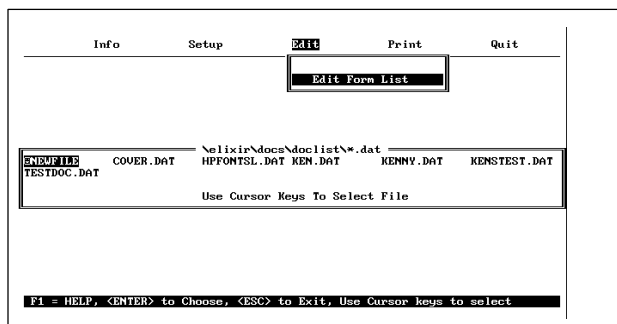


Figure 4235-18. Form list (.DAT) files

Use the cursor keys to move the highlight bar to any .DAT file and press <Enter> to edit the file, or select [NEWFILE] (the first entry) to create a new .DAT file.

Select a displayed .DAT file and press <Enter> to display the file contents. The following figure shows the contents of a .DAT file.

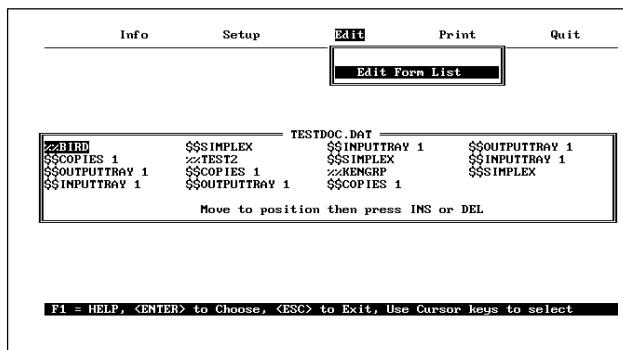


Figure 4235-19. Contents of a .DAT file

The order of the file contents is left to right on descending rows.

Editing a .DAT file is limited to adding Elixir form file names. To add form list file commands to the .DAT file, use an ASCII editor to edit the .DAT file. (See the Files section of this chapter for a list of commands you can use in a form list file.)

Use the key to delete highlighted entries. Use the <INS> key to add Elixir form file names. A window showing the contents of the directory specified by **Forms Directory** displays, from which you can make a selection.

To create a new .DAT file, select [NEWFILE] in the form list file window and press <ENTER>.

The program prompts you to specify a new file name (without the extension).

ELX2XES creates the file (with a .DAT extension) and displays the contents (which is empty).

You can now use the <INS> and keys to add and delete Elixir form list files to the .DAT file you created.

Print

Converts the Elixir forms specified in the form list file you selected to the format you specified in **Output Format**.

Your selection for **Output Device** determines the destination of the converted forms.

Your responses to the **Setup** menu, and the contents of the job file and form list file determine additional formatting parameters.

Quit

Ends the ELX2XES session and returns to DOS.

ELX2XES files

The following section describes the various files and the formats that ELX2XES uses.

Job print ticket file

A job print ticket (.JTK) file is an ASCII file in the same directory as the form list files (described in the next section). Normally this directory is *drive:\ELIXIR\DOCS\DOCLIST*; however, you can change the directory using the [Text Directory] option in the **Setup** menu. A print ticket file can have any name and extension; however, using the .JTK extension is recommended. You should not use .DAT extensions to avoid confusion with form list files described in the next section.

A job print ticket file contains commands that control the overall print job you create with ELX2XES. For example, you may define a job as “print two copies of all pages in duplex mode using paper from tray #2”.

The following table describes commands you can specify in a job print ticket file. Note that each command ends with a semi-colon (;) and a carriage-return/line-feed combination.

<i>Command syntax</i>	<i>Description</i>
<code>copies=#</code>	The number of copies for printing. # is any integer.
<code>input_bin=#</code>	# is the required input tray number (recognized by the printer).
<code>output_bin=#</code>	# is the required output tray number (recognized by the printer).
<code>reset_after_job=[YES][NO]</code>	[YES] sends a reset command to the printer after job completion; [NO] does not send a reset command.
<code>sides_printed=[DUPLEX][SIMPLEX]</code>	[DUPLEX] prints all pages in duplex (two-sided) mode; [SIMPLEX] prints all pages in simplex (one-sided) mode.

Below is a sample job print ticket file:

```
sides_printed=SIMPLEX;
output_bin=2;
reset_after_job=YES;
```

This example prints all job pages in simplex mode, directs the paper output to tray 2, and sends a reset command to the printer after job completion. See the "Duplicate commands" section for further mode information.

Form list file

A form list (.DAT) is an ASCII file that contains a list of Elixir form file names and commands that control how specific forms print after ELX2XES conversion. For example, you can define a form list file to "print three copies of the first .ELX file, followed by one copy of the second .ELX file".

Form list files have .DAT extensions, normally located in the *drive:\ELIXIR\DOCS\DOCLIST* directory; however, you can change the directory using the [Text Directory] option in the **Setup** menu (see the "Setup" section in this chapter). Commands in a form list file execute sequentially in the order they display in the form list file.

The following table describes commands you can specify in a form list file. Note that each command starts with %% or \$\$ and ends with a carriage-return/line-feed combination.

%%filename

filename is the stem name of the Elixir-format form (.ELX) file for conversion (and printing). .ELX files reside in the directory specified by the [Forms Directory] option in Setup.

\$\$command

command is any command string you want sent to the printer. ELX2XES precedes the string with an Escape character.

\$\$COPIES #

Specifies the number (#) of copies of the .ELX file listed after (below), to print.

\$\$DUPLEX

Prints all subsequent pages in a form list file in duplex (double-sided) mode.

\$\$DUPLEXINVERT

Prints all subsequent pages in a form list file in inverted duplex (inverted and double-sided) mode.

\$\$INPUTTRAY #

specifies the input tray number the printer recognizes.

\$\$OUTPUTTRAY #

specifies the output tray number the printer recognizes.

\$\$SIMPLEX

Prints all subsequent pages in a form list in simplex (one-side) mode.

\$\$RESET

Sends a reset command to the printer.

Below is a sample form list file:

```
%%FORMA
$$INPUTTRAY 1
$$DUPLEX
$$COPIES 4
%%FORMB
%%FORMC
```

This form file converts and prints FORMA.ELX, then changes the input tray to tray 1, converts and prints four copies of FORMB.ELX in duplex mode, and prints FORMC.ELX. The job file determines the number of copies of FORMA and FORMC (see the following section for more information).

Duplicate commands

Some commands you can specify in a job print ticket file, form list file, and in the **Setup** menu are similar. For example, you can specify duplex printing in all three areas. For duplicate commands, note that ELX2XES first processes your selections in the Setup menu, then processes commands in a job print ticket file, and finally commands from a form list file.

Note the following example containing responses to the **Setup** menu, job print ticket file, and form list file:

Setup menu:

DUPLEX	NO
TRAY NUMBER	1
JOB FILE NAME	TEST.JTK

TEST.JTK job file:

```
side_printed=DUPLEX;
input_bin=2;
copies=2;
```

TEST.DAT form list file:

```
$$INPUTTRAY3  
%%FORMA  
%%FORMB  
$$SIMPLEX  
$$COPIES 3  
%%FORMC  
%%FORMD
```

This example prints one copy (the default) of FORMA with FORMB on the reverse, using paper from tray 3. It then prints three copies each of FORMC and FORMD in simplex mode using paper from tray 3. This entire process repeats because the copies command in the TEST.JTK file is set to two.

Printing Elixir forms in XPPM mode on a 4235

You can print Elixir XES forms on a 4235 printer in Xerox Production Print Mode (XPPM) as described in the following procedure.

Please note: The printer must be in XDPM mode when loading the XES form and you can switch to XPPM mode for printing.

1. **Make sure that the stem name of the form and the stem names of the fonts used in the form contain up to six characters only.**
2. **Copy the .ELX file to the Converter icon.**

The Form Converter Options dialog box displays.

3. **Select [2700 XES], then click on [OK].**
4. **Select the conversion options, then click on [OK].**

The form converts to XES format and is written to the Output 2700 XES Forms folder.

5. Use the NAMEUDK utility to insert an XES escape code in the 2700 XES print file.

You can manually place the form name in front of the form by placing the following commands in front of the UDK file:

`<ESC> + Nformname <Enter>`

`+N`

is the instruction to start the form.

formname

the name of the form (up to six characters).

The printer adds the .FRM extension. You can now use the form in both XDPM and XPPM modes.

4700 printers

This section describes additional ElixSys Desktop information for Xerox 4700 Color Document Printer users.

Supported products

You can use the Xerox 4700 printer with the following Xerox Elixir Edition products:

- ElixSys Converter for Xerox Distributed Printers
- ElixSys Desktop for HighLight Color
- ElixForm/ElixSys.

4700 printer considerations

The following sections contain important information for 4700 printer users.

Paper sizes

The 4700 printer does not print to the edge of a physical page. The width of the non-printing area for the top, bottom and sides of a page depends upon the paper size and orientation. The following table shows the sizes of the non-printing area for supported paper sizes in millimeters.

<i>Paper Size</i>	<i>Orientation</i>	<i>Non-printing Bottom</i>	<i>Non-printing Top</i>	<i>Non-printing Right</i>	<i>Non-printing Left</i>
A4 A4	Portrait Landscape	2.0 6.5	2.0 10.0	6.5 2.0	10.0 2.0
A3 A3	Portrait Landscape	6.5 2.0	10.0 2.0	2.0 6.5	2.0 10.0
8.5 x 11 8.5 x 11	Portrait Landscape	2.0 6.5	2.0 10.0	6.5 2.0	10.0 2.0
8.5 x 14 8.5 x 14	Portrait Landscape	6.5 2.0	10.0 2.0	2.0 6.5	2.0 10.0
11 x 17 11 x 17	Portrait Landscape	6.5 2.0	10.0 2.0	2.0 6.5	2.0 10.0

Xerox 4700 printers support printing on 8.5 x 11 inches, 8.5 x 14 inches, 11 x 17 inches, A4 (8.27 x 11.69 inches), and A3 (11.69 x 16.54 inches) paper.

Incorrect printout

If your 4700 printout contains unreadable or unwanted data, make sure that the printer is set up for 8-bit AS-CII and for CR/LF line endings. See the "*Xerox 4700 Color Document Printer Operation Guide*" for more information.

Font conversions

Before sending your print job to a Xerox distributed printer, convert the Elixir-format fonts used in your forms to Xerox 2700 fonts (the Xerox 4700 uses 2700 fonts). Using 2700 fonts enables use of demonstration and line draw fonts in your forms.

You can also convert fonts to Xerox 3700 format and directly load the fonts on the printer via the printer's floppy drive.

Input tray number remapping

The 4700 printer remaps input tray number information received from page print tickets, job print tickets, and the ELX2XES and FORMPRN stand-alone utilities as follows:

<i>Input tray number</i>	<i>4700 printer tray</i>
#1	High capacity feeder tray #3
#2	Internal tray #1
#3	Internal tray #2
#4	Internal tray #2

Enter the input tray number listed in the first column of the above table in the appropriate options of page print tickets, job print tickets, and ELX2XES and FORMPRN utilities to print to the 4700 printer tray listed in the second column.

Converting forms

This section describes additional form conversion capabilities of the 4700 printer in addition to those described in the front section of this guide.

Output folders for form conversions

When you use the Converter icon to convert files (described in the "File conversions" chapter), output files write to the appropriate Output folders with appropriate file extensions. The Output Jobs folder corresponds to the *drive:\ELIXIR\DOCS\UDK47OUT*.** directory, and is the output directory for forms converted to 4700 format using the Converter icon. See the "Jobs folders" section for more information on jobs.

The 4700 XES folder corresponds to the *drive:\ELIXIR\PRINTS\X47PRINT*.** directory and is the output directory for forms converted to 4700 format using the FORMPRN stand-alone utility (see the "Stand-alone utilities" section in this chapter), and for forms printed to disk.

Converting Elixir forms to 4700 XES format

To convert one or more forms from the Elixir Forms folder (drive:\ELIXIR\FORMS\ELIXIR\ or subordinate directories), select and copy the files to the Converter icon. A Form Converter Options dialog box, similar to the one shown in the following figure displays.

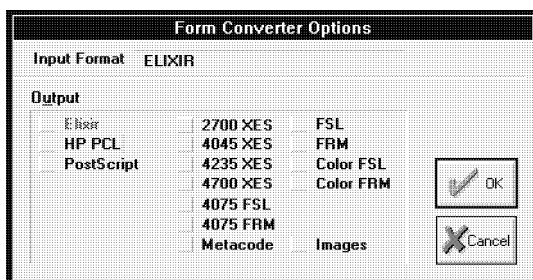


Figure 4700-1. Form Converter Options dialog box example

Select the [4700 XES] option and click on [OK]. The Page Print Ticket dialog box shown in the following figure displays.

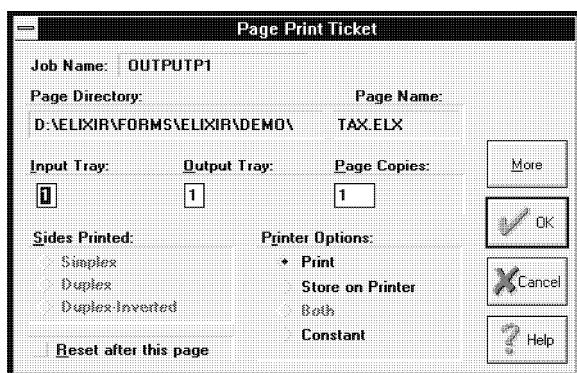


Figure 4700-2. Page Print Ticket dialog box

A page print ticket specifies some of the parameters that control the printing of a single form (page), such as number of copies, and input tray number.

The Page Print Ticket dialog box contains the following options:

Input Tray

Specifies the input tray number of the printer (default is 1). This option overrides the input tray number specified in the Job Print Ticket dialog box.

Output Tray

Specifies the output tray number of the printer (default is 1).

Page Copies

Specifies the number of copies of the selected form (page). This option overrides the number of copies specified in the Job Print Ticket dialog box for the current page.

Printer Options

Specifies the file destination: [Print] prints the form, [Store on Printer] writes the form to the printer hard disk for future printing, [Constant] stores a single form in memory (for use with 2700/4045 printers which do not have a hard disk).

Reset after this Page

Sends a printer reset command to the printer after the current page to reset the printer defaults.

More

Displays the Job Print Ticket dialog box. Ensure that the [XES Escape Code] option has the correct code for your site.

Grayed/dimmed options in the dialog box do not apply to this conversion.

Converting graphics

This section describes additional graphics file conversion capabilities of the 4700 printer in addition to those described in the front section of this guide.

Note that you can edit full color graphics (such as the sample DAYNIT.LP3 graphics file) with other third-party graphics packages that support .PCX and .TIF formats. You can use the Elixir Desktop to convert these graphics for printing on a 4700 printer.

Converting color .TIF and .PCX files to Elixir format

When converting color .TIF and .PCX format files to Elixir format, the Xerox Graphic Converter Options dialog box shown in the following figure displays.

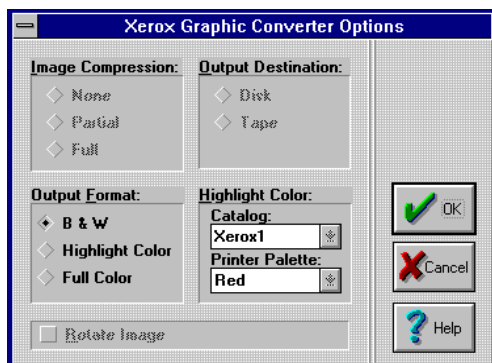


Figure 4700-3. Xerox Graphic Converter Options

The Xerox Graphic Converter Options dialog box contains the following options:

Output Format

Select [B&W], [Highlight Color], or [Full Color] as the output format for the image.

Highlight Color

Select [Catalog] to view collection of available printer palettes or [Printer Palette] to view actual output color (e.g., Red) to be used for the image.

Grayed/dimmed options in the dialog box do not apply to this conversion.

When converting color .PCX or .TIF graphics files to other graphics formats, the Color Image Converter Options dialog box shown in the following figure also displays.

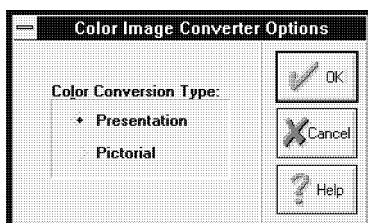


Figure 4700-4. Color Image Converter Options

Select [Presentation] (the default) if you are converting .PCX or .TIF files composed of line art or graphics without gray scales.

Select [Pictorial] if you are converting .PCX or .TIF files composed of high-grade graphics such as scanned photographs or graphics with gray scales.

Jobs folders

The ElixSys Desktop supports the creation of multiple Elixir form print files called *jobs*. A job includes formatting information for the print run and for multiple individual pages. After defining a job, you can send it to a Xerox distributed printer (such as the Xerox 4700).

The Jobs folder corresponds to the `drive:\ELIXIR\JOBS` directory and contains the subordinate directories shown in the following figure.

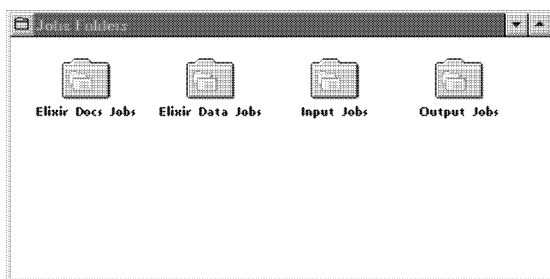


Figure 4700-5. Jobs folder window

Elixir Docs Jobs folder

The Elixir Docs Jobs folder corresponds to the `drive:\ELIXIR\DOCS\DOCLIST` directory. Opening the Elixir Docs Jobs folder displays the Elixir Document Jobs window shown in the following figure.

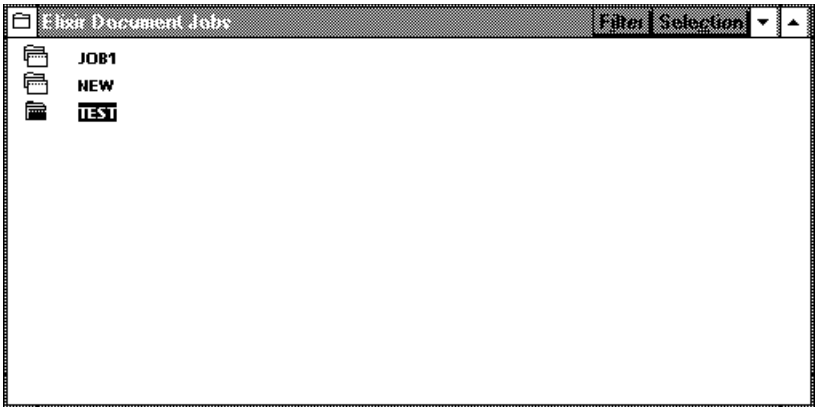


Figure 4700-6. Elixir Document Jobs window

The Elixir Documents Jobs window displays a list of Elixir job (.DAT) files. An Elixir job file is an ASCII file that contains a list of Elixir form files and print ticket information for the individual form files.

To convert a .DAT file to a new application format, copy the file to the Converter icon. The Application Converter Options dialog box shown in the following figure displays. Select an available Output application, then click on [OK]. The [Imposed Elixir] and [Nor Meta] options are not supported for 4700 printers.



Figure 4700-7. Application Converter Options dialog box

Open an Elixir job icon to display the Job: window, shown in the following figure. This window displays a Job Print Ticket icon and a number of Elixir form icons.

You can use the mouse to move form icons to change their order in the window. The left-to-right order of the form icons in the window is the same as the order of the pages printed in the print run.

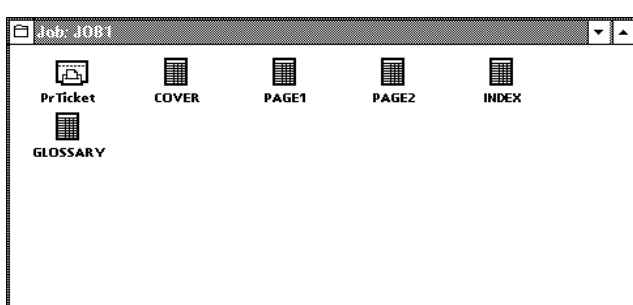


Figure 4700-8. Job window

Job print ticket



Open the print ticket icon, (PrTicket), in the Job: window and click on [OK] to bypass the Page Imposition Options dialog box.

Note: 4700 XES conversions do not support imposing functions because duplex printing is not available.

After you click on [OK] in the Page Imposition Options dialog box, the Job Print Ticket dialog box shown in the following figure displays. Options in this dialog box control the overall printing parameters for the job.

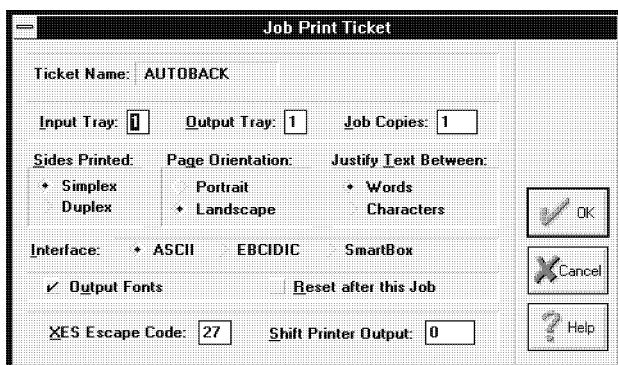


Figure 4700-9. Job Print Ticket dialog box

Ticket Name

Specifies the stem name of the document (.DAT) file (display only).

Job Copies

Specifies the number of print copies.

Input Tray

Specifies the input tray number of the printer (default is 3).

Output Tray

Specifies the output tray number of the printer (display only).

Page Orientation

Specifies the orientation of the output page as [Portrait] or [Landscape].

Justify Text Between

Specifies the type of text justification. [Words] (the default) justifies text by adding spaces between words, like the following sentence:

This is an example of [Words].

[Characters] justifies text by adding spaces between characters, like the following sentence:

This example shows [Characters].

[Characters] produces more readable text but takes longer to convert.

Interface

Select [ASCII] (the default), [EBCDIC], or [Smart Box]. Select [ASCII] to produce ASCII output for writing to disk. Select [EBCDIC] to produce EBCDIC output for Xerox printers connected to your PC via coaxial cable and a protocol converter. Select [Smart Box] if your PC connects to the printer through a Smartbox or Agile protocol converter.

Output fonts

Select to convert fonts and include them in the converted data stream. Do not select if you previously converted the fonts in your Elixir forms and downloaded to your printer. Not selecting this option saves considerable time when converting large documents.

Reset after this Job

Sends a printer reset command to the printer after the current job to reset the printer defaults.

Shift Printer Output

Displays a window showing the current shift value and allows you to specify a new shift value. A positive value shifts print output to the right, and a negative value shifts print output to the left by the number of dots specified. For example, 75 dots equals .25 inch at 300 dpi. The default is 0.

XES Escape Code

Displays a window showing the current XES escape code in decimal format and allows you to specify a new escape code in addition to the normal XES escape code value of decimal 027.

Page print ticket

Open any form icon in the Job window (shown previously) to display the Page Print Ticket dialog box, shown in the following figure, for each form.

A page print ticket specifies some of the parameters that control the printing of a single form (page), such as number of copies, and input tray number.

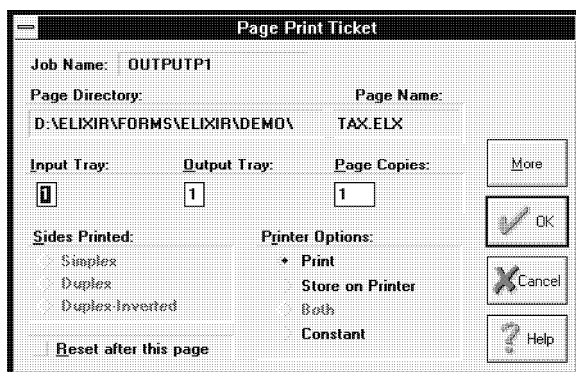


Figure 4700-10. Page Print Ticket dialog box

The Page Print Ticket dialog box contains the following options:

Job Name

Specifies the job (.DAT) file name (display only).

Page Directory

Specifies the path of the Elixir form file (display only).

Page Name

Specifies the page (Elixir form) name (display only).

Input Tray

Specifies the input tray number of the printer (default is 1). This option overrides the input tray number specified in the Job Print Ticket dialog box.

Output tray

Specifies the output tray number of the printer (default is 1).

Page Copies

Specifies the number of copies of the selected form (page). This option overrides the number of copies specified in the Job Print Ticket dialog box for the current page.

Printer Options

[Print] sends your file to the printer, [Store on Printer] stores your file on the printer hard disk for future printing, and [Both] prints your form and then stores it on the printer hard disk. [Constant] stores a single form in memory (for use with 2700/4045 printers which do not have a hard disk and do not support Store).

Reset after this Page

Sends a printer reset command to the printer after the current page to reset the printer defaults.

Open

Starts Elixiform and loads the current form for viewing or editing.

Note: When adding a new form (page) to an existing job, the Input Tray and Output Tray options default to the values specified in the job print ticket. You can open the page print ticket to change these options if desired.

Output Jobs folder

The Output Jobs folder corresponds to the *drive:\ELIXIR\DOCS* directory. Opening the Output Jobs folder from the Job window (shown previously) displays the Jobs Output Folders window shown in the following figure.

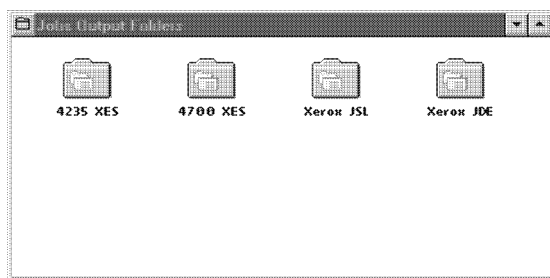


Figure 4700-11. Jobs Output Folders window

The Jobs Output Folders window displays the 4700 XES job folder. The 4700 XES folder corresponds to the *drive:\ELIXIR\DOCS\UDK47OUT*.PRN* DOS sub-directory and file extension.

The 4700 XES folder contains files which you can print on Xerox 4700 printers.

Creating a 4700 XES job

To specify and print one or more jobs on the 4700 XES printer, use the following general procedures.

Creating an Elixir Job (.DAT) file

To create multiple-page documents, you must first create a .DAT file (Elixir Docs job file). This file contains a list of individual form files and the printing parameters.

Open the Desktop Jobs folder, then the Elixir Docs Jobs folder, and in it create a new file by selecting [New] from the **Commands** menu (or by typing <Alt> + <N>). The Enter File Name dialog box shown in the following figure displays.

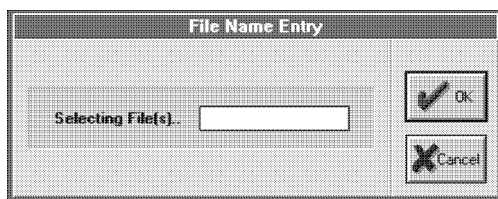


Figure 4700-12. File Name Entry dialog box

Enter a name for the new job file and click on [OK]. In the Elixir Documents Jobs window, open the new job file to display a Job window which contains a Print Ticket icon and a sample form (Page) icon which you can delete. The following figure shows a new .DAT file.

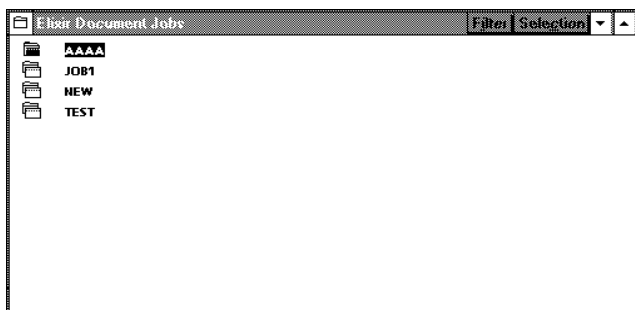


Figure 4700-13. New .DAT file

To create a multi-page document, open the Elixir Forms folder, select and copy form files to the Jobs folder, then to the Elixir Docs Jobs folder, then to the desired .DAT file icon.

Use the mouse to arrange the forms in the order you want them to print.

To specify printing parameters for the entire job, open the Job Print Ticket icon and specify the appropriate parameters. (See the "Job print ticket" section in this chapter for information on the Job Print Ticket dialog box options.)

To specify printing parameters for each page, open the form icons in the Job window. (See the "Page print ticket" section in this chapter for information on the Page Print Ticket dialog box options). Note that if you add pages (forms) to the job, the Input Tray and Output Tray options assume the values specified in the job print ticket.

Printing 11 x 17 inch and A3 pages

Xerox 4700 printers support printing on 11 x 17 inch and A3 paper. As 11 x 17 inch and A3 pages are landscape orientation, if your print job includes such pages, follow the steps described in the next section to edit font mapping tables before printing your job.

Portrait/landscape font mapping tables

You can use the FONTS.LST and INV FONTS.LST mapping tables in your *drive:\ELIXIR* directory to maintain corresponding portrait to landscape/landscape to portrait (P2L FONTS.LST) and portrait or landscape resources to inverse portrait or inverse landscape resources (INV FONTS.LST).

However, if all resources used in forms to be fed short edge have six-letter filenames with the sixth letter as the orientation indicator (P, L, I or J), then P2L FONTS.LST does not need to contain these resources; the conversion process will automatically map the six letter filename with orientation indicator to a six letter filename with the opposite orientation.

Following is an example of P2L FONTS.LST and developing a portrait 11X17 inch form using resources Font1, Font3, Font5, HE10BP and Graph1:

```
Font1  Font2
Font3  Font4
Font5  Font6
Graph1 Graph2
```

```
Font1  (portrait) maps to Font2 (landscape)
Font3  (portrait) maps to Font4 (landscape)
Font5  (portrait) maps to Font6 (landscape)
Graph1 (portrait) maps to Graph2 (landscape)
```

Note that no entry is required for HE10BP because it conforms to standard naming convention (last letter is the orientation indicator); the Converter will automatically map HE10BP to HE10BL.

Font conversions

Before sending your print job to a Xerox distributed printer, convert the Elixir-format fonts used in your forms to Xerox 2700 or 3700 fonts. The Xerox 4700 uses 2700 fonts and 3700 fonts (you must load 3700 fonts directly from the printer floppy drive).

Printing a job

To print an Elixir job (.DAT) file, convert it to a printer-ready (.PRN) file and print it on a remote 4700 printer, or print it directly on a 4700 printer connected to your PC. See the "Job print ticket" section in this chapter for more information.

To include correct paper tray and copy number information, double-click on the .DAT file to display a window showing the Job Print Ticket and Elixir forms (similar to figure 4700-8). Double-click on each Elixir form icon to display the Page Print Ticket dialog box for each form (figure 4700-10). Edit the fields in each Page Print Ticket dialog box to the values you want.

Printing on a local 4700 printer

To print a job to a locally attached Xerox 4700 distributed printer, select and copy the Elixir job (.DAT) file(s) to the Printers icon. The Print Setup dialog box displays.

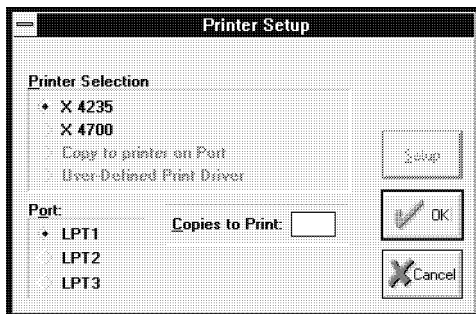


Figure 4700-14. Printer Setup dialog box

Select [X 4700] to proof print on a Xerox 4700 printer.

Select the port (LPT1, LPT2, or LPT3), and the number of copies of the job you want printed.

Examples - creating 4700 XES jobs

This section contains brief tutorials for creating and printing 4700 XES jobs.

Creating fonts

Create Elixir versions of the fonts you want to use on your form by converting existing fonts from an input folder such as Outline Fonts or creating new fonts using ElixiFont.

To create and print 11 x 17 or A3 forms requires both portrait and landscape versions of each font.

P2LFORMATS.LST file

If printing on 11 x 17 inch or A3 paper, edit the P2LFORMATS.LST file.

The P2LFORMATS.LST file contains pairs of the Portrait to Landscape stem names of each font on the Elixir-format form for printing.

Converting fonts

To use Elixir-format fonts to print forms on 4700 printers, convert them to Xerox 2700 and Screen font formats as follows (the 4700 printer can use 2700 fonts):

- 1. Open the Elixir Fonts folder and select the font files you want to convert.**
- 2. Copy the font files to the Converter icon. In the displayed dialog box, select [2700 XES] and convert the fonts.**

Creating forms

When the converted fonts and P2LFORMATS.LST files are ready, use Elixiform to compose forms. See the *Elixiform User Guide* for information about creating forms.

Creating multiple-page documents

The following procedures describe how to create a .DAT file and create a multiple-page document.

Creating a .DAT file

To create a .DAT file, follow these steps:

1. **Open the Desktop Jobs folder, then the Elixir Docs Jobs folder.**
2. **Create a new .DAT file by selecting [New] from the File menu (or by pressing <Alt> + <N>).**
3. **Specify a name for the new .DAT file in the displayed dialog box.**
4. **Open the new Job file and delete the sample file named PAGE.**
5. **Open the Elixir Forms folder (in the Desktop Forms folder icon) and select the forms you want in the multi-page document.**
6. **Copy the selected form(s) to the Jobs icon, then to the Elixir Docs Jobs folder, then to the new job you created.**

Creating a multiple-page document

After you create a .DAT file, use the following steps to produce a multiple-page document.

1. **Open the .DAT file icon in the Elixir Document Jobs folder and use the mouse to arrange the form icons in the printing order you want.**
2. **Open any form icon to display the Page Print Ticket dialog box for the form and specify the formatting parameters.**

3. **Open the Job Print Ticket icon and click on [OK] in the Page Imposition Options dialog box to bypass it.**
4. **In the Job Print Ticket dialog box, specify further options you want for the job:**
 - **[Job Copies] 1**
 - **[Input Tray] 1**
 - **[Output Tray] 1**
 - **[Page Orientation] Portrait**
 - **[Justify Text Between] Words**
 - **[Interface:] ASCII**
 - **Select [Output Fonts]**
 - **Leave [Reset after this Job] unselected**
 - **[XES Escape Code] 027**
 - **[Shift Printer Output] 0**

Printing on a local 4700 printer

To print a job on a local Xerox 4700 XES printer connected to your PC, follow these steps:

1. **Copy the .DAT file from the open Elixir Document Jobs window to the Printers icon.**
2. **In the displayed Print Setup dialog box, select [X 4700] as the printer and specify also the number of copies, and the printer port to which the print output is to be directed.**

ELX2XES

This section describes ELX2XES, an Elixir product that converts Elixir-format form files to Xerox Escape Sequence (XES) and HP PCL data streams.

After file conversion, the converted data streams port through your PC parallel port to an attached Xerox Distributed Printer such as the Xerox 2700, 4045, 4235, 4700, or to an HP printer; or write to your hard disk for subsequent processing.

ELX2XES also supports XES (and HP PCL) commands that control the format of the print output (such as multiple copies and paper tray selection). By creating simple ASCII files and using ELX2XES, users with libraries of Elixir-format form files can easily create complex print jobs on a PC and convert and print the jobs in a single operation.

Starting ELX2XES

ELX2XES can run transparently through the Desktop Converter or Printers icon or as a stand-alone package.

To run ELX2XES stand-alone, access DOS from your Windows session, change the current directory to *drive:\ELIXIR*, and type:

ELX2XES <Enter>

The ELX2XES main screen displays as shown in the following figure.

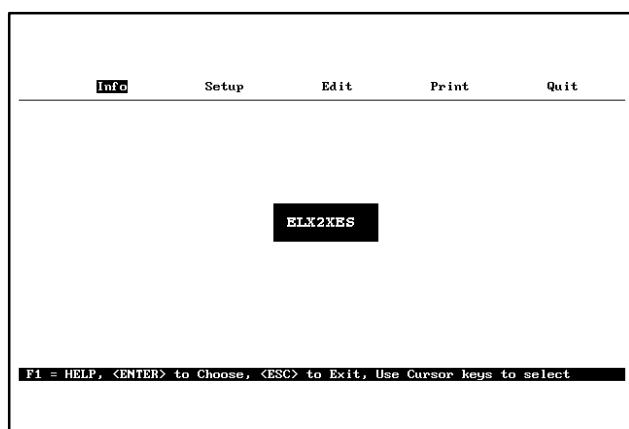


Figure 4700-15. ELX2XES main menu

Menu options

The menu options are **Info**, **Setup**, **Edit**, **Convert**, and **Quit**. Use the left and right arrow keys to move the highlight bar to the menu item you want and press <Enter> to select it.

Info

Displays a window with ELX2XES information, including the version number. Have the version number on hand if you contact your Xerox customer support representative.

Setup

Displays a pull-down menu with additional options, shown in the following figure. To select an option from the pull-down menu, use the up and down arrow keys to move the highlight bar to the option you want and press <Enter>.

Selecting some options in **Setup** displays a window, in which you can enter new information, or just press <Enter> to retain the previous information. Other **Setup** options are toggles, which you can switch by pressing <Enter>.

The **Setup** menu contains the following options:

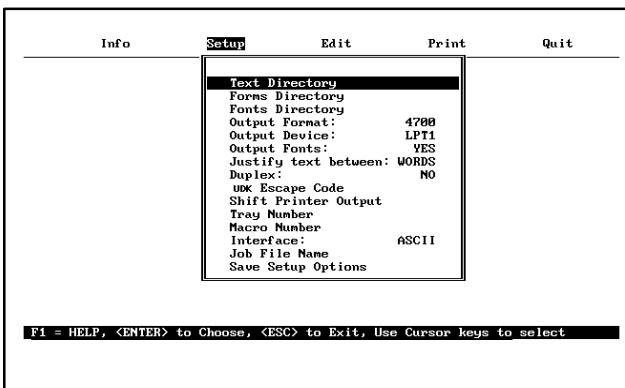


Figure 4700-16. Setup menu

Text Directory

Displays a window showing the previous form list file directory, and allows you to specify a new form list file directory. The form list directory contains .DAT form list files and job files. The default form list file directory is: *drive:\ELIXIR\DOCS\DOCLIST*.

Forms Directory

Displays a window showing the previous directory containing Elixir .ELX form files, and allows you to specify a new forms directory. The default forms directory is: *drive:\ELIXIR\FORMS\ELIXIR\DEMO*.

Fonts Directory

Displays a window showing the previous directory containing Elixir screen (.FNT) and width (.WDT) font files, and allows you to specify a new fonts directory. The default screen fonts directory is: *drive:\ELIXIR\FONTS\SCREEN\DEMO*.

Output Format

Press <Enter> to select Xerox [4235], [4045], and [2700] printer output or [HP] for PCL printer output (see also [Output Device]).

Output Device

Specifies the output destination of converted files. Press <Enter> to select print output to the [LPT1], [LPT2], or [LPT3] ports on your PC, or [DISK] to write print output to your hard disk.

Output Fonts

Press <Enter> to toggle between [YES] and [NO]. [YES] converts fonts and includes them in the converted data stream. [NO] does not convert fonts. Use [NO] if you previously converted the fonts in your Elixir forms and downloaded to your printer. Selecting [NO] saves considerable time when converting large documents.

Please note that ELX2XES automatically detects repeated fonts and downloads them only once during a session (a session is the duration that ELX2XES is active and terminates when you exit ELX2XES and return to the DOS prompt).

Justify text between

Specifies the type of text justification. [WORDS] justifies text by adding spaces between words. [CHARS] justifies text by adding spaces between characters. This option produces more readable text but takes longer to convert.

Duplex

Press <Enter> to toggle between [YES] and [NO]. [YES] produces duplex (two-sided) output. [NO] produces simplex (one-sided) output.

UDK Escape Code

Displays a window showing the previous XES escape code in decimal notation and allows you to specify a new escape code between 0 - 255. Normally the XES escape code value is decimal 027.

Shift Printer Output

Displays a window showing the previous shift value and allows you to specify a new shift value. A positive value shifts print output to the right, and a negative value shifts print output to the left by the number of dots specified.

Tray Number

Displays a window showing the previous input tray number, and allows you to specify a new tray number. The printer must support the tray number you specify. The default tray number is 0.

Macro Number

Displays a window showing the previous macro number and allows you to specify a new macro number. The macro number option is used for printing on HP printers, and allows you to specify a macro number recognized by HP printers.

Interface

Press <Enter> to select [ASCII], [EBCDIC], or [SMARTBOX]. Select [ASCII] to produce ASCII output for writing to disk. Select [EBCDIC] to produce EBCDIC output for Xerox printers connected to your PC via coaxial cable and a protocol converter. Select [SMARTBOX] if your PC connects to the printer through a Smartbox or Agile protocol converter.

Job File Name

Displays a window showing the previous job file name and allows you to specify a new job file name. A job file containing commands that control the overall print job must reside in the directory specified by [Text Directory] and you must construct it according to the guidelines (see the "Job Print Ticket file" section in this chapter).

Save Setup Options

Select this option to save your **Setup** menu selections to disk.

If you select [DISK] as the **Output Device**, the print output writes to one of the following directories, depending on your selection for **Output Format**:

<i>Output format</i>	<i>Output directory</i>
4235	\ELIXIR\DOCS\UDK42OUT
4045	\ELIXIR\DOCS\UDK45OUT
2700	\ELIXIR\DOCS\UDK27OUT
4700	\ELIXIR\DOCS\UDK47OUT
HP PCL	\ELIXIR\DOCS\HPOUT

Edit

Press <Enter> twice to display a window showing .DAT files in the form list file directory (specified by **Text Directory**) as shown in the following figure.

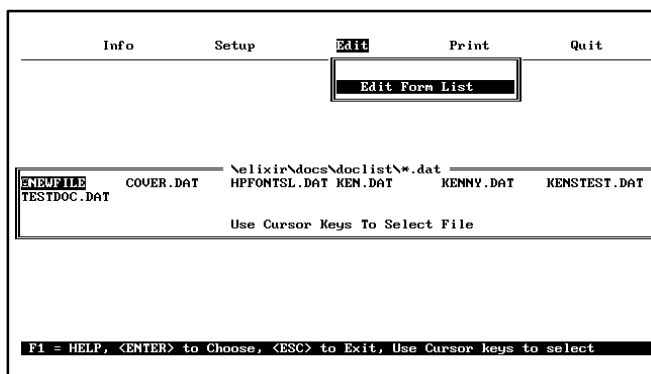


Figure 4700-17. Form list (.DAT) files

Use the cursor keys to move the highlight bar to any .DAT file and press <Enter> to edit the file, or select Newfile (the first entry) to create a new .DAT file.

Select a displayed .DAT file and press <Enter> to display the file contents. The following figure shows the contents of a .DAT file.

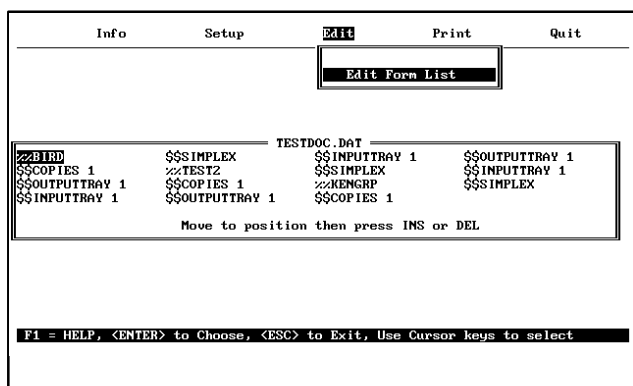


Figure 4700-18. Contents of a .DAT file

The order of the file contents is left to right on descending rows.

Editing a .DAT file is limited to adding Elixir form file names. To add form list file commands to the .DAT file, use an ASCII editor to edit the .DAT file. (See the "Files" section of this chapter for a list of commands you can use in a form list file.)

Use the key to delete highlighted entries. Use the <INS> key to add Elixir form file names. A window showing the contents of the directory specified by **Forms Directory** displays, from which you can make a selection.

To create a new .DAT file, select Newfile in the form list file window and press <ENTER>.

The program prompts you to specify a new file name (without the extension).

ELX2XES creates the file (with a .DAT extension) and displays the contents (which is empty).

You can now use the <INS> and keys to add and delete Elixir form list files to the .DAT file you created.

Print

Converts the Elixir forms specified in the form list file you selected to the format you specified in **Output Format**.

Your selection for **Output Device** determines the destination of the converted forms.

Your responses to the **Setup** menu, and the contents of the job file and form list file determine additional formatting parameters.

Quit

Ends the ELX2XES session and returns to DOS.

ELX2XES files

The following section describes the various files and the formats that ELX2XES uses.

Job print ticket file

A job print ticket (.JTK) file is an ASCII file in the same directory as the form list files (described in the next section). Normally this directory is *drive:\ELIXIR\DOCS\DOCLIST*; however, you can change the directory using the [Text Directory] option in the **Setup** menu. A print ticket file can have any name and extension; however, using the .JTK extension is recommended. You should not use .DAT extensions to avoid confusion with form list files described in the next section.

A job print ticket file contains commands that control the overall print job you create with ELX2XES. For example, you may define a job as "print two copies of all pages in simplex mode using paper from tray #2".

The following table describes commands you can specify in a job print ticket file. Note that each command ends with a semi-colon (;) and a carriage-return/line-feed combination.

<i>Command syntax</i>	<i>Description</i>
<code>copies=#</code>	The number of copies for printing. # is any integer.
<code>input_bin=#</code>	# is the required input tray number (recognized by the printer).
<code>output_bin=#</code>	# is the required output tray number (recognized by the printer).
<code>reset_after_job=[YES][NO]</code>	[YES] sends a reset command to the printer after job completion; [NO] does not send a reset command.
<code>sides_printed=[SIMPLEX]</code>	[SIMPLEX] prints all pages in simplex (one-sided) mode. Duplex mode is not supported.

Below is a sample job print ticket file:

```
sides_printed=SIMPLEX;  
output_bin=1;  
reset_after_job=YES;
```

This example prints all job pages in simplex mode, directs the paper output to tray 1, and sends a reset command to the printer after job completion. See the "Duplicate commands" section for further mode information.

Form list file

A form list (.DAT) is an ASCII file that contains a list of Elixir form file names and commands that control how specific forms print after ELX2XES conversion. For example, you can define a form list file to "print three copies of the first .ELX file, followed by one copy of the second .ELX file".

Form list files have .DAT extensions, normally located in the *drive:\ELIXIR\DOCS\DOCLIST* directory; however, you can change the directory using the [Text Directory] option in the **Setup** menu (see the "Setup" section in this chapter). Commands in a form list file execute sequentially in the order they display in the form list file.

You can specify the following commands in a form list file. Note that each command starts with %% or \$\$ and ends with a carriage-return/line-feed combination.

%%filename

filename is the stem name of the Elixir-format form (.ELX) file for conversion (and printing). .ELX files reside in the directory specified by the [FormsDirectory] option in Setup.

\$\$command

command is any command string you want sent to the printer. ELX2XES precedes the string with an Escape character.

\$\$COPIES #

Specifies the number (#) of copies of the .ELX file listed after (below), to print.

\$\$DUPLEX

Prints all subsequent pages in a form list file in duplex (double-sided) mode.

\$\$DUPLEXINVERT

Prints all subsequent pages in a form list file in inverted duplex (inverted and double-sided) mode.

\$\$INPUTTRAY #

specifies the input tray number the printer recognizes.

\$\$OUTPUTTRAY #

specifies the output tray number the printer recognizes.

\$\$SIMPLEX

Prints all subsequent pages in a form list in simplex (one-side) mode.

\$\$RESET

Sends a reset command to the printer.

Below is a sample form list file:

```
%%FORMA
$$INPUTTRAY 1
$$SIMPLEX
$$COPIES 4
%%FORMB
%%FORMC
```

This form file converts and prints FORMA.ELX, then changes the input tray to tray 1, converts and prints four copies of FORMB.ELX in simplex mode, and prints FORMC.ELX. The job file determines the number of copies of FORMA and FORMC (see the following section for more information).

Duplicate commands

Some commands you can specify in a job print ticket file, form list file, and in the **Setup** menu are similar. For duplicate commands, note that ELX2XES first processes your selections in the **Setup** menu, then processes commands in a job print ticket file, and finally commands from a form list file.

Note the following example containing responses to the **Setup** menu, job print ticket file, and form list file:

Setup menu:

SIMPLEX	NO
TRAY NUMBER	1
JOB FILE NAME	TEST.JTK

TEST.JTK job print ticket file:

```
side_printed=SIMPLEX;  
input_bin=2;  
copies=2;
```

TEST.DAT form list file:

```
$$INPUTTRAY 3  
%%FORMA  
%%FORMB  
$$SIMPLEX  
$$COPIES 3  
%%FORMC  
%%FORMD
```

This example prints one copy (the default) of FORMA and FORMB using paper from tray 3. It then prints three copies each of FORMC and FORMD in simplex mode using paper from tray 3. This entire process repeats because you set the copies command in the TEST.JTK file to two.

A. Keyboard shortcuts

This appendix lists all keyboard shortcuts for Desktop operations and for child window menus.

Desktop

Close dialog box/menu	<Esc>
-----------------------	-------

The following Desktop keyboard shortcuts are grouped by pull-down menu.

File menu	<Alt> + <F>
------------------	--------------------------------

Close (top window)	<F3>
--------------------	------

Convert	<Ctrl> + <V>
---------	--------------

Copy to	<Ctrl> + <C>
---------	--------------

Copy quit	<Esc>
-----------	-------

Delete	
--------	-------

Dispatch	<Ctrl> + <I>
----------	--------------

Exit	<Alt> + <F4>
------	--------------

Formats	<Ctrl> + <F>
---------	--------------

Help	<F1>
------	------

Open	<Enter>
------	---------

Print	<Ctrl> + <P>
-------	--------------

Properties	<F2>
------------	------

System menu	<Alt> + <S>
System Configuration	<Alt> + <F6>
Diagnostics	<Alt> + <F5>
Make Directory	<Ctrl> + <M>

Special menu	<Alt> + <P>
Close All	<F4>
Efont Factory	<Alt> + <E>
Global View	<Ctrl> + <G>
Scheduler Action	<Alt> + <F3>
Scheduler Setup	<Alt> + <F2>

DOS menu	<Alt> + <D>
DOS command	<Ctrl> + <D>

Window menu	<Alt> + <W>
--------------------	--------------------------------

Help menu	<Alt> + <H>
Contents	<F1>

Windows

Back up one directory level	<Ctrl> +
Display start of file list	<Home>
Display end of file list	<End>
Display next page	<Page Down>
Display previous page	<Page Up>
Filter menu	<Alt> + <I>
Global view	<Ctrl> + <G>
Jump to files beginning with letter...	press <letter>
Local View	<Ctrl> + <L>
Reselect	<Ctrl> + <R>
Select adjacent file	Left/Right/Up/Down arrow keys
Select/Unselect All	<Ctrl> + <A>
Write Selections	<Ctrl> + <W>

By option name

Back up one directory level	<Ctrl> +
Close top window	<F3>
Close All	<F4>
Close dialog box/menu	<Esc>
Convert	<Ctrl> + <V>
Copy to	<Ctrl> + <C>

Delete	
Diagnostics	<Alt> + <F5>
Dispatch	<Ctrl> + <I>
Display start of file list	<Home>
Display end of file list	<End>
Display next page	<Page Down>
Display previous page	<Page Up>
DOS	<Ctrl> + <D>
Exit Elixir	<Alt> + <F4>
Filter menu	<Alt> + <I>
Formats	<Ctrl> + <F>
Global view	<Ctrl> + <G>
Help	<F1>
Jump to files beginning with letter...	press <letter>
Local view	<Ctrl> + <L>
Make PubFile	<Ctrl> + <U>
Open	<Enter>
Print	<Ctrl> + <P>
Properties	<F2>
Reselect	<Ctrl> + <R>
Select adjacent file	Left/Right/Up/Down arrow keys
Select All	<Alt> + <A>
Scheduler Action	<Alt> + <F3>

Scheduler Setup

<Alt> + <F2>

System Config

<Ctrl> + <F6>

Unselect All

<Ctrl> + <A>

Write Selections

<Ctrl> + <W>

B. Additional files and directories

This appendix describes additional files and directories the ElixirSys Desktop uses.

Elixir mapping table directories

This section describes directories that contain mapping or correspondence tables. You can access these directories using the User Files icon described in the "Accessing DOS files and applications" chapter.

PostScript mapping table directory

The PostScript mapping table directory (*drive:\ELIX-IR\PSSTASH*) contains the following mapping tables:

PSFONT.MAP

An ASCII file in which each line consists of the six-character Xerox production printer font file name, an equal sign (=), and the PostScript equivalent.

PSTOP.PSC

This ASCII file contains macros and job setup commands and becomes a header for each PostScript job. This file also allows access to international characters.

PSEND.PSC

The PostScript page terminator code (such as footers, line draw, page markers, and page eject) in ASCII format.

PSTRAIL.PSC

This file appends to the end of multi-page PostScript jobs (status sheet).

See the “File conversions” chapter for more information about PostScript processing.

Contour fonts mapping table directory

The contour fonts mapping table directory *drive:\ELIXIR\FONTS\TABLES*, contains the .TFB file created when you do not select [Keep Left Kern] in the Outline-to-raster font generator dialog box (see the “Accessing DOS files and applications” chapter for more information).

Bitstream Facelift fonts mapping directory

The Bitstream Facelift fonts mapping directory, *drive:\ELIXIR\FONTS\MAPS*, contains the BTFONT.NAM and BTFONT.MAP files.

BTFONT.NAM

Contains an ASCII list with the following information for each font: the .TDF font file name, the two-character font family designator, and the typestyle.

BTFONT.MAP

Contains a table that maps the name of a new Bitstream Facelift font to the name of a PostScript font on a printer.

Color information directories

The *drive:\ELIXIR\DESKTOP\SYSTEM\PALETTES* directory contains .PAL and .PLF palette files, used by color-capable Elixir applications.

The *drive:\ELIXIR\DESKTOP\SYSTEM\PATTERNS* directory contains .HDR and other pattern files High-Light Color ElixGraphics uses.

C. Desktop menu bar

This appendix describes or refers you to the options and corresponding keyboard shortcuts (fast keys) available from ElxiSys Desktop pull-down menus.



Figure C-1. Desktop menu bar

File menu

The **File** menu options perform operations on files, applications, or attached devices (printers, scanners, and diskette). The following figure shows the **File** menu.

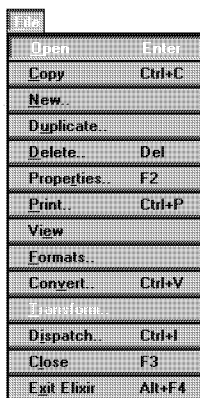


Figure C-2. File Menu

The **File** menu contains the following options:

Open (<Enter>)

Opens a selected icon as does double-clicking on an icon. Opening an icon has different meanings, depending on whether the icon is a folder, Elixir file, Elixir application, User Tool, peripheral device, or icon, as follows:

When you open a folder, a window displays showing the contents of the folder. A folder may contain files and additional folders. Each folder corresponds to a DOS directory.

- When you open an Elixir-format file, the Elixir Desktop runs the Elixir application associated with the file. For example, if you open an Elixir form file, Elixir Forms Editor runs and loads the form file you selected.

When you exit the Elixir application, the Elixir Desktop redisplay.

- Opening an application icon clears the Desktop and runs the application. When you exit the application, the Elixir Desktop redisplay.
- When you open the Diskette, Dispatcher, or Scanners icon, a Properties dialog box displays, allowing you to set specifications and properties for these items.

Copy (<Ctrl> + <C>)

Copies a selected file or files to another folder or icon. When you select this option, the screen pointer changes to a small document icon attached to an up-arrow. To copy the file, click on the folder icon into which you want to copy the file, as follows:

- If copying to an Elixir folder (the Forms, Fonts, Graphics, or Documents folder icons on the top left of the Desktop), click on the appropriate Elixir folder, on an Input, Output, or Elixir folder, and finally on the destination folder.

- If copying to a non-Elixir folder, click on the User Files icon to display the User Files Directory Paths dialog box. In the dialog box, specify the directory into which you want to copy the file and click on [OK].

For information on copying files to and from diskettes and tapes, see the "Peripheral devices" and "Desktop basics" chapters.

New

Creates a new file in a window folder. A dialog box displays in which you enter the name and extension of the new file.

If you create an Elixir-format file in an Elixir folder, you do not need to specify an extension because the Elixir Desktop creates files with the appropriate extensions.

When you create a new Elixir font, you generate all three component files.

When you create a new file in the Elixir Documents folder, you generate a .DAT file with a sample (blank) form.

Duplicate

Creates a duplicate of a selected file in the same folder. A dialog box displays and prompts you to enter a name for the duplicate file.

Duplicating a file in any of the Elixir folders and not specifying an extension for the [into] option will generate the extension appropriate for that folder.

Delete ()

Deletes selected files and empty folders (you cannot delete a folder that contains files or other folders).

If [Confirm File Deletions] is selected (in the Desktop Usage Switch Settings dialog box accessed from the **System** menu), a confirmation prompt displays, showing the name of the file.

Properties (<F2>)

Allows you to view or set specifications in dialog boxes for files, the System Diskette, the converter, dispatcher, and attached scanners and printers.

- Selecting properties for the Diskette icon displays the System Diskette dialog box described in the “Desktop basics,” and “Peripheral devices” chapters.
- Selecting properties for the Converter icon displays the Converter Properties dialog box described in the “File conversions” chapter.
- Selecting properties for the Dispatcher icon displays the Dispatch Commands dialog box described in the “Accessing DOS files and applications” chapter.
- Selecting properties for the Scanners icon displays the User Application Setup dialog box, described in the “Peripheral devices” chapter.
- Selecting properties for the Printers icon displays the Print dialog box described in the “Local printers” appendix.

Print (<Ctrl>+<P>)

Sends one or more selected files to the default Windows printer and port. See the “Local printers” appendix for more information.

Print Directory Listing

Prints a listing of all files displayed in a folder.

View

This option is similar to copying a file to the Viewer icon and displays the selected file, if its extension links with a display application. For example, you can associate the .PCX extension with the PaintBrush application.

To make a file extension link to an application, use an ASCII editor to edit the *drive:\ELIXIR\ELX.INI* file and add the line *extension=application* to the file. For the above example, you would add *PCX= PBRUSH.EXE*.

Formats

Displays the File Formats dialog box that shows a list of folders that contain different formats of a selected file (files with the same stem name but different extensions). This feature is useful for checking or deleting different formats of a file that may exist on your hard disk.

Convert (<Ctrl> + <V>)

For one or more files selected in any Elixir folder (Forms, Fonts, or Graphics), choosing this option displays a Converter dialog box that allows you to specify the format to which you want to convert the selected file(s).

Alternatively, copy one or more selected files to the Converter icon (see the "File conversions" chapter for more information).

Transform

This option functions the same as using the Transformer icon.

Copying an Elixir or Xerox format file to the Transformer icon allows applying utilities to the files which generally modify the file headers without converting the file to another format. Refer to the "Transformations" chapter for more information.

Dispatch (<Ctrl> + <I>)

With one or more files selected, opens the Dispatcher Commands dialog box. See the “Accessing DOS files and applications” chapter for more information.

Close (<F3>)

Closes an open window. Alternatively, click on the close box on the window header.

Exit Elixir (<Alt> + <F4>)

Closes the Elixir Desktop and returns to Windows.

System menu

The **System** menu allows you to configure the Elixir Sys Desktop. The “Desktop configuration” chapter describes all options in the System menu.

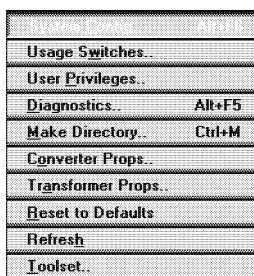


Figure C-3. System menu

System Config <Alt> + <F6>

Allows you to configure basic system parameters such as warnings, logo displays, conversion parameters, and double-click speed.

Usage Switches

Allows you to customize the Desktop by enabling and disabling some options. Options include confirmation dialog boxes, property sheets, saving settings on exit, converter selections, and when to stop processes.

User Privileges

Allows you to set the level of control over certain Desktop operations for the user.

For example, you can choose whether or not to allow a user to access an Elixir application from the Desktop. If you choose not to allow access, the icons representing the Elixir application and its associated folder do not display.

Diagnostics <Alt> + <F5>

Allows you to run a number of diagnostic utilities and to enter a command to run a diagnostic program of your choice.

Make Directory <Ctrl> + <M>

Allows you to create a DOS directory.

Converter Props

Allows you to specify certain initial setup options for converting files and lets you modify control parameters for the Converter icon.

Transformer Props

Allows you to specify certain initial setup options for transforming files and lets you modify control parameters for the Transformer icon.

Reset to Defaults

Resets all configuration parameters to the default values.

Refresh

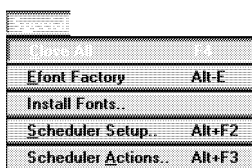
Refreshes the screen display. You may want to use this option if closing a window does not completely remove it or leaves “snow” on the screen.

Toolset

Allows you to switch between Desktop toolsets.

Special menu

The **Special** menu contains the options shown in the following figure.



Close All	F4
Efont Factory	Alt-E
Install Fonts...	
Scheduler Setup...	Alt+F2
Scheduler Actions...	Alt+F3

Figure C-4. Special Menu

Close All (<F4>)

Closes all open windows on the Desktop.

Efont Factory

Displays the Contour Fonts folder window (*drive:\ELIXIR\FONTS\CONTOURS* directory which, if installed, initially contains 35 Bitstream Facelift contour font files.

The Elixir Efont Factory utility makes high-quality screen and printer fonts for PostScript-compatible printers from these contour fonts, and any other Bitstream Facelift-compatible contour fonts you install in this directory. See the “File conversions” chapter for more information about contour-to-raster font conversion.

ATM Fonts (<Alt> + <A>)

Displays the ATM Fonts folder contents.

TrueType Fonts (<Alt> + <T>)

Displays the TrueType Fonts folder contents.

Install Fonts

Runs the Bitstream Loadtype program that installs Bitstream Facelift fonts on your PC. The program prompts you to insert diskette #1 of your Bitstream Facelift package into your diskette drive.

Scheduler Setup (<Alt> + <F2>)

The Scheduler Desktop is a network-independent enhancement to the Desktop that automates file conversion and enables stand-alone “hands off” operation of Elixir tools.

Scheduler Action (<Alt> + <F3>)

Allows you to define up to eight Scheduler actions such as testing for a file in a given directory, checking a date and time, or testing TRUE continuously for the action specified.

Global View (<Ctrl> + <G>)

Displays the Global View dialog box with options for setting the file viewing for all Elixir resource folders or the local (active) folder only. Click on the [Global/Local] button to switch between local or global settings.

DOS

The DOS menu allows you run to DOS commands from the Desktop.

DOS Command (<Ctrl> + <D>)

Displays a dialog box allowing you to enter any standard DOS command.

Enter a DOS command and click on [OK] to clear the Desktop and execute the command from the following directories:

- from the *drive:\ELIXIR* directory, if there are no windows open on the Desktop
- from the directory corresponding to the window, if a window is open on the Desktop.

After execution, the program prompts you to press any key to redisplay the Desktop.

Window menu

The **Window** menu contains options for arranging the display of open windows (and dialog boxes) on the Elixir Desktop. It also contains an options for opening a message dialog box that displays current activities.

The bottom portion of the **Window** menu shows numbered entries allowing you to activate previously opened windows and dialog boxes.

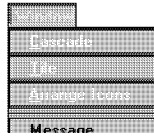


Figure C-5. Window menu

The **Window** menu contains the following options:

Cascade

You can arrange open windows so each header shows and the active window displays in full on top of the other windows.

Tile

You can resize and arrange windows side-by-side so each window displays fully. The active window header displays as highlighted.

Arrange Icons

This option arranges icons in an orderly manner within the a window or on the Desktop.

Message

This option displays a message dialog box containing information on current Desktop activity.

Help menu

The Help menu contains Windows on-line help for the ElixSys Desktop. See the "Introduction" chapter for details.

D.

Palette Editor

This chapter describes color palettes and the Palette Editor included with the ElixirSys Desktop.

You use palettes to specify colors (for printing forms on full color printers like the 4700) or highlight colors (for printing forms on highlight color printers like the 4850 and 4890).

The following sections describe how colors print on full color and highlight color printers, and how to use palettes and the Palette Editor to specify colors.

How colors print

The following sections describe how colors print on Xerox highlight color and full color printers.

Highlight color printing

The Xerox 4850 and 4890 highlight color printers use proprietary technology to print with black plus one other color toner and white (the paper color). The Xerox 4850 and 4890 highlight color printers also function as full black-and-white printers.

Highlight color printing is the process of printing dots of primary colors very close to each other. You can use only one primary color toner in the printer at one time. The printer's highlight color capability allows it to produce the black and the second color in their pure form, and to also produce tints and shades of these primary colors.

The pure red, green, or blue colors are hues or highlight colors. To print different shades of a color, black dots are added during printing. The higher the density of black dots, the darker the shade. To print different tints of a color, less color pixels are applied to the paper, which increases the white component. The lower the density of the color pixels, the lighter the tint. The different combinations of color and black dots and white paper produce different shades and tints of a color. The printer palette specifies these shades and tints (including the pure highlight color).

Similarly, a PC palette describes the different shades and tints of a color you can use for creating and displaying form elements on a screen.

Full color printing

Xerox 4700 printers include the three pure CYAN, YELLOW, and MAGENTA inks. To print pure cyan, yellow, or magenta, the appropriate color ink dots (or pixels) are applied next to each other on the paper.

In addition, by combining (overlapping) 2 color inks on one pixel, you can create RED, GREEN, and BLUE colors. Note that combining all three inks produces black; however, BLACK ink is also present on the 4700 printer and produces a better result than combining the three inks.

In sum, 4700 printers can print six pure colors: CYAN, YELLOW, MAGENTA, RED, BLUE, and GREEN, plus BLACK.

Varying the ratio of adjacent colors and overlapping CYAN, YELLOW, and MAGENTA pixels and white areas on the paper produces different shades and tints of the above six colors (BLACK ink is for pure black areas). A PC palette describes the shades and tints that you can use in a form (including BLACK and three gray shades).

PC palette

This section describes PC palettes and how to create and print highlight color and full color forms.

Color palettes

To create an Elixir form that you can convert and print on a highlight color or full color printer, you must construct a PC palette file according to the following rules:

- The PC palette file extension is .PLF (for full color palettes) or .PAL (for highlight color palettes).
- The PC palette is in *drive:\ELIXIR\DESKTOP\SYSTEM\PALETTES*, where *drive*: is the hard disk drive on which the Desktop resides. The default palette for full-color users is COLOR.PLF. You can also use GRAY.PLF for printing grays.
- The PC palette is an ASCII file that on each line includes a color name, its corresponding screen RGB percentage values, followed by its corresponding printer RGB values. Carriage return/line feeds separate lines in the file.
- The PC palette starts with the lines BLACK, LIGHT_GRAY, MEDIUM_GRAY, DARK_GRAY, and can contain up to 27 additional colors (31 total). See the "Example: COLOR palette file" section for more information.

The PC palette "Color" has no corresponding COLOR printer palette.

You can construct a PC palette by using an ASCII editor and following the above rules or you can use the Palette Editor included with the Desktop. This appendix provides a Palette Editor description later on.

Example: COLOR palette file

One of the PC palettes included with the full color version of Elixiform is COLOR.PLF (the same as SAMPLE.PLF), an ASCII file containing the following lines:

```
BLACK 000000 000000 000000 000000 000000
LIGHT_GRAY 075000 075000 075000 075000 0
MEDIUM_GRAY 050000 050000 050000 050000
DARK_GRAY 025000 025000 025000 025000 0
RED 090000 000000 000000 079820 -001900
GREEN 000000 050000 015000 -007800 0252
BLUE 020000 000000 045000 004026 -00270
CYAN 000000 054000 070000 -014580 03090
YELLOW 100000 090000 000000 105569 00000
```

The first three numbers following a color name correspond to screen RGB (Red Green, and Blue) percentage values for the color. These numbers determine how the color displays on a color VGA monitor.

The next three numbers are the printer RGB percentage values. These numbers determine how the color prints on a 4700 printer. These numbers approximate the screen colors.

For example, the color RED is followed by:

```
090000 000000 000000 079820 -001900 000000
```

This means that the screen and printer version of RED contains the following RGB values:

- the screen red component is the 90% of the brightest possible red on the screen
- the screen green component is 0% of the brightest possible green on the screen
- the screen blue component is 0% of the brightest possible blue on the screen
- the printer RGB numbers correspond to percentage values of 79.82%, -19%, and 0.; these RGB numbers determine how 4700 printers combine inks when printing colors.

The printer RGB values in COLOR.PLF most closely match the corresponding screen RGB values.

If you do not specify printer RGB values for a color, the screen RGB values are used for printing.

If you do not specify screen nor printer RGB values, internal default values are applied. You can find a description of these default values in the "Saving a palette" section of this chapter.

Palette Editor

The Palette Editor accompanies the ElixSys Desktop and allows you to create or modify a PC palette by using simple mouse and keyboard actions.

The advantage of using the Palette Editor is that when palette colors display on a color VGA monitor, the effect of varying RGB values is visually apparent.

The Palette Editor creates and modifies .PLF and .PAL (ASCII) palette files in *drive:\ELIXIR\DESKTOP\SYSTEM\PALETTES*.

Starting the Palette Editor

To start the Palette Editor, open the User Tools icon and in the displayed dialog box open the PE.XAP icon.

The Palette Editor screen displays.

Palette Name:

Click on color name to edit

BLACK	
LIGHT GRAY	
MEDIUM GRAY	
DARK GRAY	

HighLight
Full
Clear
Load
Save
Edit List
Exit

Figure D-1. Palette Editor screen

The screen initially shows colors in a sample palette.

The [HighLight] option shown in the figure may be hidden.

Loading an existing palette

First decide whether you want to load a full color palette or a highlight color palette:

- To load an existing full color palette, select [Full] and select [Load]. This displays an Item Selector dialog box showing .PLF full color palettes in *drive:\ELIXIR\DESKTOP\SYSTEM\PALETTES*.
- To load an existing highlight color palette, select [Clear] to display the [HighLight] option, select [HighLight], and select [Load]. This displays an Item Selector dialog box showing .PAL highlight color palettes in *drive:\ELIXIR\DESKTOP\SYSTEM\PALETTES*.

Please note that selecting the [Full] color option disables the [HighLight] color option. To re-enable the [HighLight] color option select [Clear].

Click on a palette in the displayed list then click on [OK], or enter an existing palette stem name in the [Selection] field. The Palette Editor screen displays showing colors in the selected palette (similar to the above figure).

For example, selecting COLOR.PLF displays the Palette Editor screen with colors in the COLOR palette listed in the "PC palette" section. If you are using the Palette Editor for the first time, you may find it helpful to load the COLOR.PLF palette used in examples in this section.

Editing a color

To change RGB values for a color, click on the color to display the Edit Color screen. For example, in [Full] color mode with COLOR.PLF loaded, clicking on RED displays the following Edit Color screen.

The screenshot shows the 'Edit Color Screen' with the following elements:

- Color Name:** A text field containing 'RED'.
- Screen Section:**
 - Red: A numeric field with '90', up/down arrows, and a black color swatch.
 - Green: A numeric field with '0', up/down arrows, and a black color swatch.
 - Blue: A numeric field with '0', up/down arrows, and a black color swatch.
- Printer Section:**
 - Red: A numeric field with '80', up/down arrows, and a black color swatch.
 - Green: A numeric field with '-2', up/down arrows, and a black color swatch.
 - Blue: A numeric field with '0', up/down arrows, and a black color swatch.
- Buttons:** A row of buttons at the bottom: 'OK', 'RGB', 'RGB Lin', 'GRAY LIN', 'Copy', and 'Cancel'.

Figure D-2. Edit Color Screen

In [Full] color mode, the screen initially shows the palette color name (that you can change), and the color's screen and printer RGB percentage values (that you can also change). The corresponding screen and printer colors also display. In [HighLight] color mode the printer RGB values and color do not display.

To edit any of the RGB values, click on [RGB], then on the [up arrow] or [down arrow] buttons to change the RED, GREEN, or BLUE percentage values for the color. You can also click on the current percentage value to display a dialog box and enter a new percentage value.

Changing the screen RGB values affects the way a color displays; changing the printer RGB values affects the way the color prints. Please note that the printer color displayed is not necessarily the same as the color eventually printed, but is a rough guide for matching the printed color to the screen color.

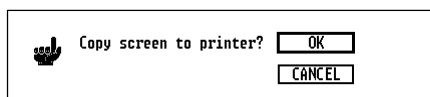
You can also click on [RGB Lin] to specify color in terms of RGB linear values, that are in units of one-hundredth of the RGB percentage values. These numbers range from -1 to +2 (for example 1=100% and .5=50%) and are significant to five decimal places.

If the color you want to change is a gray scale (equal components of red, green, and blue), click on [GRAY LIN]. A screen similar to the following displays.

Figure D-3. Gray scale values

The screen shows gray linear scale values for the screen color and (in [Full] color mode) printer color. In this scale, 0.10000 corresponds to white and 0.00000 corresponds to black.

In [Full] color mode for both colors and gray scales, if you want to copy the screen color component values for the printer, click on [Copy] and in the displayed dialog box click on [OK].



In the Edit Color screen, click on [Cancel] to retain previous values or [OK] to change the values you specified for the color.

Editing a palette

To edit a loaded palette, click on [Edit List] in the Palette Editor screen, shown in figure 4700-1. The Edit List screen for the palette displays.

Click on the color name and then choose an action.

Palette Name: COLOR	Palette Name:
BLACK	
LIGHT GRAY	
MEDIUM GRAY	
DARK GRAY	
RED	
GREEN	
BLUE	
CYAN	
YELLOW	
MAGENTA	

Figure D-4. Edit List screen for COLOR.PLF

The left side of the screen shows colors in the loaded palette.

To delete a color from the palette, move the highlight bar to the color and click on [Delete].

To copy colors from another palette to the current palette, click on [Load]. A file selector box showing all the .PLF (in full color mode) or .PAL (in highlight color mode) files in drive:\ELIXIR\DESKTOP\SYSTEM\PALETTES displays.

Click on a palette from which you want to copy colors to the current palette. The Edit List screen redisplay with the colors in the palette you selected displayed on the right-hand side of the screen, as shown in the following figure.

Click on the color name and then choose an action			
Palette Name: COLOR		Palette Name: GRAY	
BLACK		BLACK	GRAY 12
LIGHT GRAY		LIGHT GRAY	GRAY 13
MEDIUM GRAY		MEDIUM GRAY	GRAY 14
DARK GRAY		DARK GRAY	GRAY 15
RED		GRAY 0	
GREEN		GRAY 1	
BLUE		GRAY 2	
CYAN		GRAY 3	
YELLOW		GRAY 4	
MAGENTA		GRAY 5	
		GRAY 6	
		GRAY 7	
		GRAY 8	
		GRAY 9	
		GRAY 10	
		GRAY 11	

Figure D-5. Edit List screen for COLOR.PLF

The above example shows colors in the COLOR.PLF and GRAY.PLF palettes.

To copy a color from the right side of the screen to the left, follow these steps:

- Use the mouse to move the screen pointer to the left (the current palette).
- Move the screen pointer to the position to which you want to copy a color, click to highlight it, then click on [Insert]. This inserts a blank line at the highlighted bar.

- At the right of the screen click on the color you want to copy (to highlight it).
- Click on [Copy]. The color and its attributes (RGB values) copy to the currently loaded palette.

If you do not first insert a blank line in the current palette, the color you are copying from the right overwrites the highlighted color at the left.

Note that due to a 16-color display limit in GEM the screen background color may change as you edit a palette.

Click on [OK] to save changes or click on [Cancel] to cancel any changes.

Creating a new palette

To create a new palette, load an existing palette and modify it by adding, deleting, or changing colors, then save it with a new stem name.

Saving a palette

When you click on [Save] in the Edit Palette screen, the program prompts you to enter a name for the palette you modified. The changes you made in the loaded palette save to the file name you specify (with a .PLF extension in full color mode, or a .PAL extension in black-and-white or highlight color mode).

The file saved is an ASCII file in *drive:\ELIXIR \DESKTOP\SYSTEM\PALETTES*, constructed according to the rules described in the "Color palettes" section.

If you create or modify a palette using RGB, RGB linear, or gray linear scale values, the Palette Editor saves the palette as an ASCII file with RGB values for screen and (in [Full] color mode) printer colors.

In [Full] color mode, if you create a palette and do not specify printer RGB (or gray scale) values for a color, the screen RGB values are used for printing.

If you did not specify screen nor (in [Full] color mode) printer RGB values for a color, the internal default

values for the SAMPLE palette are applied. These default values apply based upon the position of the color in the palette.

For example, if you do not specify RGB values for the eighth color in a palette, RGB values for CYAN, the eighth color in SAMPLE are applied.

Glossary

This glossary contains a basic list of the terminology used in this guide.

application

Any program you run on your PC. Elixir applications are represented by icons on the Elixir Desktop. If an Elixir application is not installed on your PC, its icon does not display.

arrow

The screen pointer used for selecting objects.

button

An area on the screen that responds when you click on it. For example, each dialog box has an [OK] button that accepts your entries when you click on it.

centralized printer

Also called *production printer*. A classification of large, high speed Xerox printers. Examples of centralized printers are the 4050, 4650, 4090, 4850, 4890, 8700, 8790, 9700, and 9790. See also *distributed printers*.

click, on an item

To momentarily press and release the left mouse button with the screen pointer on an item.

close

To exit from a window, dialog box, or the Desktop.

close box

A small white box at the left of a window header and at the left of the menu bar. Clicking a close box on a window header closes the window. Clicking a close box on the menu bar exits the Desktop.

command button

A button in a dialog box that confirms or cancels an action when you click on it. The [Cancel] button cancels the command. The [OK] button confirms and executes the command and saves the information you specified in a dialog box.

Converter icon

The icon that converts font, form, graphics, and document files.

cursor

An I-shaped screen pointer used when entering text in a dialog box.

Desktop

The ElixSys Desktop working environment, consisting of the menu bar, the screen area, and the icons on the screen.

dialog box

A rectangular box that displays and requests information. You enter information in fields in the dialog box, and normally confirm your entries by clicking on an [OK] button or by pressing <Enter>.

dimmed options

Dimmed options are menu options you cannot choose because they do not apply to your current selection. Also called grayed options.

directory

A list of hard disk or diskette contents. Desktop directories are represented by folder icons. Folder contents can be viewed pictorially, alphabetically, by icon, by size, or by date.

Dispatcher icon

The icon that stores and invokes a number of DOS commands.

distributed printers

A classification of Xerox printers that are smaller and slower than Xerox production (also known as centralized) printers. Examples of distributed printers are the 2700, 3700, 4045, and 4700.

DOS

Disk Operating System, the collection of programs that gives control of a PC's resources to the user.

double-click

To press the left mouse button twice in rapid succession.

drag

To click on an item and move the item with the mouse while holding down the left mouse button.

drag and drop

Used to copy an object as follows: click on an item on the screen, hold down the left mouse button, move the mouse to move the screen pointer to an icon, and release the mouse button.

drop

To release the mouse button after dragging an item to an icon.

Elixir folders

The folders represented by the four top left icons on the Desktop: the Forms, Fonts, Graphics, and Documents folders. Each of these folders contains an Elixir, Input, and Output folder. See the "Folders and directories," chapter for information about DOS subdirectories that correspond to the above folders.

Elixir FSL

The subset of FSL generated by Elixir.

extension

The three characters following the period after a file name. In the Desktop, an extension identifies the type of information in a file. For example, .ELX indicates an Elixir format form file.

fast keys

See the "Keyboard shortcuts" appendix.

file name

The name of a file. The Elixir Desktop uses DOS file naming conventions. DOS file names consist of a base (stem) name containing up to eight characters and an extension of up to three characters. Xerox centralized printer file names consist of a stem name of up to six characters and an extension of up to three characters.

folder icon

The Desktop icon representing a DOS directory. Folders allow you to quickly organize information on the Desktop.

form font list

An ASCII .LST file (Flist) in the default Elixiform screen fonts directory. This file lists up to 24 screen font stem names which can be used to create an Elixir form.

form list file

A form list (.DAT) is an ASCII file that contains a list of Elixir form file names (.ELX files) and commands that control how specific forms are printed.

format

To prepare a diskette so it can hold information. Formatting a diskette erases the information on the diskette. The Elixir Desktop allows you to format Xerox-format diskettes.

generic Elixir format

The DOS file format an Elixir application uses (such as Elixiform, Elixigraphics, and Elixiform).

highlighted

A highlighted icon indicates that the icon is selected.

HighLight Color

A type of Xerox centralized printer with the capability to print in black and an additional color called a high-light color.

icon

A small symbol on the Desktop that represents an application, a file, a folder, or a peripheral device.

importing files

The process of copying non-Elixir format files from different storage media (such as the hard disk, a diskette, or tape) to the appropriate Desktop input folder.

inverse landscape/portrait

The orientation of fonts, logos, or images on a page. See the definition for **portrait** for a figure describing the orientation of fonts on pages. See figure G-1.

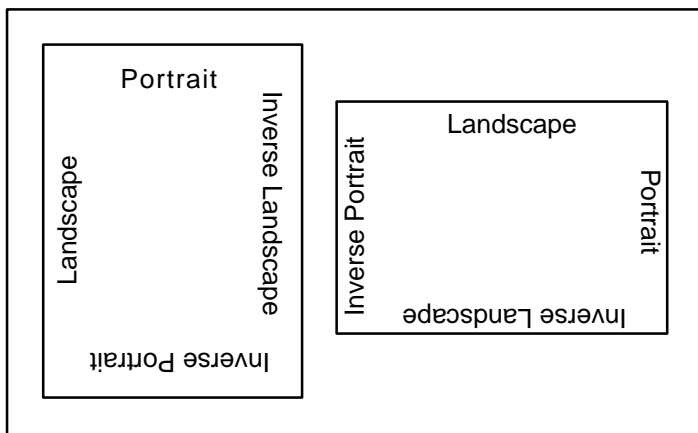


Figure G-1. Orientation of fonts on a Portrait (left) and a Landscape (right) page

invoke

To start an application. Also referred to as *run* .

kerning

The technique of changing the printed space between characters from the normal spacing. The effect is created by overlapping characters.

keyboard shortcut

Also called a Fast Key. A one- or two-key combination that allows you to execute an option without using the mouse. Keyboard shortcuts are shown on each menu beside the name of the option and are listed in the "Keyboard shortcuts" appendix.

landscape

The orientation of a page or the fonts, logos, or images on a page. A landscape page is narrower on the sides than on the top. See figure G-1.

menu

A list of options from which you make a selection to perform an action. A menu displays when you select a menu title from the menu bar or from a window header.

menu bar

The horizontal bar displayed at the top of the Desktop from which you access pull-down menus.

menu titles

Text that identifies a menu, displayed in a window header or on the menu bar.

message area

A bar just below the menu bar that displays error messages or information about the activity you are performing.

metacode

The 9700 printer series Xerox-format print stream.

mouse button

A button on top of the mouse. The Elixir Desktop supports most actions using the left mouse button. The right button is used for displaying icon properties for displaying Help.

multi-select

Selecting more than one file or icon by shift-clicking on them.

open a folder, Elixir file, application, or peripheral device:

1.) Opening a folder icon displays a window showing the contents of the folder. 2.) Opening an Elixir file icon starts the application that created the file and loads the file. 3.) Opening an application icon starts the application. 4.) Opening a peripheral device displays a properties dialog box allowing you to set the device parameters.

option

A word or phrase in a menu that you can select.

peripheral (device)

A printer, scanner, diskette drive or tape drive connected to your PC.

point

To move the mouse so the screen pointer (in most cases an arrow) rests on the desired item.

portrait

The orientation of a page or the fonts, logos, or images on a page. A portrait page is narrower on top than on the side (like pages in this book). See figure G-1.

Printers icon

The icon representing a proof-printer connected to your PC.

production printer

See *centralized printer*.

pull-down menu

See *menu*.

raster graphics

Pictures composed of bit maps, where each element of the picture is a dot defined as black or white.

replaceable parameter

A parameter (usually %1) used in DOS commands to represent a selected file name. The selected file name replaces the parameter during certain operations.

run

To execute or start an application. Also referred to as *invoke*.

Scanners icon

The icon representing a scanner connected to your PC.

screen pointer

A pointer shaped like an arrow that displays on the screen, and which you can move by rolling the mouse on a flat surface.

scroll

To move a directory list in a window so you can view different parts of the list.

scroll bar

A bar displayed on the right side of some windows used for scrolling. The scroll bar contains a scroll arrow, + and - buttons, and a slider bar that moves within the scroll box.

select

To click on an object or menu option. A selected item appears highlighted.

shift-click

To click on an object while holding down the <Shift> key. Usually used to select multiple items.

slider bar

A bar in the scroll box at the side of some windows that scrolls items in the window when you drag it up and down.

Tape icon

The icon representing a tape drive connected to your PC.

Trashbin icon

The Trashbin icon is in the lower right corner of the Desktop and represents a receptacle for items you want to delete. You delete a file by dragging it to the Trashbin icon.

UDK

(User Defined Key) a substitute escape character defined by a user for specific print jobs. See also *XES*.

unselect

To cause one or more selected (highlighted) icons to not be selected any more. The quickest way to do this is to click on another area of the Desktop.

User Files icon

The icon that links applications to files.

User Tools icon

The icon that allows you to create and define icons for DOS applications and batch files.

utilities

Special-purpose applications with which you can perform functions from the DOS prompt. For example, the Elixidisk utilities allows you to read, write, and format Xerox printer format diskettes.

VIPP format

Xerox's Variable-data Intelligent PostScript Printer format. The output file extension is ..VIP.

wildcard character

A character in a file name, usually an asterisk (*), that specifies a matching set. For example, *.FNT represents all files that end with the .FNT extension.

window

A rectangular area on your screen in which you view information, such the contents of a folder. All windows contain a window header. Some windows have scroll bars along the right side.

window header

The top of a window that displays the DOS directory corresponding to the window contents. Some window headers also show a close box and a number of menu titles with pull-down menus.

Xerox-labeled files

Files containing 128-byte or 512-byte Xerox headers, or labels.

XES

(Xerox Escape Sequence) a Xerox printer command language recognized by Xerox distributed printers (such as 2700, 3700, 4045, 4235, and 4700).

4

4235 XES jobs,
4235-10, 4235-15

A

access alternatives, 4-6
AppBuilder for VIPP
icon, 2-4
applications icons
 creating, 9-2
 Desktop, 2-4
 ElixIDoc, 2-5
 ElixiFont, 2-4
 ElixiForm, 2-4
 ElixGraphics, 2-4
 ElixImage, 2-5
 opening, 5-3
 overview, 2-4
Arguments to this Program, 9-13
AUTOEXEC.BAT, 4-9,
9-2, 9-21

B

backup button, 2-7, 9-10
batch files, 9-13, 9-14
Bitstream Facelift fonts,
7-42, B-2
Bitstream Fontware,
7-42
BTFONTS.MAP, B-2
BTFONTS.NAM, B-2

C

Clipboard, 2-4
CLR2BW utility, 11-10
color
 palettes, D-3
 printing, D-1
COMMAND.COM, 9-14
CONFIG.SYS, 4-9, 6-4,
9-2
configuration options,
4-2
confirm/warn settings,
4-4, 7-7, 8-2
contour fonts, 7-42, B-2
conventions
 display, 1-3
 font naming, 7-46
 typographical, 1-4
Converter
 icon, 2-6, 5-6, 10
 overview, 2-6
 properties, 4-5,
4-10, 5-6, 7-5
 setup, 7-5
Converter properties,
7-6
converting
 .FSL records, 8-5
 color forms, HLC-2
 documents, 7-57
 fonts, 7-4, 7-33
 forms, 7-3, 7-9,
7-20, 7-24, 7-26
 forms to graphics,
7-19
 FRM, 7-28, 7-30
 FSL, 7-28, 7-30

- general, 10
- graphics, 7-50
- graphics to tiles in a font, 7-52
- HP PCL, 7-10
- HP PCL fonts, 7-35
- metacode, 7-31, 7-58
- outline fonts, 7-42
- PDF, 7-20
- PostScript, 7-16
- procedures, 7-8
- setup parameters, 7-5
- to IMG and LGO, 7-55
- to Xerox fonts, 7-37
- VIPP, 7-24
- XSOP, 7-26
- copying files, 5-10
- creating
 - a .PUB file, 5-27
- customer support, 1-2
- customizing the Desktop, 4-1, 4-4

D

- DAT files, 4235-10, 4235-16, 4235-23, 4700-15, 4700-20, 4700-27
- Data Jobs
 - Elixir folders, 3-23
- DataWare card, 10-15
- Desktop
 - archival feature, 5-26
 - basic setup, 4-3
 - basics, 2-1
 - basics/common chapters, 1-6
 - Clipboard, 2-4
 - confirm file deletions, 4-4
 - customizing, 4-1, 4-4

- DOS menu, 9-23, C-10
- exiting, 2-14
- features, additional, 5-1
- File menu, 5-1, C-1
- folders, 2-3, 3-1
- Help menu, C-11
- icons, 2-2
- keyboard shortcuts, A-1
- layout, 2-1
- menu bar, 2-1, 2-2, 4-1, C-1
- message area, 2-1
- palette editor, D-1
- resetting, 4-14
- Scheduler Desktop, 5-30
- Special menu, 4-1, 5-1, C-8
- starting, 1-8
- system configuration, 4-2
- System menu, 4-1, 5-1, C-6
- toolsets, 4-15
- usage switches, 4-4
- user privileges, 4-5
- Window menu, C-10
- diagnostics, 4-8
- directories
 - accessing, 9-9
 - Bitstream Facelift mapping, B-2
 - changing, 9-10
 - contour fonts mapping, B-2
 - creating, 4-9
 - DOS, 5-12
 - palettes, D-3
 - PostScript mapping, B-1
 - structure, 3-1
 - User Files, 9-9
 - working, 7-6
- diskette

- accessing, 6-1
- DOS format, 5-13, 5-14, 6-1, 6-2
- properties, 4-4
- system, 5-13, 6-2
- Xerox format, 5-17, 6-1, 6-3
- Diskette icon, 2-5, 5-3, 5-14, 5-16, 6-1
- DISP utility, 11-11
- Dispatcher
 - example, 9-21
 - icon, 2-6, 5-6, 9-1, 9-15
 - properties, 5-6
- Dispatcher Commands dialog, 9-16
- display options, files, 2-12
- Docs Jobs
 - Elixir folders, 3-23
- documents
 - Elixir Documents
 - folder, 3-19
 - folders, 3-18
 - Input Documents
 - folder, 3-20
 - Output Documents
 - folder, 3-20
 - transformer options, 8-8
- Documents folder, 2-3, 3-18, 7-4
- DOS
 - access, 2-14, 4-7, 4-8, 9-1, 9-9, C-10
 - batch files, 9-13
 - commands, 9-19, 9-23, C-10
 - copying files, 5-11, 5-12
 - directories, 3-1, 5-12, 9-9
 - diskette, 5-13, 5-14, 6-1
 - executable, 9-13
 - folders and directories, 3-1

- linking files, 5-4
- menu, 2-14, 9-23, C-10
- opening files, 5-4
- storing commands, 9-15
- DOS-Elixir format diskette, 5-15
- DOS menu, 2-14, 9-23, C-10
- double-click speed, 4-3
- downloading files
 - building a JCL, 10-8
 - overview, 10-7
 - to a printer, 10-8
 - using FILE command, 10-11
 - using HOSTCOPY, 10-7
- DSK2TAP utility, 11-12
- Duplicate commands, 4235-35

E

- Efont Factory, 7-42, 7-46, 11-25
- ElixDisk utility, 11-2
- ElixiDoc icon, 2-5
- ElixiFont icon, 2-4
- ElixiForm
 - default font, 5-41
 - icon, 2-4
- ElixiGraphics icon, 2-4
- ElixiKey, 4-9
- ElixImposer, 11-13, 4235-19
- Elixir Docs Jobs folder, 4235-2
- Elixir folders
 - Data Jobs, 3-23
 - Docs Jobs, 3-23
 - Documents, 3-19
 - Fonts, 3-10
 - Forms, 3-6
 - Graphics, 3-15
 - structure, 3-2
- Elixir HP print driver, 4

Elixir Image Viewer,
5-40
ElixirScan icon, 2-5
ElixScript Converter
Properties, 7-17
ELX2MET utility, 11-13
ELX2XES utility, 11-16,
4235-24, 4700-21
ELXDATA utility, 11-19
ELXINV utility, 11-16
ELXOPT utility, 11-18
ELXWDATA utility, 9-2,
11-16
ENDFILE.END, 10-8
exiting the Desktop,
1-10, 2-14
Extra Converter Options,
7-52

F

fast keys, A-1
File menu, 5-1, C-1
File Object Properties,
7-1
file transfer
 configuration, 10-2
 copying files to the
 printer, 10-11
 from the host, 10-7
 JCL dataset, 10-8
 metacode, upload-
 ing, 10-12
 metacode specifica-
 tions, 10-14
 specifications, 10-5
 to the host, 10-2
 using DataWare
 card, 10-16
 using FILE com-
 mand, 10-11
 using IBM 3270,
 10-1
 using IRMA
 FT/3270, 10-1
 using IRMA FTTSO,
 10-1

 using MET2871,
 10-15
 using SPUR, 10-17
files
 .BAK, 3-6
 .BAT, 9-14
 .COM, 9-14
 .ELX, 7-3, 7-4
 .FRM, 8-4
 .FSL, 8-4
 .HDR, 7-4
 .INV, 3-6
 .LP3, 7-4, 7-19, 7-52
 .MET, 8-11
 .MIP, 8-11
 .PAL, 9-2, D-3
 .PCX, 5-38
 .PLF, 9-2, D-3
 .PRN, 8-5
 .PUB, 3-6, 5-27
 .TDF, 7-49, B-2
 .TFB, 7-45, B-2
 .TXT, 7-52
 access alternatives,
 4-6
 AUTOEXEC.BAT,
 4-9, 9-2, 9-21
 batch (.BAT), 9-14
 BTFONTS.MAP,
 B-2
 BTFONTS.NAM,
 B-2
 COMMAND.COM,
 9-14
 CONFIG.SYS, 4-9,
 6-4, 9-2
 confirm/warn set-
 tings, 4-4, 4-13
 conversion process,
 7-8
 converting, 7-1
 copying, 5-10, 9-11
 copying from a tape,
 5-22
 copying to a tape,
 5-24

- DAT, 4700-15, 4700-20, 4700-27
- deleting, 4-4
- display options, 2-12
- editing, 3-4
- Elixir-to-Xerox, 5-17
- ENDFILE.END, 10-8
- formats, 5-7
- graphics, 5-39
- INSTALL.LOG, 4-9, 9-2
- linked, 9-13
- linking, 5-4, 9-11
- management, 5-5
- overwriting, 4-4
- properties, 5-5, 7-1
- PSEND.PSC, B-1
- PSFONT.MAP, 7-27, 7-45, B-1
- PSTOP.PSC, B-1
- PSTRAIL.PSC, B-2
- TAPE_MT0.SYS, 6-3
- transfer packages, 10-1
- transferring, 10-1
- transforming, 8-1
- uploading, 10-2
- versions, 5-7
- view, 3-4
- Xerox-to-Elixir, 5-19
- Filter menu, 2-8
- FIXLP3 utility, 11-19
- FNT75HDR utility, 11-20
- folders
 - copying files, 5-13
 - Desktop, 3-1
 - Documents, 3-18, 7-4
 - Elixir, 3-2, 3-3, 5-2, 7-3
 - Elixir Data Jobs folder, 3-23
 - Elixir Docs Jobs folder, 3-23
 - Elixir Documents folder, 3-19
 - Elixir Fonts folder, 3-10
 - Elixir Forms folder, 3-6
 - Elixir Graphics folder, 3-15
 - Elixir Jobs folder, 3-23
 - file display in, 3-4
 - Fonts, 2-3, 3-10, 7-4
 - Forms, 2-3, 3-5, 7-3
 - Graphics, 2-3, 3-15, 7-4
 - Input, 3-3
 - Input Documents folder, 3-20
 - Input Fonts folder, 3-11
 - Input Forms folder, 3-8
 - Input Graphics folder, 3-15
 - Jobs, 7-5
 - opening, 5-2
 - Output, 3-4
 - Output Documents folder, 3-20
 - Output Fonts folder, 3-13
 - Output Forms folder, 3-8
 - Output Graphics folder, 3-17
 - printing contents, 5-8
 - structure, 3-2
 - User Files, 2-4
- font
 - ElixirForm default, 5-41
- font conversions, 4235-14
- Font Converter Options, 7-37
- font mapping, 7-27

- font mapping table,
4135-3, 4235-12,
4235-13, 4700-17
- FONTCHG utility, 11-20
- FontCVT utility, 11-22
- FontMAP utility, 11-25
- fonts
 - .Screen conver-
sions, 7-34
 - .Window conver-
sions, 7-34
 - Bitstream Facelift,
7-42, B-2
 - Bitstream Fontware,
7-42
 - BTFONTS.MAP,
B-2
 - BTFONTS.NAM,
B-2
 - contour, 7-42, B-2
 - converter options,
7-34
 - converting, 7-33
 - Efont Factory, 7-42
 - Elixir fonts folder,
3-10
 - generating Elixir
fonts, 7-49
 - generating non-Elixir
fonts, 7-49
 - HP PCL, 7-35
 - HP PCL in Windows
applications, 7-36
 - HP PCL soft fonts,
7-36
 - Input Fonts folder,
3-11
 - Kerning, 7-45
 - loading, LOCAL-3
 - mapping, 7-27, 7-44
 - name, 8-7
 - naming conventions,
7-46
 - orientation, 7-46
 - outline, 7-42
 - Output Fonts folder,
3-13
 - PSEND.PSC, B-1
 - PSFONT.MAP,
7-27, 7-45, B-1
 - PSTOP.PSC, B-1
 - PSTRAIL.PSC, B-2
 - screen, 7-50
 - transformer options,
8-6
 - transforming Xerox
fonts, 7-50
 - TrueType, 7-38
- Fonts folder, 2-3, 3-10,
7-4
- FontTBL utility, 11-26
- FontTRAN utility,
11-27
- Form Converter Options,
7-10
- Form Converter options,
7-16
- form list file, 4235-33,
4700-30
- FORMCVT utility, 11-28
- FORMPRN properties,
7-11
- FORMPRN utility, 11-30
- forms
 - color, D-3
 - converting, 7-9
 - converting to graph-
ics, 7-19
 - Elixir Forms folder,
3-6
 - Input Forms folder,
3-7, 3-8
 - Output Forms folder,
3-8
 - PDF, 7-20
 - transformer options,
8-3
 - VIPP, 7-24
 - XSOP, 7-26
- Forms folder, 2-3, 3-5,
7-3, 7-9
- FSIMG utility, 11-33
- FTTSO, 10-1

G

global view, 3-4

graphics

.BMP conversions,
7-54

.PCX and .TIF con-
versions, 7-53

converting to tiles in
a font, 7-52

Elixir Graphics

folder, 3-15

Elixir Image Viewer,
5-40

Highlight Color op-
tion, 7-54

Input Graphics

folder, 3-15

Output Graphics

folder, 3-17

restrictions and limi-
tations, 7-54

tiles, 7-52

transformer options,
8-8

Graphics folder, 2-3,
3-15, 7-4

H

Help menu, C-11

Highlight Color option,
7-54

highlight color printing,
D-1

HOSTCOPY utility, 10-2,
10-7

HP Font Converter Op-
tions, 7-35

HP PCL

fonts, 7-36

HPEDIT utility, 11-37

I

IBM/IRMA 3270, 10-1

IC utility, 11-39

icon

jobs, 4700-8

icons

applications, 2-4,
5-3, 9-2

checking properties,
9-7

Clipboard, 2-4

Converter, 2-6, 5-6,
10

create (example),
9-6

Desktop, 2-2

Diskette, 2-5, 5-3,
6-1

Dispatcher, 2-6, 5-4,
5-6, 9-1, 9-15

Documents, 2-3, 7-4

ElixiDoc, 2-5

ElixiFont, 2-4

ElixiForm, 2-4

ElixiGraphics, 2-4

ElixirImage, 2-5

folders, 2-3

Fonts, 2-3, 7-4

Forms, 2-3, 7-3, 7-9

Graphics, 2-3, 7-4

Jobs, 2-3, 7-5

modifying, 5-2

opening, 5-2

Printers, 2-6

properties, 5-2, 5-4

Scanners, 2-6, 5-4,
6-5

Tape, 2-5, 5-3, 6-3

Transformer, 2-7,
4-13

Trashbin, 2-6

User Files, 2-4, 3-2,
5-11, 9-1, 9-9

User Tools, 2-5, 9-1,
9-2

Ventura Publisher,
9-6

Viewer, 2-7, 5-38,
5-39

- IEBGENER utility, 10-8
- Image Converter Options, 7-19, 7-51
- Image Viewer, 5-40
- Input Contours folder window, 7-43
- Input folders
 - Documents, 3-20
 - Fonts, 3-11
 - Forms, 3-7, 3-8
 - Graphics, 3-15
 - structure, 3-3
- INSTALL.LOG, 4-9, 9-2
- IRMA FTTSO, 10-1

J

- job
 - creation, 4235-10
 - printing, 4235-14
- job print ticket, 4235-4, 4235-32, 4700-10, 4700-29
- Jobs folder, 2-3, 3-23, 7-5, 4235-2
- jobs icon, 4235-1, 4700-8

K

- Kerning, 7-45
- keyboard mapping, 7-23
- keyboard shortcuts, A-1

L

- large paper sizes, 4135-2
- LGO2LP3 utility, 11-40
- linked files, 9-13
- linking files, 9-11
- Local view, 2-13
- logo, display, 5-9
- LP32ELX utility, 11-41

M

- mapping, 7-27, 7-44, B-1
- mapping table
 - Bitstream Facelift fonts, B-2
 - contour fonts, B-2
 - directories, B-1
 - PostScript, B-1
- memory, 4-8
- menus
 - Desktop, 2-1, 5-1, C-1
 - Desktop menu bar, 2-1
 - DOS, 2-14, 9-23, C-10
 - File, 5-1, C-1
 - Filter, 2-8
 - Help, C-11
 - options, C-1
 - Selection, 2-9
 - Special, 4-1, 5-1, C-8
 - System, 4-1, 5-1, 9-23, C-6
 - Tools, 9-2, 9-11
 - View, 2-12
 - Window, C-10
- message area, 2-1
- message reporting, 4-12, 4-14, 7-7
- MET2871 utility, 10-15, 11-42
- MET2ELX utility, 11-42
- metacode
 - compressing files, 8-11
 - compression utility, 8-11
 - uploading files, 10-12
- Metacode Compression Utility, 8-11
- Metacode Converter Options, 7-31
- monochrome monitor setup, 4-5

multiple-page document,
4235-17
multiple impositions,
4235-18

N

NAMEFNT utility, 8-7,
11-46
NAMEUDK utility, 8-5,
11-47
Notepad, 5-38

O

Outline-to-raster font
generator, 7-43
Output folders
 Fonts, 3-13
 Forms, 3-8
 Graphics, 3-17
 structure, 3-4
Output Jobs folder,
4235-9

P

PACK utility, 10-1, 11-48
page print ticket, 4235-8,
4700-12
page shift, LOCAL-11
PageHandler
 compressing meta-
 code, 8-11
PaintBrush, 5-38
palette editor
 accessing, 9-2
 creating a palette,
 D-11
 editing a color, D-7
 editing a palette, D-9
 example file, D-4
 forms, D-3
 full color printing,
 D-2
 highlight color print-
 ing, D-1

loading a palette,
D-6
overview, D-1
PC palette file, D-3
saving a palette,
D-11
screen, D-6
starting, D-5
PALFIX utility, 11-48
paper, large size, 4135-2
PDF Settings, 7-21
peripheral devices, 6-1
PostScript mapping ta-
ble, B-1
PostScript printing,
LOCAL-7
Print dialog box, 2, 4
Print Driver Dialog, 7-13,
7-17
Print Select dialog box, 8
Print Special dialog box,
LOCAL-9
printer-specific, D-1
 chapters, 1-8
 Elixir forms, D-3
 file transfer, 10-1
 icon, 2-6
 operations, 1-8
 print drivers, 4-11
 properties, 4-4
printer palette, HLC-4
printers
 supported, 12
Printers icon, 2-6
printing
 color forms, HLC-3
 folder contents, 5-8
 fonts as graphic,
 LOCAL-3
 form files, 1
 local, 1
 non-Elixir forms, 6
 PostScript,
 LOCAL-7
 proof, 1
 to an XES printer, 8
PROOF45 utility, 11-50
properties

- Converter, 4-5, 4-10, 5-6, 7-5
- diskette, 4-4
- Dispatcher, 5-6
- displaying icon, 9-6
- file, 5-5, 7-1
- icons, 5-4, 9-6
- printer, 4-4
- scanner, 4-5, 6-6
- tape, 6-4
- tool, 9-13
- Transformer, 4-13, 8-1
- user application, 6-6
- PSFONT.MAP, 7-27, 7-45, B-1
- PSSTASH, B-1
- PSTRAIL.PSC, B-2
- PUB files
 - copying to diskette, 5-29
 - creating, 5-27
 - restoring from diskette, 5-29

R

- refreshing screen, 4-14
- restrictions, graphics, 7-54

S

- scanners
 - icon, 2-6, 5-4, 6-5
 - properties, 4-5, 6-6
- Scanners icon, 2-6, 5-3, 6-5
- Scheduler Desktop
 - actions/tasks, 5-33
 - examples, 5-36
 - setup, 5-31
 - use, 5-30
- screen, refreshing, 4-14
- screen fonts, 7-50
- Selection menu, 2-9
- short edge feed, 4135-2

- shortcuts, keyboard, A-1
- SHOWBLOK utility, 11-52
- SHOWELX utility, 11-53
- soft fonts, 7-15
- SP utility, 11-54
- Special menu, 4-1, 5-1, C-8
- SPUR utility, 10-17, 11-56
- stand-alone utilities, 7-51, 11-1
- starting the Desktop, 1-8
- STRIP utility, 8-4, 8-6, 8-10, 11-58
- sub-window, 2-7
- support, customer, 1-2
- system configuration, 4-2
- system diskette, 5-13, 6-2
- System menu, 4-1, 5-1, 9-23, C-6

T

- TAP2DSK utility, 11-59
- tape
 - configuring, 6-3
 - copying files to/from, 5-21
 - icon, 2-5, 5-3, 6-3
 - non-responding unit, 6-5
 - properties, 6-4
- TAPE_MT0.SYS, 6-3
- Tape icon, 2-5, 5-3, 5-21, 6-3
- tool properties, 9-13
- Tools menu, 9-2, 9-11
- toolsets, 4-15
- Transformer
 - confirm/warn settings, 4-13
 - icon, 2-7, 8-1
 - properties, 4-13, 8-1
 - setup, 8-1
- transforming

- documents, 7-60
- forms, 7-33
- Xerox documents, 8-8
- Xerox fonts, 8-6
- Xerox forms, 8-3
- Xerox graphics, 8-8
- Trashbin icon, 2-6
- TrueType fonts, 7-38

U

UDK

- escape code, 8-5, 4235-28, 4700-12
- file name, 8-7

UDK escape character, LOCAL-11

uploading files

- metacode overview, 10-12
- metacode transfer parameters, 10-14
- metacode using 3270 or FT/3270, 10-12
- metacode using FTTSO, 10-13
- overview, 10-2
- transfer parameters, 10-5
- using 3270 or FT/3270, 10-2
- using FTTSO, 10-4
- using MET2871, 10-15

usage switches, 4-4

User Application Setup, 9-2, 9-13

User Files

- directories, 5-11, 9-9
- icon, 2-4, 3-2, 5-11, 9-1, 9-9
- mapping tables, B-1
- tool links, 5-12, 9-9

user privileges, 4-5

User Tools

- creating applications
- icons, 9-2
- displaying icon properties, 9-6
- example, 9-6
- icon, 2-5, 9-1, 9-2
- starting an application, 9-5
- Tool Linkage dialog, 9-12

utilities

- CLR2BW, 11-10
- DISP, 11-11
- displaying, 11-1
- DSK2TAP, 11-12
- Efont Factory, 7-42, 11-25
- ElixDisk, 11-2
- ELX2MET, 11-13
- ELX2XES, 11-16, 4235-24, 4700-21
- ELXDATA, 11-19
- ELXINV, 11-16
- ELXOPT, 11-18
- ELXWDATA, 9-2, 11-16
- File Packing, 8-5, 8-10
- FIXLP3, 11-19
- FNT75HDR, 11-20
- FONTCHG, 11-20
- FontCVT, 11-22
- FontMAP, 11-25
- FontTBL, 11-26
- FontTRAN, 11-27
- FORMCVT, 11-28
- FORMPRN, 11-30
- FSIMG, 11-33
- Header Control, 8-4, 8-6, 8-8, 8-9
- HOSTCOPY, 10-2, 10-7
- HPEDIT, 11-37
- IC, 11-39
- IEBGENER, 10-8
- LGO2LP3, 11-40
- LP32ELX, 11-41

MET2871, 10-15,
11-42
MET2ELX, 11-42
NAMEFNT, 8-7,
11-46
NAMEUDK, 8-5,
11-47
PACK, 10-1, 11-48
PALFIX, 11-48
PROOF45, 11-50
SHOWBLOK, 11-52
SHOWELX, 11-53
SP, 11-54
SPUR, 10-17, 11-56
stand-alone, 7-51,
11-1
STRIP, 8-4, 8-6,
8-10, 11-58
TAP2DSK, 11-59
using, 11-1
using the Dis-
patcher, 9-22
XCPY, 11-6
XDEL, 11-9
XDIR, 11-4
XFORMAT, 11-5

V

Ventura Publisher
creating an icon, 9-6
from the Desktop,
9-6
View menu, 2-12
Viewer icon, 2-7, 5-38,
5-39
VIPP Settings, 7-24

W

Window menu, C-10
Windows
and the Desktop,
2-1
keyboard shortcuts,
A-3
Notepad, 5-38

operating system,
2-1
PaintBrush, 5-38
print driver, 7-7
Windows applications
adding HP PCL
fonts, 7-36
writing fonts to disk,
7-15

X

XCPY utility, 11-6
XDEL utility, 11-9
XDIR utility, 11-4
Xerox
copying files, 5-17,
5-19
File Packing Utility,
8-5, 8-10
fonts, 7-50
Header Control Util-
ity, 8-4, 8-6, 8-8, 8-9
printer format disk-
ette, 5-17
Xerox Form Converter,
7-28
Xerox Form Converter
Options, 7-58
Xerox Graphic Con-
verter Options, 7-53,
7-55
XES, 7-31
XES escape sequence,
8-5, 4235-28, 4700-12
XES printing, 8
XFORMAT utility, 11-5
XPPM mode printing,
4235-36
XSOP Converter Prop-
erties, 7-27